

# Libreremo

Questo libro è il frutto di un percorso di lotta per l'accesso alle conoscenze e alla formazione promosso dal **Csoa Terra Terra**, **Csoa Officina 99**, **Get Up Kids!**, **Neapolis Hacklab**. Questo libro è solo uno dei tanti messi a disposizione da **LIBREREMO**, un portale finalizzato alla condivisione e alla libera circolazione di materiali di studio universitario (e non solo!).

Pensiamo che in un'università dai costi e dai ritmi sempre più escludenti, sempre più subordinata agli interessi delle aziende, **LIBREREMO** possa essere uno strumento nelle mani degli studenti per riappropriarsi, attraverso la collaborazione reciproca, del proprio diritto allo studio e per stimolare, attraverso la diffusione di materiale controinformativo, una critica della proprietà intellettuale al fine di smascherarne i reali interessi.

I diritti di proprietà intellettuale (che siano brevetti o copyright) sono da sempre – e soprattutto oggi – grosse fonti di profitto per multinazionali e grandi gruppi economici, che pur di tutelare i loro guadagni sono disposti a privatizzare le idee, a impedire l'accesso alla ricerca e a qualsiasi contenuto, tagliando fuori dalla cultura e dallo sviluppo la stragrande maggioranza delle persone. Inoltre impedire l'accesso ai saperi, renderlo possibile solo ad una ristretta minoranza, reprimere i contenuti culturali dal carattere emancipatorio e proporre solo contenuti inoffensivi o di intrattenimento sono da sempre i mezzi del capitale per garantirsi un controllo massiccio sulle classi sociali subalterne.

**L'ignoranza, la mancanza di un pensiero critico rende succubi e sottomette alle logiche di profitto e di oppressione: per questo riappropriarsi della cultura** – che sia un disco, un libro, un film o altro – **è un atto cosciente caratterizzato da un preciso significato e peso politico**. Condividere e cercare canali alternativi per la circolazione dei saperi significa combattere tale situazione, apportando benefici per tutti.

Abbiamo scelto di mettere in condivisione proprio i libri di testo perché i primi ad essere colpiti dall'attuale repressione di qualsiasi tipo di copia privata messa in atto da SIAE, governi e multinazionali, sono la gran parte degli studenti che, considerati gli alti costi che hanno attualmente i libri, non possono affrontare spese eccessive, costretti già a fare i conti con affitti elevati, mancanza di strutture, carenza di servizi e borse di studio etc...

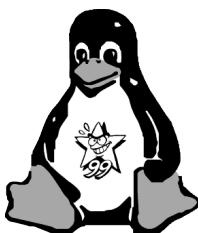
**Questo va evidentemente a ledere il nostro diritto allo studio:** le università dovrebbero fornire libri di testo gratuiti o quanto meno strutture e biblioteche attrezzate, invece di creare di fatto uno sbarramento per chi non ha la possibilità di spendere migliaia di euro fra tasse e libri originali... Proprio per reagire a tale situazione, senza stare ad aspettare nulla dall'alto, invitiamo tutt\* a far circolare il più possibile i libri, approfittando delle enormi possibilità che ci offrono al momento attuale internet e le nuove tecnologie, appropriandocene, liberandole e liberandoci dai limiti imposti dal controllo repressivo di tali mezzi da parte del capitale.

**Facciamo fronte comune davanti ad un problema che coinvolge tutt\* noi!  
Riappropriiamoci di ciò che è un nostro inviolabile diritto!**



**Get Up Kids**

[www.getupkids.org](http://www.getupkids.org)



**Neapolis Hacklab**

[www.neapolishacklab.org](http://www.neapolishacklab.org)

**csoa  
Terra★Terra**



**csoa Officina 99**

[www.officina99.org](http://www.officina99.org)

**www.libreremo.org**

# **Essential Grammar in Use**

**A self-study reference  
and practice book for  
elementary students  
of English**

WITH ANSWERS

**Raymond Murphy**

**SECOND EDITION**



# Contents

PUBLISHED BY THE PRESS SYNDICATE OF THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE  
The Pitt Building, Trumpington Street, Cambridge CB2 1RP, United Kingdom

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

The Edinburgh Building, Cambridge, CB2 2RU, UK  
40 West 20th Street, New York, NY 10011-4211, USA  
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia  
Ruiz de Alarcón 13, 28014 Madrid, Spain  
Dock House, The Waterfront, Cape Town 8001, South Africa

<http://www.cambridge.org>

© Cambridge University Press 1990, 1997, 1998

This book is copyright. Subject to statutory exception  
and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements,  
no reproduction of any part may take place without  
the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published by Cambridge University Press 1990

Thirteenth printing 1996

Second edition 1997

Ninth printing 2000

Fourteenth printing 2002

Printed in Great Britain  
by BennroseBooth, Derby

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library.

ISBN 0 521 55928 6 (with answers)

ISBN 0 521 55927 8 (without answers)

ISBN 0 521 52932 8 (with answers and CD-ROM)

To the student  
To the teacher  
Thanks

Unit

- 1 I am/is/are
- 2 am/is/are (questions)
- 3 I am doing (present continuous)
- 4 are you doing? (present continuous questions)
- 5 I do/work/like etc. (present simple)
- 6 I don't ... (present simple negative)
- 7 Do you ... ? (present simple questions)
- 8 I am doing and I do (present continuous and present simple)
- 9 I have ... / I've got ...
- 10 was/were
- 11 worked/got/went etc. (past simple)
- 12 I didn't ... Did you ... ? (past simple negative and questions)
- 13 I was doing (past continuous)
- 14 I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)
- 15 I have done (present perfect 1)
- 16 I've just ... I've already ... I haven't ... yet (present perfect 2)
- 17 Have you ever ... ? (present perfect 3)
- 18 How long have you ... ? (present perfect 4)
- 19 for since ago
- 20 I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)
- 21 is done was done (passive 1)
- 22 is being done has been done (passive 2)
- 23 be/have/do in present and past tenses
- 24 Regular and irregular verbs
- 25 I used to ...
- 26 What are you doing tomorrow?
- 27 I'm going to ...
- 28 will/shall (1)
- 29 will/shall (2)
- 30 might
- 31 can and could
- 32 must mustn't needn't
- 33 should
- 34 I have to ...
- 35 Would you like ... ? I'd like ...
- 36 there is there are
- 37 there was/were there has/have been there will be
- 38 It ...

- 39 I am I don't etc.  
 40 Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.  
 41 too/either so am I / neither do I etc.  
 42 isn't haven't don't etc. (negatives)  
 43 is it ... ? have you ... ? do they ... ? etc. (questions 1)  
 44 Who saw you? Who did you see? (questions 2)  
 45 Who is she talking to? What is it like? (questions 3)  
 46 What ... ? Which ... ? How ... ?  
 47 How long does it take ... ?  
 48 Do you know where ... ? I don't know what ... etc.  
 49 She said that ... He told me that ...  
 50 work/working go-going do/doing  
 51 to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)  
 52 I want you to ... I told you to ...  
 53 I went to the shop to ...  
 54 go to ... go on ... go for ... go -ing  
 55 get  
 56 do and make  
 57 have  
 58 I/me he/him they/them etc.  
 59 my/his/their etc.  
 60 Whose is this? It's mine/yours/hers etc.  
 61 I/me/my/mine  
 62 myself/yourself/theirselfs etc.  
 63 -'s (Ann's camera / my brother's cat) etc.  
 64 a/an ...  
 65 flower(s) bus(es) (singular and plural)  
 66 a car / some money (countable/uncountable 1)  
 67 a car / some money (countable/uncountable 2)  
 68 a/an and the  
 69 the ...  
 70 go to work / go home / go to the cinema  
 71 I like music I hate exams  
 72 the ... (names of places)  
 73 this/that/these/those  
 74 one/ones  
 75 some and any  
 76 not + any no none  
 77 not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing  
 78 somebody/anything/nowhere etc.  
 79 every and all  
 80 all most some any no/none  
 81 both either neither  
 82 a lot much many  
 83 (a) little (a) few

- 84 old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)  
 85 quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)  
 86 old/older expensive / more expensive  
 87 older than ... more expensive than ...  
 88 not as ... as  
 89 the oldest the most expensive  
 90 enough  
 91 too  
 92 He speaks English very well. (word order 1)  
 93 always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)  
 94 still yet already  
 95 Give me that book! Give it to me!  
 96 at 8 o'clock on Monday in April  
 97 from ... to until since for  
 98 before after during while  
 99 in at on (places 1)  
 100 in at on (places 2)  
 101 to in at (places 3)  
 102 under behind opposite etc. (prepositions)  
 103 up over through etc. (prepositions)  
 104 on at by with about (prepositions)  
 105 afraid of ... good at ... etc. preposition + -ing (good at -ing etc.)  
 106 listen to ... look at ... etc. (verb + preposition)  
 107 go in fall off run away etc. (phrasal verbs 1)  
 108 put on your shoes put your shoes on (phrasal verbs 2)  
 109 and but or so because  
 110 When ...  
 111 If we go ... If you see ... etc.  
 112 If I had ... If we went ... etc.  
 113 a person who ... a thing that/which ... (relative clauses 1)  
 114 the people we met the hotel you stayed at (relative clauses 2)

## Appendices

- Appendix 1 Active and passive 239  
 Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs 240  
 Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups 241  
 Appendix 4 Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.) 242  
 Appendix 5 Spelling 244  
 Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (look out / take off etc.) 246  
 Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (fill in a form / put out a fire etc.) 247
- Additional exercises 248  
 Key to Exercises 265  
 Key to Additional exercises 293  
 Index 296

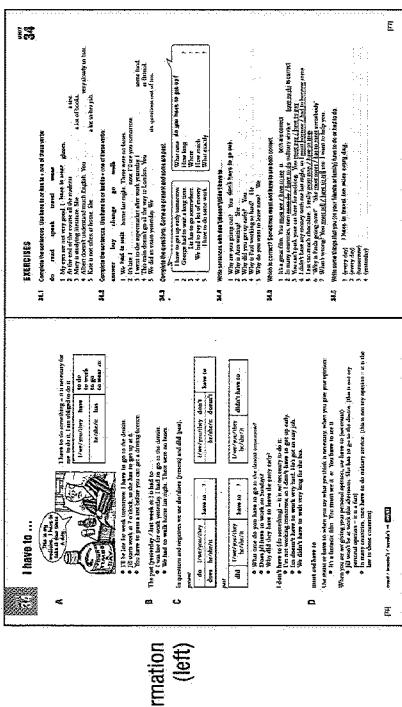
# To the student (working without a teacher)

# To the teacher

This is a grammar book for elementary students of English. There are 114 units in the book and each unit is about a different point of English grammar. There is a list of units at the beginning of the book (*Contents*).

Do not study all the units in order from beginning to end. It is better to choose the units that you *need* to do. For example, if you have a problem with the present perfect (*I have been, he has done* etc.), use the *Index* (at the back of the book) to find the unit (or units) you need to study (Units 15-20 for the present perfect).

Each unit is two pages. The information is on the left-hand page and the exercises are on the right:



You can use the book in this way:

- 1 Look in the *Contents* and/or *Index* to find the unit that you need.
- 2 Study the left-hand page (information).
- 3 Do the exercises on the right-hand page.
- 4 Use the *Key* to check your answers.
- 5 Study the left-hand page again if necessary.

Don't forget the seven *Appendices* at the back of the book (pages 239-247). These will give you information about active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms, spelling and phrasal verbs.

There are also *Additional exercises* at the back of the book (pages 248-264). There is a list of these exercises on page 248.

The most important features of this book are:

- It is a grammar book. It deals only with grammar and is not a general course book.
- It is a book for elementary learners. It does not cover areas of grammar which are not normally taught at elementary level.
- It combines reference and exercises in one volume.
- It can be used for self-study or as supplementary course material.

## Organisation of the book

There are 114 units in the book, each one focusing on a particular area of grammar. The material is organised in grammatical categories, such as tenses, questions and articles. Units are *not* ordered according to difficulty, and should therefore be selected and used in the order appropriate for the learner(s). The book should *not* be worked through from beginning to end. The units are listed in the *Contents* and there is a comprehensive *Index* at the end of the book.

Each unit has the same format consisting of two facing pages. The grammar point is presented and explained on the left-hand page and the corresponding exercises are on the right. There are seven *Appendices* (pages 239-247) dealing with active and passive forms, irregular verbs, short forms (contractions), spelling and phrasal verbs. It might be useful for teachers to draw students' attention to these.

This new edition of *Essential Grammar in Use* also contains a set of *Additional exercises* (pages 248-264). These exercises provide 'mixed' practice bringing together grammar points from a number of different units (mainly those concerning verb forms). There are 33 exercises in this section and there is a full list on page 248.

Finally, there is a *Key* at the back of the book (pages 265-295) for students to check their answers. An edition without the *Key* is also available for teachers who would prefer their students to use this.

## Level

The book is for elementary learners, i.e. learners with very little English, but I would not expect it to be used from the first day of a course for complete beginners. It is intended mainly for elementary students who are beyond the very earliest stages of a beginners' course. It could also be used by lower intermediate learners whose grammar is weaker than other aspects of their English or who have problems with particular areas of 'elementary' grammar.

The explanations are addressed to the elementary learner and are therefore as simple and as short as possible. The vocabulary used in the examples and exercises has also been restricted so that the book can be used at this level.

## Using the book

The book can be used by students working alone (see *To the student*) or as supplementary course material. In either case the book can serve as an elementary grammar book.

# Thanks

When used as course material, the book can be used for immediate consolidation or for later revision or remedial work. It might be used by the whole class or by individual students needing extra help and practice.

In some cases it may be desirable to use the left-hand pages (presentation and explanation) in class, but it should be noted that these have been written for individual study and reference. In most cases, it would probably be better for the teacher to present the grammar point in his/her preferred way with the exercises being done for homework. The left-hand page is then available for later reference by the student.

Some teachers may prefer to keep the book for revision and remedial work. In this case, individual students or groups of students can be directed to the appropriate units for self-study and practice.

For their help in producing this new edition of *Essential Grammar in Use*, I would like to thank Jeanne McCarten, Nóirín Burke, Liz Driscoll, Chris Hamilton-Emery, Geraldine Mark, Jane Walsh, Pam Murphy, Ruth Carim and Lelio Pallini.

Drawings by Richard Deverell, Richard Eckford, Sue Hillwood-Harris and Amanda MacPhail.  
Book design by Peter Duckier MSTD.

## Changes from the first edition

The main changes from the first edition are:

- There are six new units:
  - Unit 16 present perfect + *just/already/yet*
  - Unit 22 passive (*is being done / has been done*)
  - Unit 25 *I used to ...*
  - Unit 56 *do and make*
  - Unit 57 *have*
  - Unit 112 *if I had ... / if we went... etc.*

There is also a new appendix on active and passive forms (*Appendix 1*).

- Some of the material has been revised and reorganised. For example, the content of Units 99–100 (*in/at/on*) in the new edition corresponds to Unit 94 and part of Unit 96 in the old edition.
- Some units have been redesigned, for example Unit 41 (originally 39) and Unit 54 (originally 52).
- Some of the units have been reordered and (after Unit 8) nearly all units have a different number from the original edition. A few units have been moved to different parts of the book. For example, Unit 50 (*work/working* etc.) was originally Unit 34.
- Many of the left-hand pages have been rewritten and many of the examples changed. In a few cases there are significant changes to the content, for example Unit 51 (originally 47), Unit 73 (originally 68) and Unit 82 (originally 77).
- Many of the original exercises have been modified or completely replaced with new exercises (for example, Units 4 and 5).
- There is a new section of *Additional exercises* at the back of the book (see *Organisation of the book* above).

## am/is/are

**A**

I'm American. I'm from Chicago.  
I'm 22.  
My favourite colour is blue.  
My favourite sports are football and swimming.

**B**

<b>positive</b>	I am ('m)	I am not ('m not)
he	{ is (he's)	(he's not or he isn't)
she	{ is (she's)	(she's not or she isn't)
it	{ is (it's)	(it's not or it isn't)
we	{ are (we're)	(we're not or we aren't)
you	{ are (you're)	(you're not or you aren't)
they	{ are (they're)	(they're not or they aren't)

**C**

<b>positive</b>	I am ('m)	I am not ('m not)
he	{ is (he's)	(he's not or he isn't)
she	{ is (she's)	(she's not or she isn't)
it	{ is (it's)	(it's not or it isn't)
we	{ are (we're)	(we're not or we aren't)
you	{ are (you're)	(you're not or you aren't)
they	{ are (they're)	(they're not or they aren't)

- I'm cold. Can you close the window, please?
- I'm 32 years old. My sister is 29.
- My brother is very tall. He's a policeman.
- John is afraid of dogs.
- It's ten o'clock. You're late again.
- Ann and I are good friends.
- Your keys are on the table.
- I'm tired but I'm not hungry.
- Tom isn't interested in politics. He's interested in music.
- Jane isn't at home at the moment. She's at work.
- Those people aren't English. They're Australian.
- It's sunny today but it isn't warm.

- that's = that is there's = there is here's = here is
- Thank you. That's very kind of you.
  - Look! There's Chris.
  - 'Here's your key.' 'Thank you.'
  - 'Here's your key.' 'Thank you.'



- D**
- Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- E**
- Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- F**
- Write true sentences, positive or negative. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- G**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- H**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- I**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- J**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- K**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- L**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- M**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- N**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- O**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- P**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- Q**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- R**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- S**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- T**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- U**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- V**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- W**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- X**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- Y**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.
- Z**
- Write true sentences. Use am / am not / is / isn't / are / aren't.

## EXERCISES

- 1.1** Write the short form (she's / we aren't etc.).
1. she is ..... **she's**..... 3. it is not ..... 5. I am not .....  
2. they are ..... 4. that is ..... 6. you are not .....
- 1.2** Put in am, is or are.
1. The weather **is**.... nice today. 5. Look! There ..... Carol.  
2. I ..... not tired. 6. My brother and I ..... good tennis players.  
3. This bag ..... heavy. 7. Ann ..... at home. Her children ..... at school.  
4. These bags ..... heavy. 8. I ..... a taxi driver. My sister ..... a nurse.
- 1.3** Write full sentences. Use is / isn't / are / aren't.
1. (your shoes very dirty) Your shoes are very dirty..  
2. (my brother a teacher) My .....  
3. (this house not very big) .....  
4. (the shops not open today) .....  
5. (my keys in my bag) .....  
6. (Jenny 18 years old) .....  
7. (you not very tall) .....
- 1.4** Look at Lisa's sentences (Unit 1A). Now write sentences about yourself.
1. (name?) My ..... 6. (favourite colour or colours?)  
2. (from?) I ..... My .....  
3. (age?) I ..... 7. (interested in...?)  
4. (job?) I .....  
5. (married?) I .....
- 1.5** Write sentences for the pictures. Use: afraid angry cold hot hungry thirsty
- 
1. I'm afraid of dogs.  
2. I'm cold.  
3. I'm hungry.  
4. I'm thirsty.  
5. I'm angry.

# am/is/are (questions)

## EXERCISES

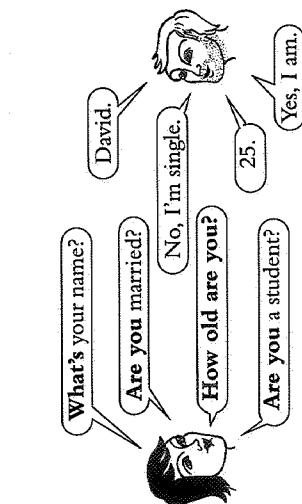
2.1

Find the right answers for the questions.

- A positive question  
 am I?      he?      is  
 is      she?      if?  
 we?      you?      are  
 you?      they?

- 1 Where's the camera?  
 2 Is your car blue?  
 3 Is Linda from London?  
 4 Am I late?  
 5 Where's Ann from?  
 6 What colour is your bag?  
 7 Are you hungry?  
 8 How is George?  
 9 Who's that woman?

- A London.  
 B No, I'm not.  
 C Yes, you are.  
 D My sister.  
 E Black.  
 F No, it's black.  
 G In your bag.  
 H No, she's American.  
 I Very well.



‘Am I late?’ ‘No, you’re on time.’

‘Is your mother at home?’ ‘No, she’s out.’

‘Are your parents at home?’ ‘No, they’re out.’

‘Is it cold in your room?’ ‘Yes, a little.’

‘Your shoes are nice. Are they new?’

We say:  
 ● Is she at home? / Is your mother at home? (not ‘Is at home your mother?’)

● Are they new? / Are your shoes new? (not ‘Are new your shoes?’)

B Where ... ? / What ... ? / Who ... ? / How ... ? / Why ... ?

● Where is your mother? Is she at home? ● Where are you from? ‘Canada.’

● What colour is your car? ‘It’s red.’ ● How old is Joe? ‘He’s 24.’

● How are your parents? Are they well? ● Why are you angry?

● How much are these postcards? ‘Fifty pence.’

what’s = what is      who’s = who is      where’s = where is

● What’s the time?

● Who’s that man?

● How’s your father?

short answers

Yes, I am.

No, I’m not.

No, { he’s } not. or No, { he } isn’t.

No, { she’s } not. or No, { she } isn’t.

No, { we’re } not. or No, { we } aren’t.

No, { you’re } not. or No, { you } aren’t.

No, { they’re } not. or No, { they } aren’t.

‘Are you tired?’ ‘Yes, I am.’

‘Are you hungry?’ ‘No, I’m not but I’m thirsty.’

● Is your friend English? ‘Yes, he is.’

● Are these your keys? ‘Yes, they are.’

● That’s my seat. ‘No, it isn’t.’

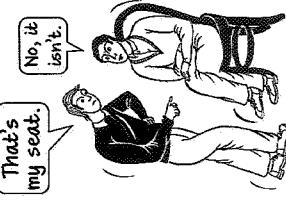
C Make questions with these words. Use is or are.

- 1 (at home / your mother)  
 2 (your parents / well)  
 3 (interesting / your job)  
 4 (the shops / open today?)  
 5 (interested in sport / you?)  
 6 (near here / the post office?)  
 7 (at school / your children?)  
 8 (why / you / late?)

D Complete the questions. Use what... / who... / where... / how... .

- 1 How are ..... your parents?  
 2 ..... the bus stop?  
 3 ..... your children?  
 4 ..... these oranges?  
 5 ..... your favourite sport?  
 6 ..... the man in this photograph?  
 7 ..... your new shoes?

E Write the questions. (Read the answers first.)



- 1 (name)? What’s your name?  
 2 (married or single)? .....  
 3 (American)? .....  
 4 (how old)? .....  
 5 (a teacher)? .....  
 6 (wife a lawyer)? .....  
 7 (from)? .....  
 8 (her name)? .....  
 9 (how old)? .....

- 1 Paul. I’m married.  
 2 No, I’m Australian.  
 3 I’m 30.  
 4 No, I’m a lawyer.  
 5 No, she’s a designer.  
 6 She’s Italian.  
 7 Anna.  
 8 She’s 27.

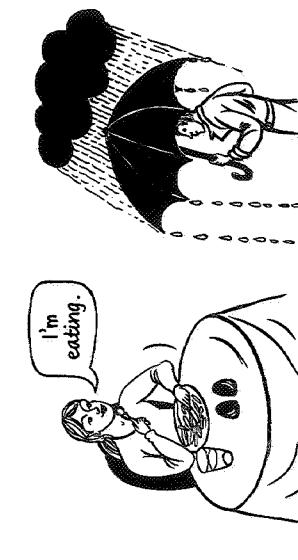
F Write short answers (Yes, I am. / No, he isn’t. etc.).

- 1 Are you married? No, I’m not.  
 2 Are you thirsty? .....  
 3 Is it cold today? .....  
 4 Are your hands cold? .....  
 5 Is it dark now? .....  
 6 Are you a teacher? .....

# I am doing (present continuous)

## EXERCISES

What are these people doing? Use these verbs to complete the sentences:



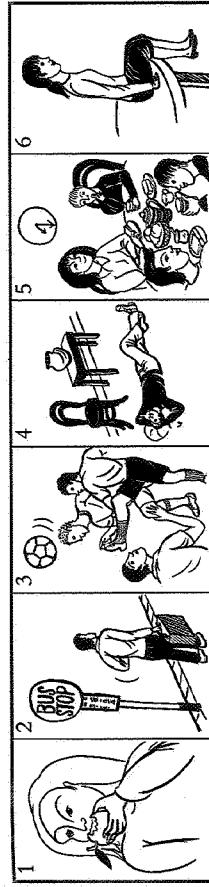
**A**  
She's eating.  
She isn't reading.



They're running.  
They aren't walking.

The present continuous is:  
am/is/are + doing/eating/running/writing etc.

I    am    (not) -ing	I'm working.
he }    is    (not) -ing	Chris is writing a letter. She isn't eating. (or She's not eating.)
it }	The phone is ringing.
we }	We're having dinner.
you }	You're not listening to me. (or You aren't ...)
they }	The children are doing their homework.



- 1 She's **eating** an apple.  
2 He ..... on the floor.  
3 They ..... breakfast.  
4 ..... on the table.

1 She's **running**.

They're running.  
They aren't walking.

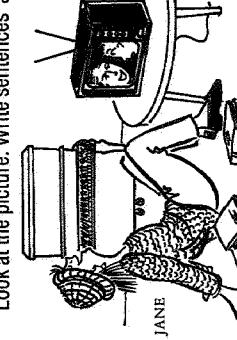
3.1 eat    have    lie    play    sit    wait

3.2 Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs:

build    cook    go    have    stand    stay    swim    work

- 1 Please be quiet. I'm **working**.  
2 'Where's John?' 'He's in the kitchen. He ..... on my foot.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'  
3 'You ..... in the river.  
4 Look! Somebody ..... at the Central Hotel.  
5 We're here on holiday. We ..... a shower.  
6 'Where's Ann?' 'She ..... a new theatre in the city centre at the moment.  
7 They ..... now. Goodbye.  
8 I .....'

3.3 Look at the picture. Write sentences about Jane. Use **She's -ing** or **She isn't -ing**.



- 1 (have dinner) Jane .....  
2 (watch television) She's .....  
3 (sit on the floor) She .....  
4 (read a book) .....  
5 (play the piano) .....  
6 (laugh) .....  
7 (wear a hat) .....  
8 (write a letter) .....

3.4

What's happening at the moment? Write true sentences.

- 1 (I / wash / my hair) I'm not **washing** my hair.  
2 (it / snow) It's .....  
3 (I / sit / on a chair) .....  
4 (I / eat) .....  
5 (it / rain) .....  
6 (I / learn / English) .....  
7 (I / listen / to music) .....  
8 (the sun / shine) .....  
9 (I / wear / shoes) .....  
10 (I / read / a newspaper) .....

3.5 Please be quiet. I'm **working**. (= I'm working now)

- Look at Sue! She's wearing her new hat. (= she is wearing it now)
- The weather is nice at the moment. It's not raining.
- 'Where are the children?' 'They're playing in the park.'
- (on the phone) We're having dinner now. Can you phone again later?
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.

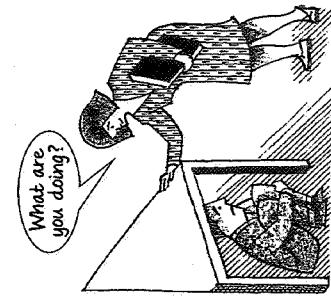
Spelling (⇒ Appendix 5):  
come → coming    write → writing    dance → dancing  
run → running    sit → sitting    swim → swimming  
lie → lying

am/is/are → **are** you doing? (questions) ⇒ **Are** you doing ...?  
What are you doing tomorrow? ⇒ **What** are you doing tomorrow?

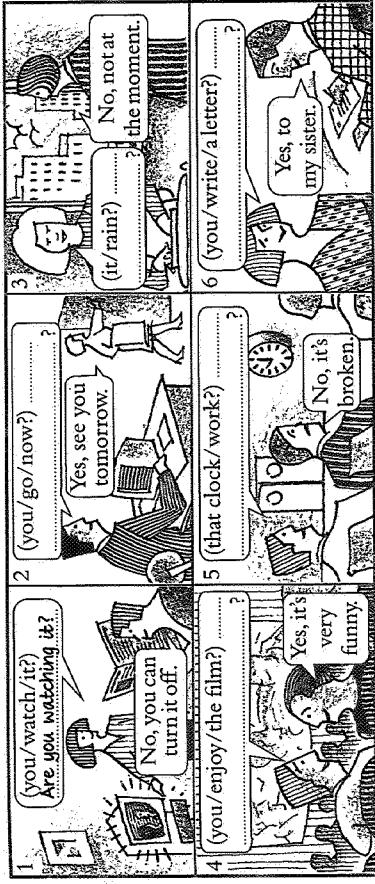
# are you doing? (present continuous questions)

## EXERCISES

Look at the pictures and write the questions.



4.1



- 'Are you feeling OK?' 'Yes, I'm fine, thank you.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'Yes, take an umbrella.'
- Why are you wearing a coat? It's not cold.
- What are Paul doing?' 'He's reading the newspaper.'
- 'What are the children doing?' 'They're watching television.'
- Look, there's Sally! Where's she going?
- Who are you waiting for? Are you waiting for Sue?

B Study the word order:

is/are + subject	+ -ing
Is he	working today?
Is Paul	working today? (not 'Is working Paul today?')
Where they	going? (not 'Where are going those people?')
Where those people	going? (not 'Where are going those people?')

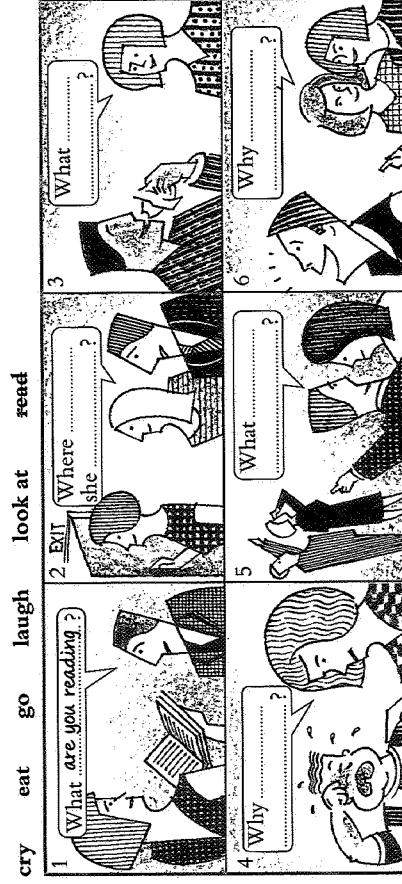
short answers

Yes, I am.	No, I'm not.
Yes, { he   she } is.	No, { he's   she's } not. or No, { he   she } isn't.
Yes, { we   you } are.	No, { we're   you're } not. or No, { we   you } aren't.
Yes, { they } are.	No, { they're } not. or No, { they } aren't.

- 'Are you going now?' 'Yes, I am.'
- 'Is Paul working today?' 'Yes, he is.'
- 'Is it raining?' 'No, it isn't.'
- 'Are your friends staying at a hotel?' 'No, they aren't.' They're staying with me.'

Look at the pictures and complete the questions. Use one of these:

cry eat go laugh look at read



4.2

- Write questions from these words. Use is or are and put the words in order.
- 1 (working / Paul / today?) Is Paul working today?
  - 2 (what / doing / the children?) What are the children doing?
  - 3 (you / listening / to me?)
  - 4 (where / going / your friends?)
  - 5 (your parents / television / watching?)
  - 6 (what / cooking / Ann?)
  - 7 (why / you / looking / at me?)
  - 8 (coming / the bus?)

Write short answers (Yes, I am / No, he isn't. etc.)

- 1 Are you watching TV? No, I'm not.
- 2 Are you wearing a watch?
- 3 Are you eating something?
- 4 Is it raining?
- 5 Are you sitting on the floor?
- 6 Are you feeling well?

I am doing ⇒ What are you doing tomorrow? ⇒ questions ⇒

**I do/work/like etc. (present simple)****EXERCISES****5.1 Write these verbs + -s or -es.**

5.1



They're looking at their books.  
They **read** a lot.

**They read / he likes / I work etc. = the present simple:**

	1. we/you/they	read	like	work	live	watch	do	have
	he/she/it	reads	likes	works	lives	watches	does	has

Remember:

he works / she lives / it rains etc.

• I **work** in a shop. My brother **works** in a bank. (not 'My brother work')

• Linda **lives** in London. Her parents **live** in Scotland.

• It **rains** a lot in winter.

I **have** → he/she/it **has**:

• John **has** a shower every day.

Sue **arrives** at work early.

• She **always arrives** early.

**Spelling** (⇒ Appendix 5):

- es after -s / -sh / -ch: pass → passes      finish → finishes      watch → watches
- y → -ies: study → studies      try → tries
- also: do → does      go → goes

**B** We use the present simple for things that are true in general, or for things that happen sometimes or all the time:

• I **like** big cities.

• The shops **open** at 9 o'clock and **close** at 5.30.

• Tim **works** very hard. He **starts** at 7.30 and **finishes** at 8 o'clock in the evening.

• The Earth **goes** round the Sun.

• We **do** a lot of different things in our free time.

• It **costs** a lot of money to stay at luxury hotels.

**C always/never/sometimes/usually + present simple**

• Sue **always arrives** at work early (not 'Sue arrives always')

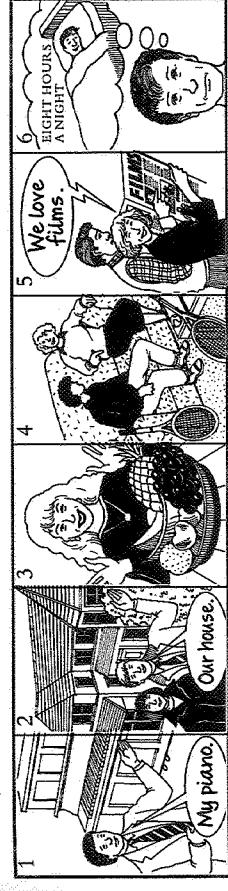
• I **usually go** to work by car but sometimes I **walk**. (not 'I go usually')

• Julia **never eats** breakfast.

• Tom **lives** near us. We **often see** him.

**5.2 Complete the sentences about the people in the pictures. Use these verbs:**

5.2

**5.3 Complete the sentences. Use these verbs:**

5.3

1. He **plays** the piano.

2. They **play** in a very big house.

3. They **play** a lot of fruit.

4. They **play** tennis.

5. They **play** to the cinema a lot.

6. They **play** eight hours a night.

**5.4 Complete the sentences from these words. Put the verb in the right form (**arrive** or **arrives** etc.).**

5.4

- 1 (always / early / Sue / arrive) **Sue always arrives** early.
- 2 (basketball / I / play / often) I **play** basketball.
- 3 (work / Margaret / hard / usually) Margaret **works** hard / usually.
- 4 (Jenny / always / nice clothes / wear) Jenny **wears** nice clothes.
- 5 (dinner / we / have / always / at 7.30) **We have** dinner at 7.30.
- 6 (television / Tim / watch / never) Tim **never watches** television.
- 7 (like / chocolate / children / usually) Children **like** chocolate.
- 8 (Julia / parties / enjoy / always) Julia **enjoys** parties.

**5.5 Write sentences about yourself. Use **always/never/often/sometimes/usually**.**

5.5

- 1 (watch television) I **never watch television**.
- 2 (read in bed) I **usually read in bed**.
- 3 (get up before 7 o'clock) I **get up before 7 o'clock**.
- 4 (go to work/school by bus) I **go to work/school by bus**.
- 5 (drink coffee) I **never drink coffee**.

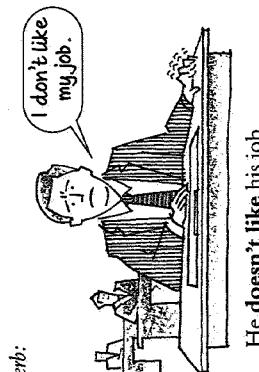
I don't ... (negative) ⇒   
always/usually/often etc. (word order) ⇒

Do you ... ? (questions) ⇒   
I am doing and I do ⇒

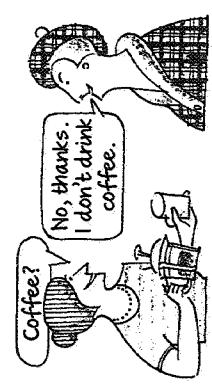
**I don't ... (present simple negative)****EXERCISES**

**6.1** Write the negative.

- 1 I play the piano very well.
- 2 Jane plays the piano very well.
- 3 They know my phone number.
- 4 We work very hard.
- 5 He has a bath every day.
- 6 You do the same thing every day.



He doesn't like his job.



She doesn't drink coffee.

**A** The present simple negative is **don't/doesn't + verb:**

		negative				
		I we you they	do not (don't)	work like do have	he she it	does not (doesn't)
positive						
I we you they	work like do have					
he she it has	works likes does has					

- I drink coffee but I **don't drink** tea.
- Sue **drinks** tea but she **doesn't drink** coffee.
- You **don't work** very hard.
- We **don't watch** television very often.
- The weather is usually nice. It **doesn't rain** very often.
- Gerry and Linda **don't know** many people.

**B** Remember:

- |               |                  |  |                    |                                    |
|---------------|------------------|--|--------------------|------------------------------------|
| I/we/you/they | <b>don't ...</b> | • I <b>don't like</b> football.<br>he/she/it | <b>doesn't ...</b> | • He <b>doesn't like</b> football. |
|---------------|------------------|--|--------------------|------------------------------------|
- I **don't like** Fred and **Fred doesn't like** me. (*not 'Fred don't like'*)
  - My car **doesn't** use much petrol. (*not 'My car don't use'*)
  - Sometimes he is late but it **doesn't happen** very often.

We use **don't/doesn't + infinitive** (**don't like / doesn't speak / doesn't do etc.:**)

- I **don't like** washing the car. I **don't do** it very often.
- Sandra **speaks** Spanish but she **doesn't speak** Italian. (*not 'doesn't speaks'*)
- Bill **doesn't do** his job very well. (*not 'Bill doesn't his job'*)
- Paula **doesn't usually have** breakfast. (*not 'doesn't ... has'*)

**6.3** Complete the sentences. All of them are negative. Use **don't/doesn't + one of these verbs:**

**cost**   **go**   **know**   **read**   **see**   **use**   **wear**

- 1 (watch TV)
- 2 (go to the theatre)
- 3 (ride a bicycle)
- 4 (eat in restaurants)
- 5 (travel by train)

**6.4** Put the verb into the correct form, positive or negative.

- 1 Margaret **speaks** four languages – English, French, German and Spanish. (speak)
- 2 I **don't like** my job. It's very boring. (like)
- 3 'Where's Martin?' 'I'm sorry. I **'m** : (know)
- 4 Sue is a very quiet person. She **.....** very much. (talk)
- 5 Jim **.....** a lot of tea. It's his favourite drink. (drink)
- 6 It's not true! I **.....** it! (believe)
- 7 That's a very beautiful picture. I **.....** it very much. (like)
- 8 Mark is a vegetarian. He **.....** meat. (eat)

# Do you ...? (present simple questions)

## EXERCISES

**A** We use do / does in present simple questions:

		positive			question		
		I we you they	we do you they	they work? like? do? have?	he does	she does	it have?
he	works likes she it has	he works likes she it has	we do you they	they work? like? do? have?	I we you they	he does	it have?
she	works likes he it has	she works likes he it has	we do you they	they work? like? do? have?	I we you they	she does	it have?



Do you play the guitar?

**B** Study the word order:

		do/doe + subject + infinitive		
	Do	you	your friends	work in the evening?
Where	Do	your parents	live near here?	tennis?
How often	Do	you	play live?	wash your hair?
What	Does	this word	mean?	to fly to Rome?
How much	Does	it	cost	

Questions with always/usually/often:

	Do	you	always	breakfast?
What	Does	Chris	often	tennis?
	Do	you	usually	play tennis?
How often	Do	you	usually	play tennis?
What	Does	this word	usually	at weekends?
How much	Does	it	usually	

What do you do? = What's your job?  
What do you do? I work in a bank.

**C** Remember:  
do I/we/you/they ...      Do they like music?  
does he/she/it ...      Does he like music?

short answers

Yes,	I/we/you/they	do.	No,	I/we/you/they	don't.
	he/she/it	does.		he/she/it	doesn't.

- Do you play tennis? 'No, I don't.'
- Do your parents speak English? 'Yes, they do.'
- Does George work hard? 'Yes, he does.'
- Does your sister live in London? 'No, she doesn't.'

I do/work/like etc. ⇒ I don't ... (negative) ⇒ questions ⇒

**7.1** Write questions with **Do ...?** and **Does ...?**

Do you like chocolate?

you

Ann

I like chocolate. And you?

I play tennis. And you?

Tom plays tennis. And Ann?

You live near here. And your friends?

You speak English. And your brother?

I do exercises every morning. And you?

Sue often goes away. And Paul?

I want to be famous. And you?

You work hard. And Linda?

Write questions. Use the words in brackets (...) + **do/does**. Put the words in the right order.

Where do your parents live?

Do you always get up early?

Write questions. Use the words in brackets (...) + **do/does**. Put the words in the right order.

(where / live / your parents?)

(you / early / always / get up?)

(how often / TV / you / watch?)

(you / want / what / for dinner?)

(like / you / football?)

(your brother / like / football?)

(what / you / do / in the evenings?)

(your sister / work / where?)

(to the cinema / often / you / go?)

(what / mean / this word?)

(often / snow / it / here?)

(go / usually / to bed / what time / you?)

(how much / to phone New York / it / cost?)

14 (you / for breakfast / have / usually / what?)

Complete the questions. Use these verbs:

do enjoy go like start teach work

I work in a bookshop.  
It's OK.

At 9 o'clock.  
Sometimes.

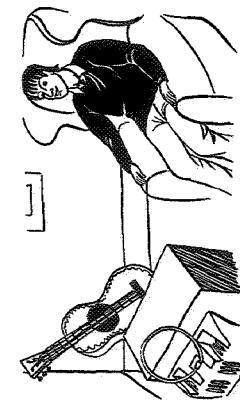
Usually by bus.  
He's a teacher.

Science.  
Yes, he loves it.

What do you do?

# I am doing and I do

(present continuous and present simple)



- A**
- Jim is watching television.  
He is *not* playing the guitar.
  - But Jim has a guitar.  
He often plays it and he plays very well.
  - Jim **plays** the guitar  
but he **is not playing** the guitar now.

Is he playing the guitar? **No, he isn't.** (*present continuous*)  
Does he play the guitar? **Yes, he does.** (*present simple*)

*Present continuous (I am doing) – now, at the time of speaking:*

I'm doing

past \_\_\_\_\_ now \_\_\_\_\_ future \_\_\_\_\_

- Please be quiet. I'm working. (*not 'I work'*)
- Tom is having a shower at the moment. (*not 'Tom has'*)
- Take an umbrella with you. It's raining.
- You can turn off the television. I'm not watching it.
- Why are you under the table? What are you doing?

*Present simple (I do) – in general, all the time or sometimes:*

I do

past \_\_\_\_\_ now \_\_\_\_\_ future \_\_\_\_\_

- I work every day from 9 o'clock to 5.30.
- Tom has a shower every morning.
- It rains a lot in winter.
- I don't watch television very often.
- What do you usually do at the weekend?

**D** We do *not* use these verbs in the present continuous (I am -ing):

like	love	want	know	understand	remember	depend
prefer	hate	need	mean	believe	forget	

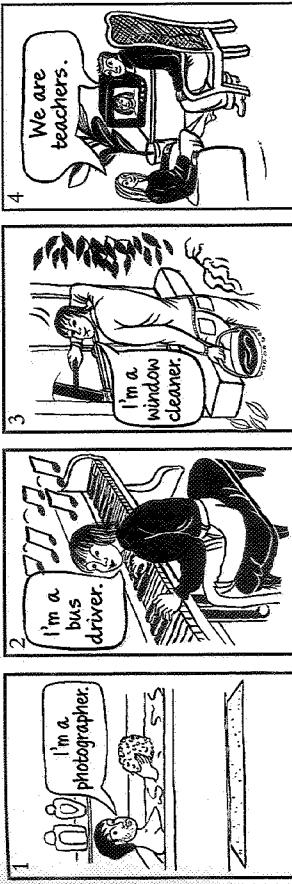
- Use the present simple only with these verbs (I want / do you like? etc.):
- I'm tired. I want to go home. (*not 'I'm wanting'*)
  - 'Do you know that girl?' 'Yes, but I don't remember her name.'
  - I don't understand. What do you mean?'

- 10 What time ..... (your father / finish) work in the evenings?  
11 You can turn off the radio. ..... (I / not/listen) to it.  
12 'Where's Tom?' 'He's having' (he/have) a shower.'  
13 Martin ..... (he/cook) something.  
14 Sue ..... (not/usually/drive) to work. He ..... (usually/walk).  
15 Sue ..... (she/like) coffee. ..... (she/prefer) tea.

**EXERCISES**

**B.1**

Answer the questions about the pictures.



- 1 Does he take photographs? **Yes, he does.**  
What is he doing? **He's having a bath.**  
2 Is she driving a bus?  
What is she doing?  
3 Does he clean windows?  
What is he doing?  
4 Are they teaching?  
What do they do?

**B.2** Put in am/is/are or do/don't/does/doesn't.

- 1 Excuse me, **do** you speak English?  
2 'Where's Ann?' '**I** ..... know.'  
3 What's funny? Why ..... you laughing?  
4 'What ..... your sister do?' 'She's a dentist.'  
5 It ..... raining. I ..... want to go out in the rain.  
6 'Where ..... you come from?' 'Canada.'  
7 How much ..... it cost to phone Canada?  
8 George is a good tennis player but he ..... play very often.

**B.3** Put the verb in the present continuous (I am doing) or the present simple (I do).

- 1 Excuse me. **Do, you speak** (you/speak) English?  
2 'Where's Tom?' '**He's having** (he/have) a shower.'  
3 **I don't watch** (I/not/watch) television very often.  
4 Listen! Somebody ..... (sing).  
5 Sandra is tired. ..... (she/want) to go home now.  
6 How often ..... (you/read) a newspaper?  
7 'Excuse me but ..... (you/sit) in my place.' 'Oh, I'm sorry.'  
8 I'm sorry, ..... (I/not/understand). Can you speak more slowly?  
9 It's late. ..... (I/go) home now.  
10 What time ..... (your father / finish) work in the evenings?  
11 You can turn off the radio. ..... (I / not/listen) to it.  
12 'Where's Paul?' 'In the kitchen.' ..... (he/cook) something.  
13 Martin ..... (not/usually/drive) to work. He ..... (usually/walk).  
14 Sue ..... (she/like) coffee. ..... (she/prefer) tea.

**I have ... / I've got ...****EXERCISES**

**A** You can say **I have** or **I've got**, he has or he's got:



<b>I</b>	<b>we</b>	<b>have</b>	<b>OR</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>(I've got)</b>		
<b>you</b>				<b>we have got</b>	<b>(we've got)</b>		
<b>they</b>				<b>(you've got)</b>	<b>(they've got)</b>		
<b>he</b>		<b>has</b>	<b>OR</b>	<b>he has got</b>	<b>(he's got)</b>		
<b>she</b>				<b>(she's got)</b>	<b>(she's got)</b>		
<b>it</b>				<b>it has got</b>	<b>(it's got)</b>		

• I've got blue eyes. (or I have blue eyes.)

• Tim has got two sisters. (or Tim has two sisters.)

• Our car has got four doors.

• Diane isn't feeling well. She's got a headache. (she's got = she has got)

• They like animals. They've got a horse, three dogs and six cats.

**B** I haven't got / have you got? etc.

negative		question		short answers			
<b>I</b>	<b>we</b>	<b>have not</b> <b>(haven't)</b>	<b>got?</b>	<b>Yes,</b> <b>No,</b>	<b>I</b>	<b>we</b>	<b>have</b> <b>haven't.</b>
<b>he</b>	<b>she</b>	<b>has not</b> <b>(hasn't)</b>	<b>got?</b>	<b>Yes,</b> <b>No,</b>	<b>he</b>	<b>she</b>	<b>has</b> <b>hasn't.</b>

• I've got a motor-bike but I haven't got a car.

• Mr and Mrs Harris haven't got any children.

• It's a nice house but it hasn't got a garden.

• 'Have you got a camera?' 'No, I haven't.'

• 'What have you got in your bag?' 'Nothing. It's empty.'

• 'Has Ann got a car?' 'Yes, she has.'

• What kind of car has she got?

**C** I don't have / do you have? etc.

In negatives and questions you can also use **do/does** ... :

- They don't have any children. (= They haven't got any children.)
- It's a nice house but it doesn't have a garden. (= it hasn't got a garden)
- Does Ann have a car? (= Has Ann got a car?)
- How much money do you have? (= How much money have you got?)

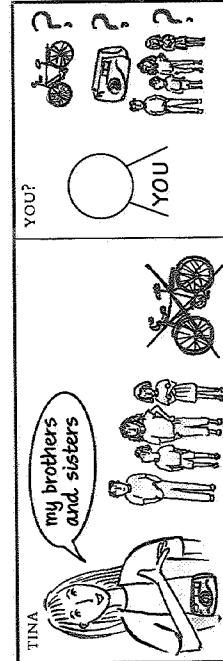
had / didn't have (past) ⇒      have breakfast / have a shower etc. ⇒   
some/any ⇒

**D** Write the short form (**we've got** / **he hasn't got** etc.).

- 1 we have got **we've got** ..... 3 they have got ..... 5 it has got .....
- 2 he has got ..... 4 she has not got ..... 6 I have not got .....

**E** Write questions.

- 1 (you / an umbrella?)  
2 (you / a passport?)  
3 (your father / a car?)  
4 (Carol / many friends?)  
5 (you / any brothers or sisters?)  
6 (how much money / we?)  
7 (what / kind of car / Julia?)



• What has Tina got?  
• What have you got?  
Look at the information and write sentences about Tina and yourself.

- 1 (a camera) Tina **has got** a camera. I've got (OR I haven't got) a camera.  
2 (a bicycle) Tina .....  
3 (long hair) .....  
4 (brothers/sisters) .....

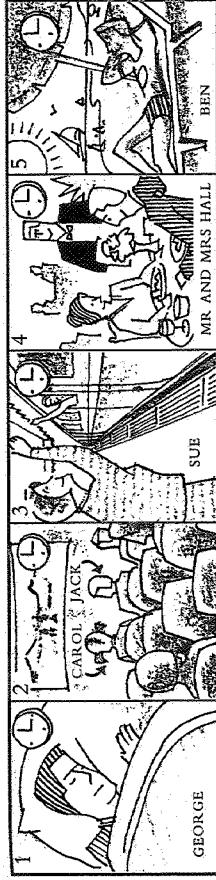
**F** Put in **have got** ('ve got), **has got** ('s got), **haven't got** or **hasn't got**.

- 1 Sarah **haven't got** a car. She goes everywhere by bicycle.  
2 They like animals. They **ve got** three dogs and two cats.  
3 Charles isn't happy. He **esn't got** a lot of problems.  
4 They don't read much. They **sn't got** many books.  
5 'What's wrong?' 'I **sn't got** something in my eye.'  
6 'Where's my pen?' 'I don't know. I **sn't got** it.' ..... it.  
7 Julia wants to go to the concert but she **sn't got** a ticket.

- G** Complete the sentences. Use **have/has got** or **haven't/hasn't got** + one of these:  
a lot of friends four wheels six legs a headache a toothache a key much time a garden
- 1 I'm not feeling very well. I **'ve got a headache.**  
2 It's a nice house but it **hasn't got a garden.**  
3 Most cars .....  
4 Everybody likes Tom. He .....  
5 I'm going to the dentist this morning. I .....  
6 He can't open the door. He .....  
7 An insect .....  
8 We must hurry. We .....

## 10.1

Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon?



- A**
- am/is (present) → was (past):  
 ● I am tired. (now)      I was tired **last night**.  
 ● Where is Ann? (now)      Where was Ann **yesterday**?  
 ● The weather **is** good today.      The weather **was** good **last week**.

- B**
- are (present) → were (past):  
 ● You are late. (now)      You **were** late **yesterday**.  
 ● They **aren't** here. (now)      They **weren't** here **last Sunday**.

**positive**

I	he she it	was	I? he? she? it?
we	you they	were	we? you? they?

**negative**

I	he she it	was not (wasn't)	I? he? she? it?
we	you they	were not (weren't)	we? you? they?

**question**

I?	he? she? it?
was	we? you? they?

## 10.3

Put in was/were or wasn't/weren't.

- Last year she **was** 22, so she **is** 23 now.
- Today the weather **is** nice, but yesterday it **wasn't** very cold.
- I **wasn't** hungry. Can I have something to eat?
- I **feel** fine this morning but I **was** very tired last night.
- Where **were** you at 11 o'clock last Friday morning?
- Don't buy those shoes. They **were** very expensive.
- I like your new jacket. It **isn't** expensive?
- This time last year I **were** in Paris.
- 'Where **were** the children?' 'I don't know. They **were** in the garden ten minutes ago.'

## 10.4

Write the questions. Use the words in brackets (...) in the correct order + was/were.

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 1 (late / you / this morning / why?)<br><b>Why</b> <b>were</b> <b>you</b> <b>late</b> <b>this morning</b> ?<br>(difficult / your exam?) | The traffic was bad.   |
| 2 (last week / where / Ann and Chris?)<br>Ann and Chris <b>were</b> <b>on holiday</b> .   | No, it was easy.       |
| 3 (angry / you / yesterday / why?)<br>You <b>were</b> <b>angry</b> <b>yesterday</b> .   | They were on holiday.  |
| 4 (your new camera / how much?)<br>Your new camera <b>cost</b> <b>sixty pounds</b> .  | Sixty pounds.          |
| 5 (nice / the weather / last week?)<br>The weather <b>was</b> <b>nice</b> <b>last week</b> .  | Because you were late. |
| 6 (Was / Ted at work yesterday?)<br>Was Ted <b>at work</b> <b>yesterday</b> ?   | Yes, it was beautiful. |

**G short answers**

Yes,	I/he/she/it <b>was</b> . we/you/they <b>were</b> .
No,	I/he/she/it <b>wasn't</b> . we/you/they <b>weren't</b> .

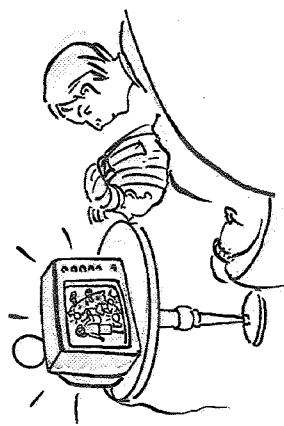
- 'Were you late?' 'No, I **wasn't**'
- 'Was Ted at work yesterday?' 'Yes, he **was**'
- 'Were Sue and Steve at the party?' 'No, they **weren't**'

**worked/got/went etc. (past simple)****EXERCISES**

**A** They **watch** television every evening.  
(present simple)  
They **watched** television yesterday evening.  
(past simple)

**watched** is the past simple:

I/we/you/they he/she/it	watched
----------------------------	---------



**B** The past simple is often **-ed** (regular verbs). For example:

work → worked	clean → cleaned	start → started
stay → stayed	arrive → arrived	dance → danced

- I clean my teeth every morning. This morning I cleaned my teeth.
- Terry **worked** in a bank from 1986 to 1993.
- Yesterday it rained all morning. It **stopped** at lunchtime.
- We **enjoyed** the party last night. We danced a lot and **talked** to a lot of people.
- The party finished at midnight.

Spelling (⇒ Appendix 5):  
try → **tried**   study → **studied**   copy → **copied**  
stop → **stopped**   plan → **planned**

**C** Some verbs are *irregular* (= not regular). The past simple is *not -ed*. Here are some important irregular verbs (see also Appendix 2–3):

begin → <b>began</b>	fall → <b>fell</b>	leave → <b>left</b>	sell → <b>sold</b>
break	find → <b>found</b>	lose → <b>lost</b>	sit → <b>sat</b>
bring	fly → <b>flew</b>	make → <b>made</b>	sleep → <b> slept</b>
build	forget → <b>forgot</b>	meet → <b>met</b>	speak → <b>spoke</b>
buy	get → <b>got</b>	pay → <b>paid</b>	stand → <b>stood</b>
catch	give → <b>gave</b>	put → <b>put</b>	take → <b>took</b>
come	go → <b>went</b>	read → <b>read / red/*</b>	tell → <b>told</b>
do	have → <b>had</b>	ring → <b>rang</b>	think → <b>thought</b>
drink	hear → <b>heard</b>	say → <b>said</b>	won → <b>won</b>
eat	know → <b>knew</b>	see → <b>saw</b>	wrote → <b>wrote</b>

\* pronunciation

- I usually get up early but this morning I **got** up at 9.30.
- We **did** a lot of work yesterday.
- Caroline **went** to the cinema three times last week.
- Jim **came** into the room, **took** off his coat and **sat** down.

11.1 Complete the sentences. Use one of these verbs in the past simple:

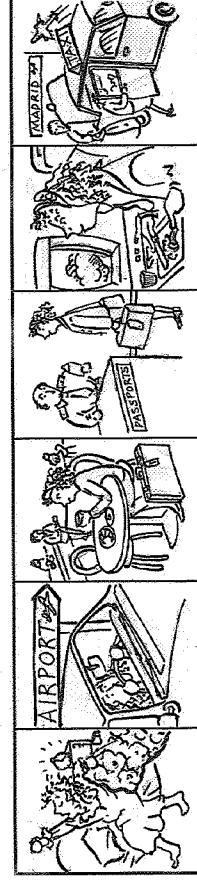
**A** clean die enjoy finish happen open rain start stay want

- 1 I **cleaned**... my teeth three times yesterday.
- 2 It was hot in the room, so I ..... the window.
- 3 The concert ..... at 7.30 and ..... at 10 o'clock.
- 4 When I was a child, I ..... to be a doctor.
- 5 The accident ..... last Sunday afternoon.
- 6 It's a nice day today but yesterday it ..... all day.
- 7 We ..... our holiday last year. We ..... at a very nice place.
- 8 Ann's grandfather ..... when he was 90 years old.

11.2 Write the past simple of these verbs.

- |              |               |               |                |
|--------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1 get .....  | 4 pay .....   | 7 go .....    | 10 know .....  |
| 2 see .....  | 5 visit ..... | 8 think ..... | 11 put .....   |
| 3 play ..... | 6 buy .....   | 9 copy .....  | 12 speak ..... |

11.3 Read about Lisa's journey to Madrid. Put the verbs in the correct form.



Last Tuesday Lisa (1) **flew** from London to Madrid. She (2) ..... up at six o'clock in the morning and (3) ..... a cup of coffee. At 6.30 she (4) ..... home and (5) ..... to the airport. When she (6) ..... , she (7) ..... the car and then (8) ..... to the airport passport control and (11) ..... for her flight. The plane (12) ..... on time and (13) ..... in Madrid two hours later. Finally she (14) ..... a taxi from the airport to her hotel in the centre of Madrid.

11.4 Write sentences about the past (yesterday / last week etc.).

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 Jim always goes to work by car. Yesterday he <b>went to work by car</b> . | 4 I usually buy two newspapers every evening. She ..... yesterday evening. |
| 2 Rachel often loses her keys. She ..... last week.                         | 5 We usually go to the cinema on Sundays. Last Sunday we .....             |
| 3 Kate meets her friends every evening. She ..... yesterday evening.        | 6 I eat an orange every day. Yesterday I .....                             |
| 7 Tom always has a shower in the morning. This morning he .....             | 8 Our friends come to see us every Friday. They ..... last Friday.         |

11.5 Write sentences about what you did yesterday.

- |   |         |
|---|---------|
| 1 I <b>played volleyball</b> yesterday. | 4 ..... |
| 2 .....                                 | 5 ..... |
| 3 .....                                 | 6 ..... |

# I didn't ... Did you ... ?

## (past simple negative and questions)

### EXERCISES

Complete these sentences with the verb in the negative.

**A** We use **did** in past simple negatives and questions:

infinitive	positive	negative
play	I played	I didn't play
start	we started	we didn't start
watch	you watched	you didn't watch
have	they had	they didn't have
see	he saw	he didn't see
do	she did	she didn't do
go	it went	it didn't go

**B** **do/does (present) → did (past):**

- I **don't** watch television very often.
- I **didn't** watch television yesterday.
- Does she often go away?
- Did she go away last week?

**C** We use **did/didn't + infinitive** (watch/play/go etc.):

- I watched **but** I **didn't** watch (*not 'I didn't watched'*)  
 they went **but** did they go? (*not 'did they went'*)  
 he had **but** he **didn't** have  
**did** you **do**?  
 I **played** tennis yesterday but I **didn't** win.  
 'Did' you **do** the shopping?  
 'Did' we go to the cinema but we **didn't** enjoy the film.

**D** Study the word order in questions:

**did** + **subject** + **infinitive**

What	Did	your sister	phone	you?
How	did	you	do	yesterday evening?
Where	did	the accident	happen?	for their holiday?
	did	your parents	go	

**E** **short answers**

Yes,	I/we/you/they he/she/it	did.	No, I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>didn't</b> .
------	----------------------------	------	-----------------------------------	-----------------

- 'Did you see Joe yesterday?' 'No, I **didn't**'
- 'Did it rain on Sunday?' 'Yes, it **did**'
- 'Did Helen come to the party?' 'No, she **didn't**'
- 'Did your parents have a good holiday?' 'Yes, they **did**'

- Put the verb in the correct form – positive, negative or question.
- 1 We went to the cinema but the film wasn't very good. We **... didn't ... enjoy** it. (enjoy)
  - 2 Tim **... some new clothes** yesterday – two shirts, a jacket and a pullover. (buy)
  - 3 **...** yesterday? 'No, it was a nice day' (rain)
  - 4 The party **wasn't** very good, so we **... long** (stay)
  - 5 It was very warm in the room, so I **... a window**. (open)
  - 6 'Did you go to the bank this morning?' 'No, I **...** time.' (have)
  - 7 'I cut my hand this morning.' 'How **...** that?' (do)

12.1

- 1 I saw Barbara but I **didn't see** Jane.
- 2 They worked on Monday but they **... on Tuesday**.
- 3 We went to the post office but we **... to the bank**.

any paper. German.

**12.2** Write questions with **Did ...?**

- Did you watch TV last night?**  
 1 I watched TV last night. And you?  
 2 I enjoyed the party. And you?  
 3 I had a good holiday. And you?  
 4 I finished work early. And you?  
 5 I slept well last night. And you?

**12.3** What did you do yesterday? Write positive or negative sentences.

- I watched TV. OR I didn't watch TV.**  
 1 (watch TV)  
 2 (get up before 7 o'clock)  
 3 (have a shower)  
 4 (buy a magazine)  
 5 (eat meat)  
 6 (go to bed before 10.30)

**12.4** Write B's questions. Use:

- |        |      |    |           |      |        |                  |      |     |
|--------|------|----|-----------|------|--------|------------------|------|-----|
| arrive | cost | go | go to bed | late | happen | have a nice time | stay | win |
|--------|------|----|-----------|------|--------|------------------|------|-----|

- 1 A: We went to New York last month.  
 B: Where **did you stay**?  
 A: With some friends.

- 2 A: I was late this morning.  
 B: What time **.....**?  
 A: Half past nine.

- 3 A: I played tennis this afternoon.  
 B: **.....**?  
 A: No, I lost.

- 4 A: I had a nice holiday.  
 B: Good. Where **.....**?  
 A: To the mountains.

12.5

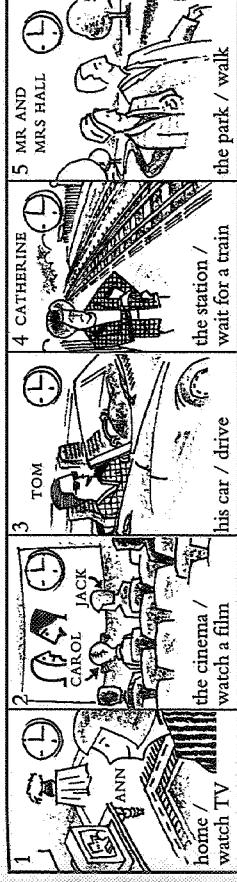
- 1 We went to the cinema but the film wasn't very good. We **... didn't ... enjoy** it. (enjoy)
- 2 Tim **... some new clothes** yesterday – two shirts, a jacket and a pullover. (buy)
- 3 **...** yesterday? 'No, it was a nice day' (rain)
- 4 The party **wasn't** very good, so we **... long** (stay)
- 5 It was very warm in the room, so I **... a window**. (open)
- 6 'Did you go to the bank this morning?' 'No, I **...** time.' (have)
- 7 'I cut my hand this morning.' 'How **...** that?' (do)

# I was doing (past continuous)

## EXERCISES

### 13.1

Look at the pictures. Where were these people at 3 o'clock yesterday afternoon? And what were they doing? Write two sentences for each picture.



1 Ann was at home. She was watching TV.

2 Carol and Jack ..... They ....

3 Tom .....

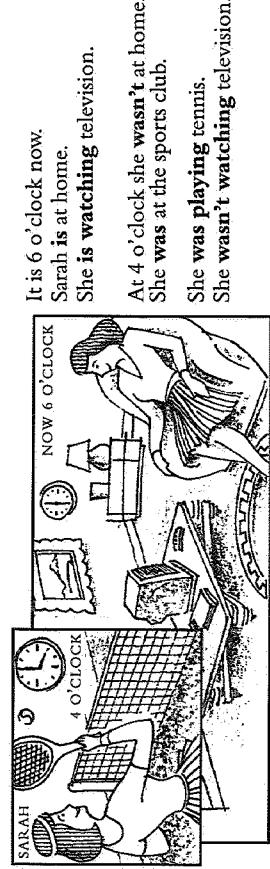
4 .....

5 .....

6 And you? I .....

**B** was/were + -ing is the past continuous:

positive		negative		question	
I	he she it	was	was not (wasn't)	I he she it	doing? watching? playing? running? living? etc.
we		were	were not (weren't)	we you they	
you					
they					



It is 6 o'clock now.

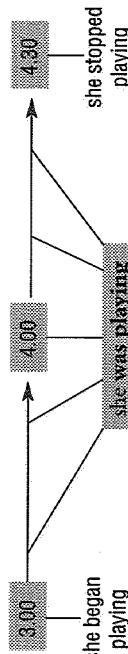
Sarah is at home.

She is **watching television**.

At 4 o'clock she **wasn't** at home.  
She **was** at the sports club.

She **was playing tennis**.

She **wasn't watching television**.



**C** am/is/are + -ing (present) → was/were + -ing (past):

• I'm working (now). I was working at 10.30 last night.

• It was raining, so we didn't go out.

• In 1985 we **were living** in Canada.

• Today she's wearing a skirt, but yesterday she **was wearing** trousers.

• I woke up early yesterday. It was a beautiful morning. The sun **was shining** and the birds **were singing**.

Spelling (live → living / run → running / lie → lying etc.) ⇒ Appendix 5

### C

am/is/are + -ing (present) → was/were + -ing (past):

• I'm working (now).

• It **isn't** raining (now).

• What are you doing (now)?

• What **were** you doing at three o'clock?

1 (wear / a jacket) I **wasn't** wearing a jacket.

2 (carry / a bag) .....

3 (go / to the dentist) .....

4 (eat / an ice-cream) .....

5 (carry / an umbrella) .....

6 (go / home) .....

7 (wear / a hat) .....



Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.

1 (you/live) Where **were** you living... in 1990?

2 (you/do) ..... at 2 o'clock?

3 (it/rain) ..... when you got up?

4 (Ann/drive) ..... so fast?

5 (Tim/wear) ..... a suit yesterday?

In London.

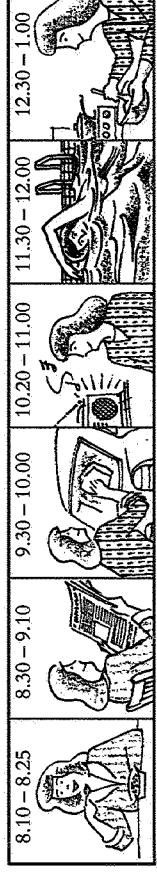
I was asleep.

No, it was sunny.

Because she was in a hurry.  
No, a T-shirt and jeans.

### 13.2

Sarah did a lot of things yesterday morning. Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



1 At 9:45 **she was washing her car**.

2 At 11:45 she ..... 4 At 12:50 .....

3 At 9 o'clock ..... 5 At 8:15 .....

6 At 10:30 .....

Complete the questions. Use was/were + -ing. Use what/where/why if necessary.

1 (you/live) Where **were** you living... in 1990?

2 (you/do) ..... at 2 o'clock?

3 (it/rain) ..... when you got up?

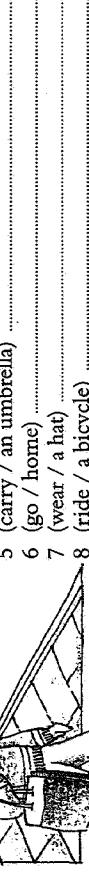
4 (Ann/drive) ..... so fast?

5 (Tim/wear) ..... a suit yesterday?

Look at the picture. You saw Joe in the street yesterday afternoon. What was he doing? Write positive or negative sentences.



Hi, I'm going shopping.



1 (wear / a jacket) I **wasn't** wearing a jacket.

2 (carry / a bag) .....

3 (go / to the dentist) .....

4 (eat / an ice-cream) .....

5 (carry / an umbrella) .....

6 (go / home) .....

7 (wear / a hat) .....

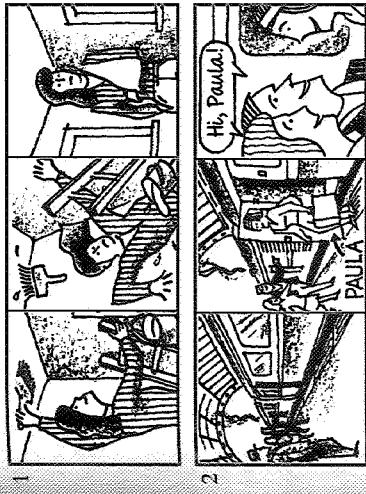
8 (ride / a bicycle) .....

## EXERCISES

# I was doing (past continuous) and I did (past simple)

**UNIT**  
**14**

14.1 Look at the pictures and put the verbs in the correct form, past continuous or past simple.

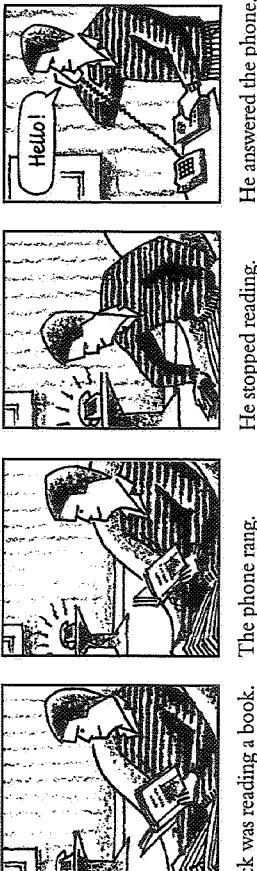


- Carol **broke** ..... (break) her arm last week. It ..... (happen)  
when she ..... (paint)  
her room. She ..... (fall) off the ladder.
- The train ..... (arrive)  
at the station and Paula ..... (get) off. Two friends of hers, John and Jenny, ..... (wait) to meet her.

- Yesterday Sue ..... (walk) along the road when she ..... (meet) Jim.  
He ..... (go) to the station to catch a train and he ..... (carry) a bag.  
They ..... (stop) to talk for a few minutes.

Put the verb into the past continuous or past simple.

- 1 A: What **were you doing** ..... (you/do) when the phone ..... **rang**... (ring)?  
B: I **was watching** ..... (watch) television.
- 2 A: Was Jane busy when you went to see her?  
B: Yes, she ..... (study).
- 3 A: What time ..... (the post / arrive) this morning?  
B: It ..... (come) while I ..... (study).
- 4 A: Was Margaret at work today?  
B: No, she ..... (not/go) to work. She was ill.
- 5 A: How fast ..... (you/drive) when the police ..... (stop) you?  
B: I don't know exactly but I ..... (not/drive) very fast.
- 6 A: ..... (your team / win) the football match yesterday?  
B: No, the weather was very bad, so we ..... (not/play).
- 7 A: How ..... (play) football I ..... (hit) the window.  
B: We ..... (kick) the ball and it ..... (hit) the window.
- 8 A: ..... (you/see) Jenny last night?  
B: Yes, she ..... (wear) a very nice jacket.
- 9 A: What ..... (you/do) at 2 o'clock this morning?  
B: I was asleep.
- 10 A: I ..... (lose) my key last night.  
B: How ...  
A: I ..... (climb) in through a window.



He answered the phone.

He stopped reading.

The phone rang.

So, **when** the phone rang, he was **reading**.

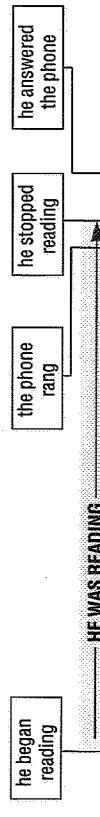
- What **happened**? The phone rang. **(past simple)**  
What **was Jack doing** when the phone rang? **(past continuous)**  
He was **reading** a book.

- What **did he do** when the phone rang?

- He **stopped** reading and **answered** the phone.

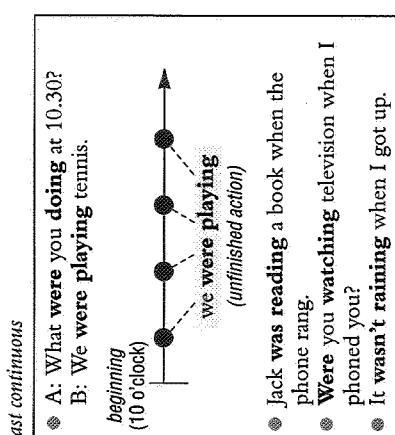
- Jack began reading **before** the phone rang.

- So, **when** the phone rang, he was **reading**.



### past simple

- A: What **did you do** yesterday morning?  
B: We **played** tennis. (= from beginning (10 o'clock) to end (11.30))
- Jack **read** a book yesterday. (= from beginning to end)
- Did you **watch** the film on television last night?
- It **didn't rain** while we were on holiday.
- I **started** work at 9 o'clock and **finished** at 4.30. At 2.30 I **was working**.
- It **was raining** when we **went out**. (= it started raining **before** we went out)
- I **saw** Lucy and Steve this morning. They **were waiting** at the bus stop.
- Jenny **fell** asleep while she **was reading**.



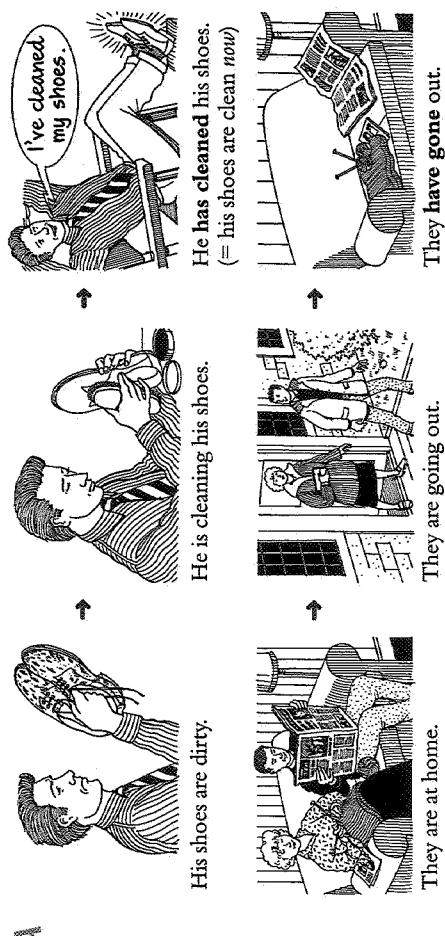
### past continuous

- A: What **were you doing** at 10.30?  
B: We **were playing** tennis.
- beginning (10 o'clock) ----- end (11.30)
- Jack **was reading** a book when the phone rang.
- Were you **watching** television when I phoned you?
- It **wasn't raining** when I got up.
- I **was sleeping** at 2 o'clock this morning.
- I **was asleep**.
- I **lost** my key last night.
- You **got** into your room?
- I **climbed** in through a window.

I did (past simple) ⇒ **[ ]** I was doing (past continuous) ⇒ **[ ]** while ⇒ **[ ]**

## EXERCISES

## I have done (present perfect 1)



**B**

They are at home.

They have gone out.  
(= they are not at home now)

**B** has cleaned / have gone etc. is the present perfect (have + past participle):

past participle	
cleaned	cleaned? finished?
finished	finished? started?
started	started? lost?
lost	lost? done?
done	done? been?
been	been? gone?
gone	gone?

I	have ('ve)	cleaned?
we	have (ve)	finished?
you	haven't	started?
they		lost?
he	has ('s)	done?
she	has not (hasn't)	been?
it		gone?

**Regular verbs:** The past participle is -ed (the same as the past simple):  
clean → I have cleaned      finish → we have finished

**Irregular verbs:** The past participle is sometimes the same as the past simple and sometimes different (⇒ Appendix 2-3). For example:  
the same: buy → I bought / I have bought  
different: break → I broke / I have broken  
fall → it fell / it has fallen

- I've lost my passport. (= I can't find my passport now)
- Where's Linda? 'She's gone to bed.' (= she is in bed now)
- We've bought a new car. (= we have a new car now)
- It's Rachel's birthday tomorrow and I haven't bought her a present.
- Bob is on holiday. 'Oh, where has he gone?' Can I take this newspaper? Have you finished with it?

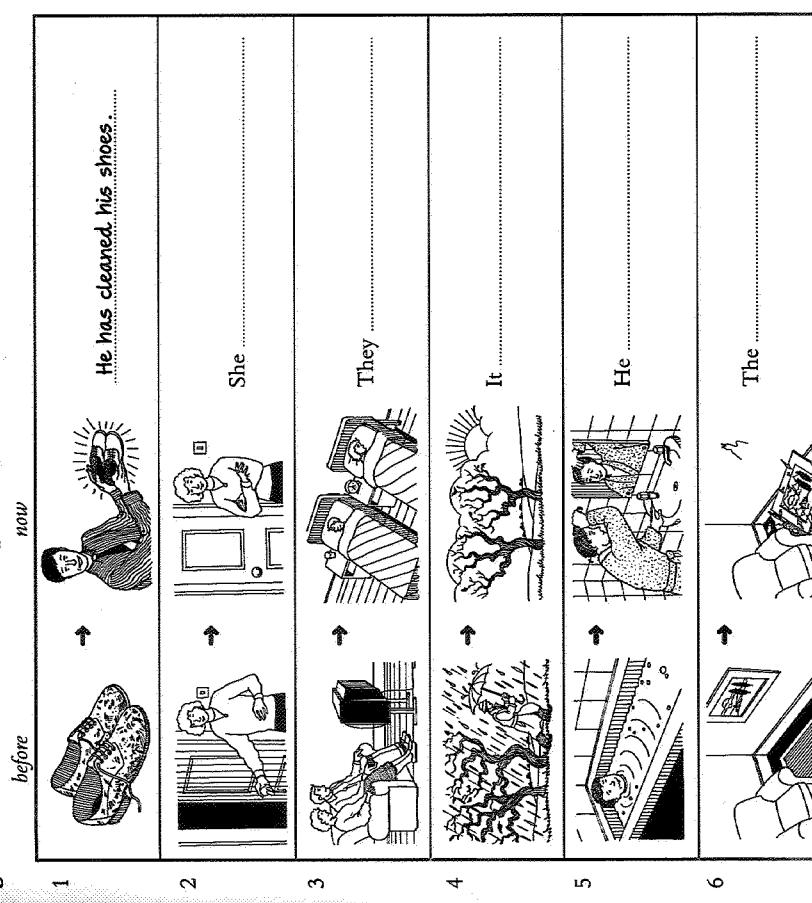
- I've found my umbrella. Somebody it.
- I'm looking for Sarah. Where she ?
- I know that woman but I her name.
- Sue is having a party tonight. She you ?
- What are you going to do? you ?
- Where are my glasses? 'I don't know. I them.'

- Complete the sentences with a verb from the list.
- break    buy    decide    finish    forget    go    invite    see    not/see    take    tell**
- 1 'Can I have this newspaper?' 'Yes, I've finished with it.'
  - 2 I ..... some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
  - 3 'Where is Liz?' 'She ..... out.'
  - 4 I'm looking for Paula. ..... you ..... that window.
  - 5 Look! Somebody ..... her.
  - 6 'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, I ..... it.
  - 7 I can't find my umbrella. Somebody ..... it.
  - 8 I'm looking for Sarah. Where ..... she ..... ?
  - 9 I know that woman but I ..... her name.
  - 10 Sue is having a party tonight. She ..... you ..... ?
  - 11 What are you going to do? ..... you ..... ?
  - 12 'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I ..... them.'

- [38]
- present perfect and past simple ⇒ irregular verbs ⇒

## 15.1 Look at the pictures. What has happened? Choose from:

go to bed    clean his shoes    stop raining    close the door    fall down    have a bath



## 15.2

Complete the sentences with a verb from the list.

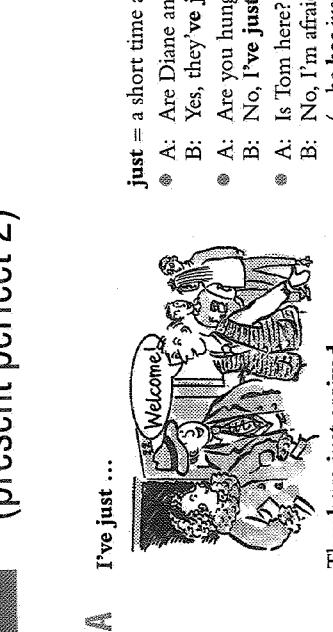
**break    buy    decide    finish    forget    go    invite    see    not/see    take    tell**

- 1 'Can I have this newspaper?' 'Yes, I've finished with it.'
- 2 I ..... some new shoes. Do you want to see them?
- 3 'Where is Liz?' 'She ..... out.'
- 4 I'm looking for Paula. ..... you ..... that window.
- 5 Look! Somebody ..... her.
- 6 'Does Lisa know that you're going away?' 'Yes, I ..... it.'
- 7 I can't find my umbrella. Somebody ..... it.
- 8 I'm looking for Sarah. Where ..... she ..... ?
- 9 I know that woman but I ..... her name.
- 10 Sue is having a party tonight. She ..... you ..... ?
- 11 What are you going to do? ..... you ..... ?
- 12 'Where are my glasses?' 'I don't know. I ..... them.'

# I've just ... I've already ... I haven't ... yet

(present perfect 2)

## EXERCISES



**A** I've just ...

**just** = a short time ago

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?  
B: Yes, they've **just arrived**.
- A: Are you hungry?  
B: No, I've **just had** dinner.
- A: Is Tom here?  
B: No, I'm afraid he's **just gone**.  
(= he has just gone)

They have just arrived.

**B** I've already ...

**already** = before you expected / before I expected

- A: What time are Diane and Paul coming?  
B: They've **already arrived**. (= before you expected)
- It's only nine o'clock and Ann has **already gone** to bed. (= before I expected)
- A: John, this is Mary.  
B: Yes, I know. We've **already met**.



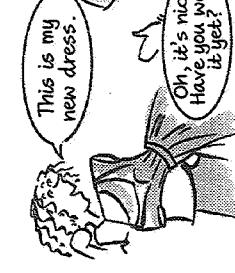
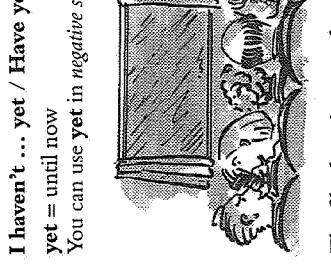
**C** I haven't ... yet / Have you ... yet?

**yet** = until now

You can use **yet** in negative sentences and questions. **Yet** is usually *at the end*.

yet in negative sentences:

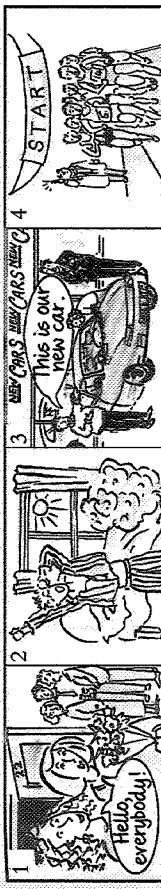
- A: Are Diane and Paul here?  
B: No, they **haven't arrived** yet.  
(but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)
- A: Does John know that you're going away?  
B: No, I **haven't told** him yet.  
(but B is going to tell him soon)
- Margaret has bought a new dress but she **hasn't worn** it yet.



yet in questions:

- A: Have Diane and Paul **arrived** yet?  
B: No, not yet. We're still waiting for them.
- A: Has Linda **started** her new job **yet**?  
B: No, she starts next week.
- A: This is my new dress.  
B: Oh, it's nice. **Have you worn** it yet?

16.1 Write a sentence with **just** for each picture.



- 1 They've **just arrived**.  
2 He ....

- 3 They ....  
4 The race ....

16.2 Complete the sentences. Use **already + present perfect**.

- 1 What time is Paul arriving?  
2 Do Sue and Bill want to see the film?  
3 Don't forget to phone Tom.  
4 When is Martin going away?  
5 Do you want to read the newspaper?  
6 When does Linda start her new job?

16.3 Write a sentence with **just** (They've just ... / She's just ... etc.) or a negative sentence with **yet** (They haven't ... yet / She hasn't ... yet etc.).

- 1 I'm **going out** soon.  
2 The bus ....  
3 ....  
4 This present is for me.

- 5 ....  
6 ....

yet = until now

You can use **yet** in negative sentences and questions. **Yet** is usually *at the end*.

yet in negative sentences:

- A: Are Diane and Paul here?  
B: No, they **haven't arrived** yet.  
(but B expects Diane and Paul to arrive soon)
- A: Does John know that you're going away?  
B: No, I **haven't told** him yet.  
(but B is going to tell him soon)
- Margaret has bought a new dress but she **hasn't worn** it yet.

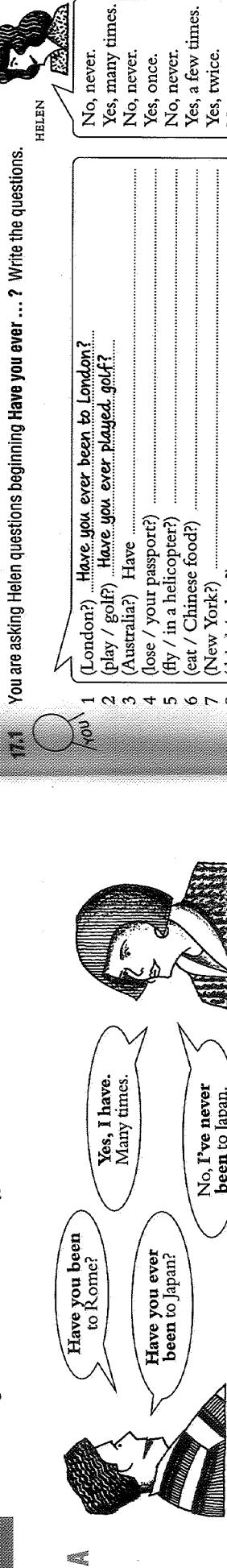
The film hasn't started yet.

16.4 Write questions with **yet**.

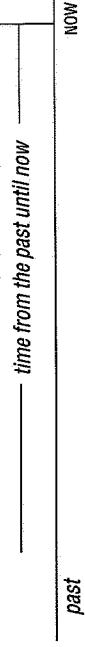
- 1 Your friend must write a letter. Perhaps she has written it now. You ask her:  
**Have you started your new job yet?**
- 2 Your friend has some new neighbours. Perhaps he has met them. You ask him:  
..... you .....
- 3 Your friend must write a letter. Perhaps she has written it now. You ask her:  
**.....**
- 4 Tom was trying to sell his car. Perhaps he has sold it now. You ask about Tom:  
.....

# Have you ever...? (present perfect 3)

## EXERCISES



HAVE YOU EVER BEEN TO JAPAN?



- 'Have you **been** to France?' (*in your life*) 'No, I **haven't**'
- I've **been** to Canada but I **haven't been** to the United States.
- Mary is an interesting person. She **has had** many different jobs and **has lived** in many places.
- I've **seen** that woman before but I can't remember where.
- How many times **has Brazil won** the World Cup?
- 'Have you **read** this book?' 'Yes, I've **read** it twice.' (twice = two times)

### B present perfect + ever (in questions) and never:

- 'Has Ann **ever been** to Australia?' 'Yes, once.' (once = one time)
- 'Have you **ever played** golf?' 'Yes, I often play golf.'
- My mother **has never travelled** by air.
- I've **never ridden** a horse.
- 'Who is that man?' 'I don't know. I've **never seen** him before.'

### C gone and been



Bill has **gone** to Spain.  
(= he is in Spain now)

Compare:

- I can't find Susan. Where has she **gone**? (= Where is she now?)
- Oh, hello Susan! I was looking for you. Where **have you been**?

present perfect ⇒ **[42]** present perfect and past simple ⇒ **[42]**

### 17.1 You are asking Helen questions beginning **Have you ever...?** Write the questions.

HELEN

1 (London?)	Have you ever <b>been to London?</b>
2 (play / golf?)	Have you ever <b>played golf?</b>
3 (Australia?)	Have ...
4 (lose / your passport?)	...
5 (fly / in a helicopter?)	...
6 (eat / Chinese food?)	...
7 (New York?)	...
8 (drive / a bus?)	...
9 (break / your leg?)	...

17.2 Write sentences about Helen. (Look at her answers in Exercise 17.1.)

1 (New York)	Helen <b>has been to New York twice.</b>
2 (Australia)	Helen ...
3 (Chinese food)	...
4 (drive / a bus)	...

Now write about yourself. How often have you done these things?

5 (New York)	I ...
6 (play / tennis)	...
7 (fly / in a helicopter)	...
8 (be / late for work or school)	...

17.3 Mary is 65 years old. She has had an interesting life. What has she done?

MARY	all over the world	a lot of interesting things
	#many different jobs	a lot of interesting people
	ten books	married three times
	have	
	do	
	travel	
	write	
	meet	

- 1 **She has had many different jobs...**
- 2 She ...
- 3 ...
- 4 ...
- 5 ...
- 6 ...

### 17.4 Put in **gone** or **been**.

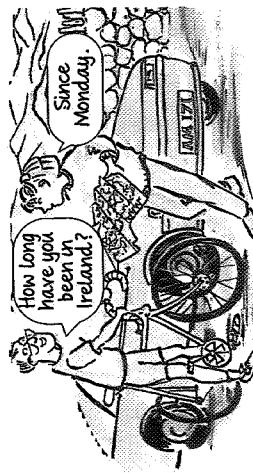
- 1 Bill is on holiday at the moment. He's **gone** to Spain.
- 2 'Where's Jill?' 'She's not here. I think she's ... to the bank.'
- 3 Hello, Sue. Where have you ... ? Have you ... to the bank?
- 4 'Have you ever ..... to Mexico?' 'No, never.'
- 5 My parents aren't at home this evening. They've ..... out.
- 6 There's a new restaurant in town. Have you ..... to it?
- 7 Ann knows Paris well. She's ..... there many times.
- 8 Helen was here earlier but I think she's ..... now.

# How long have you ...? (present perfect 4)

## EXERCISES

### 18.1 Complete these sentences.

- A Jill is on holiday in Ireland. She is there now.  
 She arrived in Ireland on Monday.  
 Today is Thursday.  
 How long has she been in Ireland?  
 She has been in Ireland { since Monday. for three days.
- B Jill is in hospital. She has been in hospital since Monday.  
 I know Sarah. I have known her for a long time.  
 Linda and Frank are married. They ..... married since 1989.  
 Brian is ill. He ..... ill for the last few days.  
 We live in Scott Road. We ..... there for ten years.  
 Catherine works in a bank. She ..... in a bank for five years.  
 Alan has a headache. He ..... a headache since he got up this morning.  
 I'm learning English. I ..... English for six months.



Compare is and has been:

She is in Ireland now.	is = present
She has been in Ireland { since Monday. for three days.	has been = present perfect
Monday	NOW

B Compare:

present simple

present perfect simple (have been/have lived/have known etc.)

Mark and Liz are married.

They have been married for five years.

(not 'They are married for five years.')

How long have you been married?

(not 'How long are you married?')

Do you know Sarah?

How long have you known her?

(not 'How long do you know her?')

I know Sarah.

How long has she lived in London?

She has lived there all her life.

How long have you had your car?

I have a car.

How long have you had it since April?

I've had it since April.

present continuous

How long have you been learning German?

(not 'How long are you learning German?')

I've been learning German for two years.

David is watching TV.

How long has he been watching TV?

He's been (= He has been) watching TV since 5 o'clock.

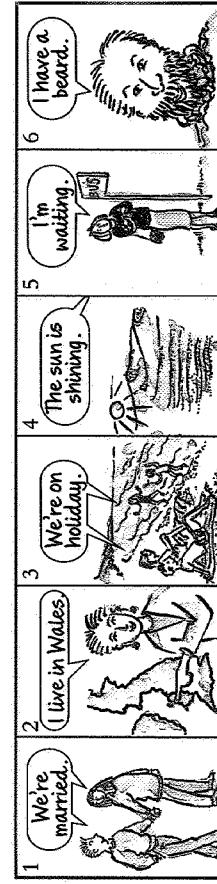
It's been (= It has been) raining all day.

### 18.2 Make questions with How long ... ?

#### 18.3 How long ... ?

- 1 Jill is on holiday.  
 2 Mike and Judy are in Brazil.  
 3 I know Margaret.  
 4 Diana is learning Italian.  
 5 My brother lives in Canada.  
 6 I'm a teacher.  
 7 It is raining.

#### 18.3



Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Your sentence must end with one of these:

for ten minutes all day all her life for ten years since he was 20 since Sunday  
 1 They have been married for ten years.  
 2 She .....  
 3 They .....  
 4 The sun .....  
 5 She .....  
 6 He .....

### 18.4 Which is right?

- 1 Mark is / has been in Canada since April. has been is right  
 2 Jane is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her very well.  
 3 Jane is a good friend of mine. I know / have known her for a long time.  
 4 Sorry I'm late. How long are you / have you been waiting? 'Not long. Only five minutes.'  
 5 Martin works / has worked in a hotel now. He likes his job very much.  
 6 Linda is reading the newspaper. She is / has been reading it for two hours.  
 7 'How long do you live / have you lived in this house?' 'About ten years.'  
 8 'Is that a new coat?' 'No, I have / I've had this coat for a long time.'  
 9 Tom is / has been in Spain at the moment. He is / has been there for the last three days.

# for since ago

## EXERCISES

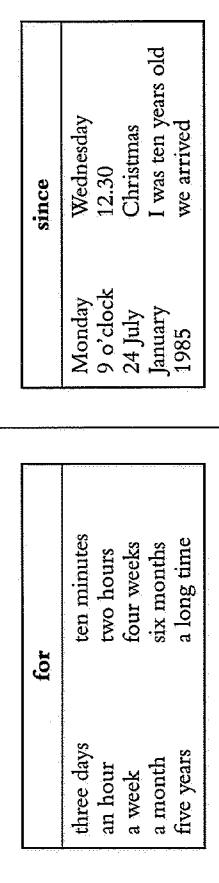
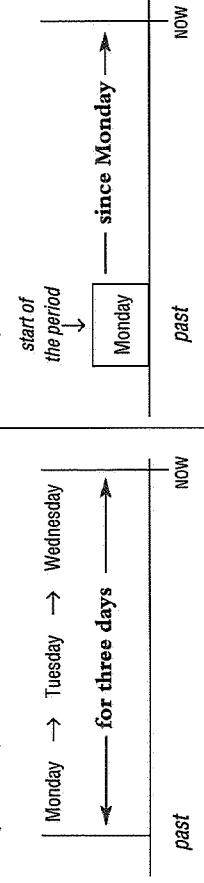
### UNIT 19

#### A for and since

We use **for** and **since** to say *how long*:

- Jill is in Ireland. She **has been there** { **for three days**.  
since Monday.

We use **for + a period of time (three days / two years etc.):**



- Richard has been in Canada **for six months**. (*not 'since six months'*)
- We've been waiting **for two hours**. (*not 'since two hours'*)
- I've lived in London **for a long time**.

We use **ago** with the **past** (started/did/had/was etc.).

**Compare ago and for:**

- ago = *before now*:
- Susan started her new job **three weeks ago**. (= three weeks before now)
- 'When did Tom go out?' "Ten minutes ago." (= ten minutes before now)
- I had dinner **an hour ago**.
- Life was very different **a hundred years ago**.

We use **ago** with the **past** (started/did/had/was etc.).

**Compare ago and for:**

- When did Jill arrive in Ireland?
- She arrived in Ireland **three days ago**.
- How long has she **been** in Ireland?
- She **has been** in Ireland **for three days**.

#### B Write for or since.

19.1

- 1 Jill has been in Ireland **since** Monday.
- 2 Jill has been in Ireland **for** three days.
- 3 My aunt has lived in Australia ..... 15 years.

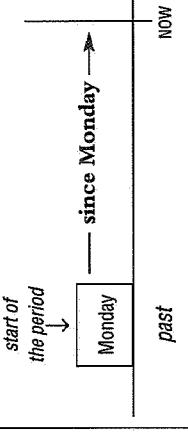
- 4 Margaret is in her office. She has been there ..... 7 o'clock.
- 5 India has been an independent country ..... 1947.
- 6 The bus is late. We've been waiting ..... 20 minutes.

- 7 Nobody lives in those houses. They have been empty ..... many years.
- 8 Mike has been ill ..... a long time. He has been in hospital ..... October.

Answer these questions. Use **ago**.

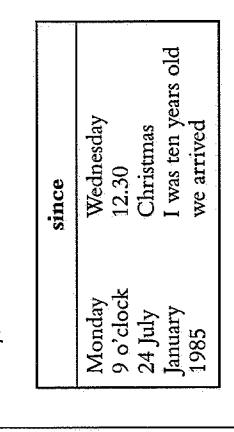
19.2

We use **since + the start of the period (Monday / 9 o'clock etc.):**



Complete the sentences. Use the words in brackets (...) + **for** or **ago**.

19.3



- 1 Jill arrived in Ireland **three days ago**.
- 2 Jill has been in Ireland **for three days**.
- 3 Linda and Frank have been married ..... (three days)
- 4 Linda and Frank got married ..... (three days)
- 5 Dan arrived ..... (20 years)
- 6 We had lunch ..... (ten minutes)
- 7 Silvia has been learning English ..... (an hour)
- 8 Have you known Lisa ..... (six months)
- 9 I bought these shoes ..... (a long time)
- 10 I bought these shoes ..... (a few days)

Complete the sentences with **for** or **since**.

19.4

- Richard has been in Canada **since January**. (= from January to now)
- We've been waiting **since 9 o'clock**. (= from 9 o'clock to now)
- I've lived in London **since I was ten years old**.

- Jill is in Ireland now. She arrived there three days ago. **She has been there for three days.**
- 2 Jack is here. He arrived here on Tuesday. He has ..... (She has .....)
- 3 It's raining. It started an hour ago. It's been ..... (She has .....)
- 4 I know Sue. I first met Sue two years ago. I've ..... (She has .....)
- 5 I have a camera. I bought it in 1989. I've ..... (She has .....)
- 6 They are married. They got married six months ago. They've ..... (She has .....)

7 Liz is studying medicine at university. She started three years ago.

- 8 Dave plays the piano. He started when he was seven years old. Dave has ..... (She has .....)

19.5 Write sentences about yourself. Begin with the words in brackets (...).

1

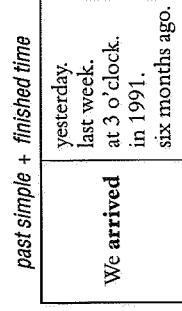
- 1 (I've lived) .....  
2 (I've been) .....  
3 (I've been learning) .....  
4 (I've known) .....  
5 (I've had) .....

# I have done (present perfect) and I did (past simple)

## EXERCISES

20.1 Use the words in brackets (...) to answer the questions.

A With a **finished time** (yesterday / last week etc.), we use the past (arrived/saw/was etc.):



Do not use the present perfect (**have arrived / have done / have been etc.**) with a finished time:

- I saw Paula **yesterday**. (*not* 'I have seen')
- Where were you **on Sunday afternoon**? (*not* 'Where have you been')
- We **didn't have** a holiday **last year**. (*not* 'We haven't had')
- 'What **did** you **do last night**?' 'I **stayed** at home.'
- William Shakespeare **lived from 1564 to 1616**. He was a writer. He **wrote** many plays and poems.

Use the past simple to ask **When ... ?** or **What time ... ?**

- **When did** they arrive? (*not* When have they arrived?)

B Compare:

**present perfect**

- I **have lost** my key.  
(= I can't find it **now**)
- Bill **has gone** home.  
(= he isn't here **now**)
- Have you **seen** Ann?  
(= where is she **now**?)

- past simple**
- I **lost** my key **last week**.
  - Bill **went** home **ten minutes ago**.
  - Did you **see** Ann **on Saturday**?

**finished time**

- |      |     |
|------|-----|
| past | NOW |
|------|-----|
- Have you **ever been** to Spain?  
(= in your life, until **now**)
  - My friend is a writer. He **has written** many books.
  - The letter **didn't arrive yesterday**.
  - We **lived** in Glasgow for six years, but now we live in Singapore.

- |      |     |
|------|-----|
| past | NOW |
|------|-----|
- Did you **go** to Spain **last year**?
  - Shakespeare **wrote** many plays and poems.
  - The letter **arrived yesterday**.
  - We **lived** there now.

20.2 Right or wrong? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

- |                                  |                                      |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 Have you seen Ann?             | Yes, I <u>saw her</u> 5 minutes ago. |
| 2 Have you started your new job? | Yes, I <u>started</u> it last week.  |
| 3 Have your friends arrived?     | Yes, they <u>arrived</u> .           |
| 4 Has Sarah gone away?           | Yes, she <u>has gone</u> .           |
| 5 Have you worn your new shoes?  | Yes, I <u>wore</u> them.             |

Right or wrong? Correct the verbs that are wrong. (The verbs are underlined.)

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 I've <u>lost</u> my key. I can't find it.           | 1 I've <u>lost</u> my key. I can't find it.           |
| 2 Have you <u>seen</u> Ann yesterday?                 | 2 Have you <u>seen</u> Ann yesterday?                 |
| 3 I've <u>finished</u> my work at 2 o'clock.          | 3 I've <u>finished</u> my work at 2 o'clock.          |
| 4 I'm <u>ready</u> now. I've <u>finished</u> my work. | 4 I'm <u>ready</u> now. I've <u>finished</u> my work. |
| 5 What time <u>have you finished</u> your work?       | 5 What time <u>have you finished</u> your work?       |
| 6 Sue isn't here. She's <u>gone</u> out.              | 6 Sue isn't here. She's <u>gone</u> out.              |
| 7 Jim's grandmother <u>has died</u> in 1989.          | 7 Jim's grandmother <u>has died</u> in 1989.          |
| 8 Where <u>have you been</u> last night?              | 8 Where <u>have you been</u> last night?              |

Put the verb in the present perfect or past simple.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 My friend is a writer. He <u>has written</u> (write) many books.            | 1 My friend is a writer. He <u>has written</u> (write) many books.              |
| 2 We <u>didn't have</u> (not/have) a holiday last year.                       | 2 We <u>didn't have</u> (not/have) a holiday last year.                         |
| 3 I <u>played</u> (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.                          | 3 I <u>played</u> (play) tennis yesterday afternoon.                            |
| 4 What time <u>did you go</u> (you/go) to bed last night?                     | 4 What time <u>did you go</u> (you/go) to bed last night?                       |
| 5 <u>Has</u> (you/ever/meet) a famous person?                                 | 5 <u>Has</u> (you/ever/meet) a famous person?                                   |
| 6 The weather <u>was good</u> (not/be) very good yesterday.                   | 6 The weather <u>was good</u> (not/be) very good yesterday.                     |
| 7 My hair is wet. I <u>wash</u> (wash) my hair before breakfast this morning. | 7 My hair is wet. I <u>washed</u> (wash) my hair before breakfast this morning. |
| 8 I <u>visit</u> (visit) many countries.                                      | 8 I <u>visited</u> (visit) many countries.                                      |
| 9 Kathy travels a lot. She <u>is</u> (visit) many countries.                  | 9 Kathy travels a lot. She <u>is</u> (visit) many countries.                    |
| 10 'Is Sonia here?' 'No, she <u>isn't</u> (not/come) yet.'                    | 10 'Is Sonia here?' 'No, she <u>isn't</u> (not/come) yet.'                      |

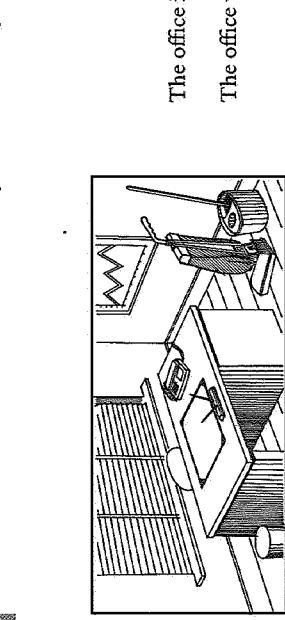
Put the verb in the present perfect or past simple.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 A: <u>Have you ever been</u> (you/ever/be) to Florida?   | 1 A: <u>Have you ever been</u> (you/ever/be) to Florida?   |
| B: Yes, we <u>went</u> . (go) there on holiday two years ago.  | B: Yes, we <u>went</u> . (go) there on holiday two years ago.  |
| A: <u>Has</u> (you/have) a good time?  | A: <u>Has</u> (you/have) a good time?  |
| B: Yes, it <u>was great</u> . (be) great.  | B: Yes, it <u>was great</u> . (be) great.  |
| 2 A: Where's Alan? <u>Did</u> (you/see) him?   | 2 A: Where's Alan? <u>Did</u> (you/see) him?   |
| B: Yes, he <u>met</u> . (go) out a few minutes ago.  | B: Yes, he <u>met</u> . (go) out a few minutes ago.  |
| A: And Julia?  | A: And Julia?  |
| B: I don't know. I <u>haven't seen</u> (not/see) her at a party last week. She's very nice.  | B: I don't know. I <u>haven't seen</u> (not/see) her at a party last week. She's very nice.  |
| 3 Rose works in a factory. She <u>has worked</u> (work) there for six months. Before that she <u>was</u> (be) a waitress in a restaurant. She <u>has worked</u> (work) there for two years but she <u>enjoys</u> (not/enjoy) it very much. | 3 Rose works in a factory. She <u>has worked</u> (work) there for six months. Before that she <u>was</u> (be) a waitress in a restaurant. She <u>has worked</u> (work) there for two years but she <u>enjoys</u> (not/enjoy) it very much. |
| 4 A: Do you know Martin's sister? B: I <u>met</u> (see) her a few times but I <u>never speak</u> (never/speak) to her. A: Yes, I <u>met</u> (meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.  | 4 A: Do you know Martin's sister? B: I <u>met</u> (see) her a few times but I <u>never speak</u> (never/speak) to her. A: Yes, I <u>met</u> (meet) her at a party last week. She's very nice.  |

# is done    was done (passive 1)

UNIT  
21

## EXERCISES



Compare active and passive:

Somebody **cleans** the office every day. (active)

The office **is cleaned** every day. (passive)

Somebody **cleaned** the office yesterday. (active)

The office **was cleaned** yesterday. (passive)

The passive is:

present simple	am/is/are (not)	+ past simple	past participle
clean	cleaned	clean	cleaned
invent	invented	invent	invented
injure	injured	injure	injured

The past participle of regular verbs is **-ed** (cleaned/damaged etc.).

For a list of **irregular** past participles (done/built/taken etc.), see Appendix 2-3.

- Butter **is made** from milk.
- Oranges **are imported** into Britain.
- How often are these rooms **cleaned**?
- I am never invited to parties.
- This house **was built** 100 years ago.
- These houses **were built** 100 years ago.
- When was the telephone **invented**?
- We weren't invited to the party last week.
- Was anybody **injured** in the accident? Yes, two people **were taken** to hospital.

- C** was/were born
- I was born in London in 1962. (*not* 'I am born')
  - Where were you born?

- D** Passive + by ...
- We were woken up by a **loud** noise. (= The noise woke us up.)
  - The telephone was invented by **Alexander Bell** in 1876.
  - My brother was bitten by a **dog** last week.

Write sentences from the words in brackets (...). Sentences 1-7 are present.

- 1 (the office / clean / every day) **The office is cleaned every day.**  
 2 (these rooms / clean / every day?) **Are these rooms cleaned every day?**

- 3 (glass / make / from sand) **Glass**  
 4 (stamps / sell / in a post office)  
 5 (this room / not / use / very often)  
 6 (we / allow / to park here?)  
 7 (how / this word / pronounce?)

Sentences 8-15 are past.

- 8 (the office / clean / yesterday) **The office was cleaned yesterday.**  
 9 (the house / paint / last month) **The house**  
 10 (three people / injure / in the accident)  
 11 (my bicycle / steal / a few days ago)  
 12 (when / this bridge / build?)  
 13 (you / invite / to the party last week?)  
 14 (how / these windows / break?)  
 15 (I / not / wake up / by the noise)

Correct these sentences.

- 21.1 1 [This house built] 100 years ago. **This house was built**...  
 2 Football plays in most countries of the world.  
 3 Why did the letter send to the wrong address?  
 4 A garage is a place where cars repair.  
 5 Where are you born?  
 6 How many languages are speaking in Switzerland?  
 7 Somebody broke into our house but nothing stolen.  
 8 When was invented the bicycle?

21.2 Complete the sentences. Use the passive (present or past) of these verbs:

- |              |               |             |             |               |             |             |             |              |             |
|--------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
| <b>clean</b> | <b>damage</b> | <b>find</b> | <b>give</b> | <b>invite</b> | <b>make</b> | <b>make</b> | <b>show</b> | <b>steal</b> | <b>take</b> |
|--------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|---------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|
- 1 The room **is cleaned**... every day.  
 2 I saw an accident yesterday. Two people **were taken**... to hospital.  
 3 Paper **was**... from wood.  
 4 There was a fire at the hotel last week. Two of the rooms **were**... to me by a friend of mine.  
 5 'Where did you get this picture?' It **was**... on British television.  
 6 Many American programmes **were**...  
 7 'Did Jim and Sue go to the wedding?' 'No. They **were**... but they didn't go.'  
 8 'How old is this film?' 'It **was**... in 1965.'

- 9 My car **was**... last week but the next day it **was**... by the police.
- A** Ian was born in Edinburgh.
- 1 Ian / Edinburgh  
 2 Sally / Birmingham  
 3 her parents / Ireland  
 4 (you / ???)  
 5 (your mother / ???)

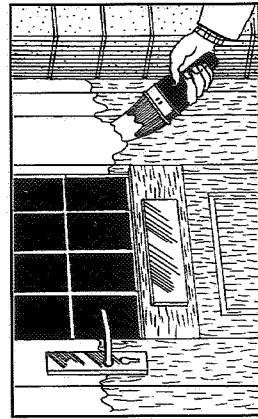
Where were they born?

- B** irregular verbs ⇒ **UNIT 21, PAGE 23**
- irregular verbs ⇒ **UNIT 21, PAGE 23**
- is being done / has been done ⇒ **UNIT 21, PAGE 23**
- active and passive ⇒ **UNIT 21, PAGE 23**

# is being done has been done (passive 2)

## EXERCISES

**A** is/are being ... (present continuous passive)



Somebody is painting the door. (active)  
The door is being painted. (passive)

- My car is at the garage. It is being repaired. (= somebody is repairing it)
- Some new houses are being built opposite the park. (= somebody is building them)

Compare the present continuous and present simple:

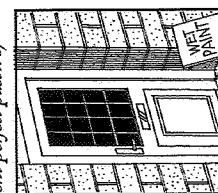
The office is being cleaned at the moment. (continuous)

The office is cleaned every day. (simple)

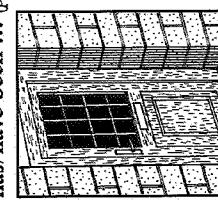
- In Britain football matches are usually played on Saturday, but no matches are being played next Saturday.

For the present continuous and present simple, see Units 8 and 26.

**B** has/have been ... (present perfect passive)



Somebody has painted the door. (active)  
The door has been painted. (passive)



NOW

My key has been stolen. (= somebody has stolen it)

My keys have been stolen. (= somebody has stolen them)

I'm not going to the party. I haven't been invited. (= nobody has invited me)

Has this shirt been washed? (= Has somebody washed it?)

Compare the present perfect and past simple:

The room is clean now. It has been cleaned. (present perfect)

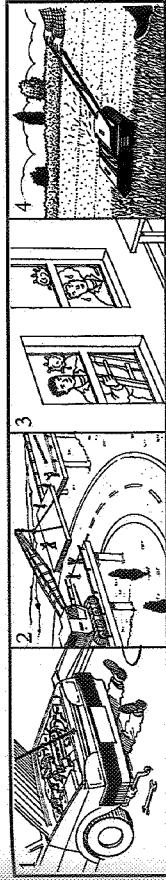
The room was cleaned yesterday. (past simple)

I can't find my keys. I think they've been stolen. (present perfect)

My keys were stolen last week. (past simple)

For the present perfect and past simple, see Unit 20.

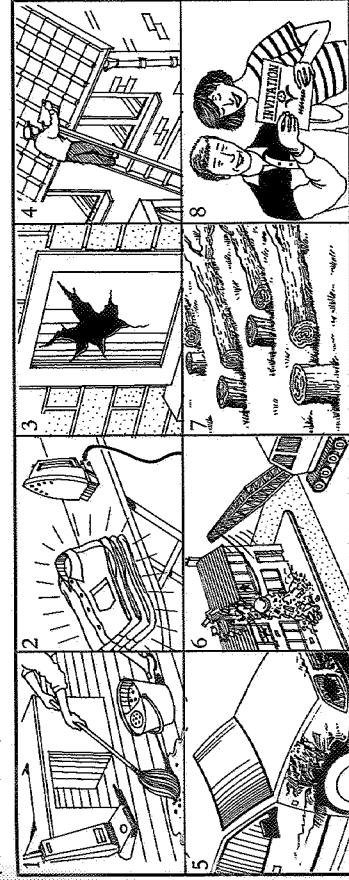
**Z1** What's happening?



1 The car is being repaired.  
2 A bridge

3 The windows .....  
4 The grass .....

**Z2** Look at the pictures. What is happening or what has happened? Use the present continuous (is/are being ...) or the present perfect (has/have been ...).



- 1 (the office / clean) The office is being cleaned.  
2 (the shirts / iron) The shirts have been ironed.  
3 (the window / break) The window .....  
4 (the roof / repair) The roof .....  
5 (the car / damage) .....  
6 (the houses / knock / down) .....  
7 (the trees / cut / down) .....  
8 (they / invite / to a party) .....

**Z3** Use the words in brackets (...) to complete the sentences. (Units 21 and 22)

- 1 I can't use my office at the moment. It is being painted. (paint).  
2 We didn't go to the party. We weren't invited. (not/invite).  
3 The washing machine was broken but it's OK now. It ..... (repair).  
4 The washing machine ..... (repair) yesterday afternoon. (make).  
5 A factory is a place where things ..... (they/build)?  
6 How old are these houses? When ..... (the computer / use) at the moment?  
7 A: ..... B: Yes, Jim is using it. (they/call)?  
8 I've never seen these flowers before. What ..... (blow) down in the storm last night. (damage) last week (not/repair) yet.

# be/have/do in present and past tenses

## EXERCISES

**A** **be** (= am/is/are/was/were) + -ing (cleaning/working etc.)

<b>am/is/are + -ing</b> <i>(present continuous)</i>	⇒ Units 3-4 and 26
--	--------------------

- I was working when she arrived.
- It wasn't raining, so we went out.
- What were you doing at three o'clock?

**was/were + -ing**  
*(past continuous)*  
⇒ Unit 13

- The room is cleaned every day.
- I'm never invited to parties.
- Oranges are imported into Britain.
- The room was cleaned yesterday.
- These houses were built 100 years ago.
- How was the window broken?
- Where were you born?

**am/is/are + past participle**  
*(passive present simple)*  
⇒ Unit 21

**was/were + past participle**  
*(passive past simple)*  
⇒ Unit 15-18

Put in is/are/do/does.

- 1 Do you work in the evenings?
- 2 Where are they going?
- 3 Why are you looking at me?
- 4 Bill live near you?
- 5 You like cooking?
- 6 the sun shining?
- 7 What time do the shops close?
- 8 Ann working today?
- 9 What does this word mean?
- 10 You feeling all right?

Put in am not / isn't / aren't / don't / doesn't. All these sentences are negative.

- 1 Tom doesn't work in the evenings.
- 2 I'm very tired. I don't want to go out this evening.
- 3 I'm very tired. I'm not going out this evening.
- 4 George is not working this week. He's on holiday.
- 5 My parents are usually at home. They don't go out very often.
- 6 Barbara has travelled a lot but she doesn't speak any foreign languages.
- 7 You can turn off the television. I am not watching it.
- 8 There's a party next week but we aren't going.

Put in was/were/did/have/has.

- 1 Where were your shoes made?
- 2 When did you go out last night?
- 3 What was you doing at 10.30?
- 4 Where was your mother born?
- 5 Where has Barbara gone home?
- 6 What time did she go?
- 7 When did these houses built?
- 8 Jim arrived yet?
- 9 Why did you go home early?
- 10 How long have they been married?

Put in is/are/was/were/have/has.

- 1 Joe has lost his passport.
- 2 This bridge was built ten years ago.
- 3 You finished your work yet?
- 4 This town is always clean. The streets are cleaned every day.
- 5 Where was you born?
- 6 I just made some coffee. Would you like some?
- 7 Glass was made from sand.
- 8 This is a very old photograph. It has been taken a long time ago.
- 9 Joe has bought a new car.

23.4 Complete the sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form.

- |            |     |       |    |         |        |      |           |      |
|------------|-----|-------|----|---------|--------|------|-----------|------|
| damage     | eat | enjoy | go | go away | listen | open | pronounce | read |
| understand | use |       |    |         |        |      |           |      |
- 1 I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's raining.
  - 2 Why are you so tired? Did you go to bed late last night?
  - 3 Where are the chocolates? Have you eaten them all?
  - 4 How is your new job? Are you used to it?
  - 5 My car was badly damaged in the accident but I was OK.
  - 6 Chris has got a car but she doesn't use it very often.
  - 7 Mary isn't at home. She has gone away for a few days.
  - 8 I don't understand the problem. Can you explain it again?
  - 9 Martin is in his room. He's eating to music.
  - 10 I don't know how to say this word. How is it pronounced?
  - 11 How do you read this window? Can you show me?

23.1

Put in was/were/were/have/has.

- 1 I was working when she arrived.
- 2 It wasn't raining, so we went out.
- 3 What were you doing at three o'clock?

23.2

Put in was/were/did/have/has.

- 1 Tom was working in the evenings.
- 2 I'm very tired. I want to go out this evening.
- 3 I'm very tired. I'm going out this evening.
- 4 George is working this week. He's on holiday.
- 5 My parents are usually at home. They go out very often.
- 6 Barbara has travelled a lot but she speaks any foreign languages.
- 7 You can turn off the television. I was watching it.
- 8 There's a party next week but we are going.

23.3

- 1 Where were your shoes made?
- 2 When did you go out last night?
- 3 What was you doing at 10.30?
- 4 Where was your mother born?
- 5 Where has Barbara gone home?
- 6 What time did she go?
- 7 When did these houses built?
- 8 Jim arrived yet?
- 9 Why did you go home early?
- 10 How long have they been married?

23.4

- 1 Joe has lost his passport.
- 2 This bridge was built ten years ago.
- 3 You finished your work yet?
- 4 This town is always clean. The streets are cleaned every day.
- 5 Where was you born?
- 6 I just made some coffee. Would you like some?
- 7 Glass was made from sand.
- 8 This is a very old photograph. It has been taken a long time ago.
- 9 Joe has bought a new car.

23.5

Complete the sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form.

- |            |     |       |    |         |        |      |           |      |
|------------|-----|-------|----|---------|--------|------|-----------|------|
| damage     | eat | enjoy | go | go away | listen | open | pronounce | read |
| understand | use |       |    |         |        |      |           |      |
- 1 I'm going to take an umbrella with me. It's raining.
  - 2 Why are you so tired? Did you go to bed late last night?
  - 3 Where are the chocolates? Have you eaten them all?
  - 4 How is your new job? Are you used to it?
  - 5 My car was badly damaged in the accident but I was OK.
  - 6 Chris has got a car but she doesn't use it very often.
  - 7 Mary isn't at home. She has gone away for a few days.
  - 8 I don't understand the problem. Can you explain it again?
  - 9 Martin is in his room. He's eating to music.
  - 10 I don't know how to say this word. How is it pronounced?
  - 11 How do you read this window? Can you show me?

A

**C** **have/has + past participle** (cleaned/lost/eaten/been etc.)

- I've cleaned my room.
- Tom has lost his passport.
- Barbara hasn't been to Canada.
- Where have Paul and Linda gone?

**have/has + past participle**  
*(present perfect)*  
⇒ Units 6-7

**do/does + infinitive**  
*(present simple negative and questions)*  
⇒ Units 6-7

**did + infinitive**  
*(past simple negative and questions)*  
⇒ Unit 12

# Regular and irregular verbs

## EXERCISES

- A Regular verbs**
- The past simple and past participle of *regular verbs* is **-ed**:  
**clean → cleaned**   **live → lived**   **paint → painted**
- Past simple** ( $\Rightarrow$  Unit 11)
- I **cleaned** my shoes yesterday.
  - Charlie **studied** engineering at university.
- Past participle**
- Present perfect = have/has + past participle** ( $\Rightarrow$  Units 15-18):
- I **have cleaned** my shoes.
  - Jane **has lived** in London for ten years.
  - These rooms **are cleaned** every day.
  - My car **has been repaired**.

- B Irregular verbs**
- The past simple and past participle of *irregular verbs* are *not -ed*:
- |                        |              |              |
|------------------------|--------------|--------------|
| <b>make</b>            | <b>broke</b> | <b>cut</b>   |
| <b>past simple</b>     | <b>made</b>  | <b>broke</b> |
| <b>past participle</b> | <b>made</b>  | <b>cut</b>   |
- Sometimes the past simple and past participle are *the same*. For example:
- |                        |             |              |               |
|------------------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| <b>make</b>            | <b>find</b> | <b>buy</b>   | <b>cut</b>    |
| <b>past simple</b>     | <b>made</b> | <b>found</b> | <b>bought</b> |
| <b>past participle</b> |             |              | <b>cut</b>    |
- I made a cake yesterday. (past simple)**  
**I have made some coffee. (past participle – present perfect)**  
**Butter is made from milk. (past participle – passive present)**

- 24.1** Write the past simple / past participle of these verbs. (The past simple and past participle are *the same* for all the verbs in this exercise.)

1 make	<b>made</b>	6 enjoy	.....	11 hear	.....
2 cut	<b>cut</b>	7 buy	.....	12 put	.....
3 get	.....	8 sit	.....	13 catch	.....
4 bring	.....	9 leave	.....	14 watch	.....
5 pay	.....	10 happen	.....	15 understand	.....

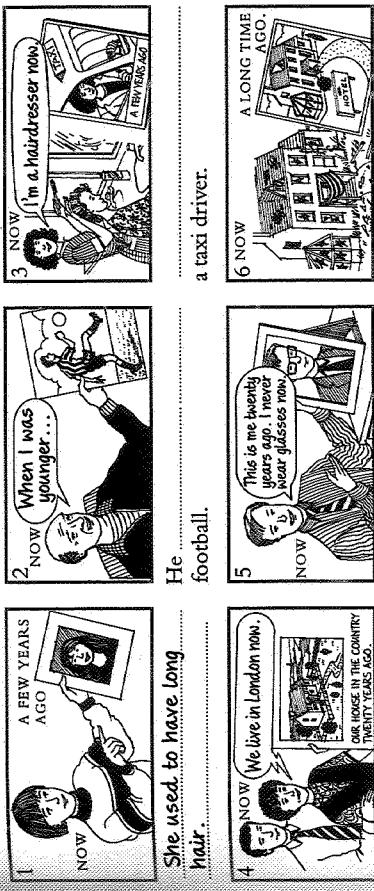
- 24.2** Write the past simple and past participle of these verbs.

1 break	<b>broke</b>	<b>broken</b>	6 run	.....	11 take	.....
2 begin	.....	.....	7 speak	.....	12 go	.....
3 eat	.....	.....	8 write	.....	13 give	.....
4 drink	.....	.....	9 come	.....	14 throw	.....
5 drive	.....	.....	10 know	.....	15 forget	.....

- 24.3** Put the verb in the right form.

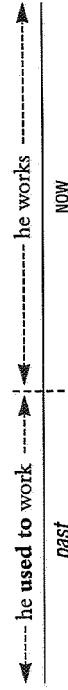
1 I <b>washed</b> my hands because they were dirty. (wash)
2 Somebody has <b>broken</b> this window. (break)
3 I feel good. I <b>.....</b> very well last night. (sleep)
4 We <b>.....</b> a very good film yesterday. (see)
5 It <b>.....</b> a lot while we were on holiday. (rain)
6 I've <b>.....</b> my bag. (lose) Have you <b>.....</b> it? (see)
7 Rosa's bicycle was <b>.....</b> last week. (steal)
8 I <b>.....</b> to bed early because I was tired. (go)
9 Have you <b>.....</b> your work yet? (finish)
10 The shopping centre was <b>.....</b> about 20 years ago. (build)
11 Ann <b>.....</b> to drive when she was 18. (learn)
12 I've never <b>.....</b> a horse. (ride)
13 Julia is a good friend of mine. I've <b>.....</b> her for a long time. (know)
14 Yesterday I <b>.....</b> and <b>.....</b> my leg. (fall / hurt)

- 24.4** Complete these sentences. Choose from the list and put the verb into the correct form.
- |                |              |            |             |             |             |              |             |             |              |
|----------------|--------------|------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| <b>cost</b>    | <b>drive</b> | <b>fly</b> | <b>make</b> | <b>meet</b> | <b>sell</b> | <b>speak</b> | <b>swim</b> | <b>tell</b> | <b>think</b> |
| <b>wake up</b> | <b>win</b>   |            |             |             |             |              |             |             |              |
- 1 I have **made** some coffee. Would you like some?  
 2 Have you **.....** John about your new job?  
 3 We played basketball on Sunday. We didn't play very well but we **.....**.  
 4 I know Gary but I've never **.....** his wife.  
 5 We were **.....** by loud music in the middle of the night.  
 6 Stephanie jumped into the river and **.....** to the other side.  
 7 'Did you like the film?' 'Yes, I **.....** it was very good.'  
 8 Many different languages are **.....** in the Philippines.  
 9 Our holiday **.....** a lot of money because we stayed in an expensive hotel.  
 10 Have you ever **.....** a very fast car?  
 11 All the tickets for the concert were **.....** very quickly.  
 12 A bird **.....** in through the open window while we were having our dinner.

**I used to ...****EXERCISES****25.1** Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with **used to** ... .

**Dave used to work** in a factory. Now he **works** in a supermarket.

**Dave used to work** in a factory = he worked in a factory before but he doesn't work there now.



**B** You can say **I used to work** ... / **she used to have** ... / **they used to be** ... etc.:



I/you/we/they	used to	be work have play etc.
he/she/it		

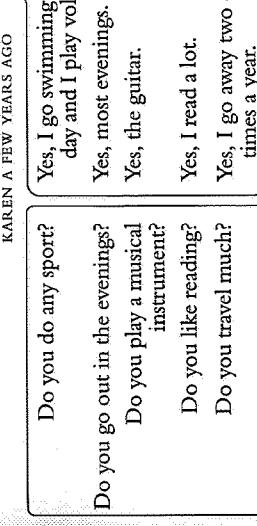
- When I was a child, I **used to like** chocolate.
- I **used to read** a lot of books but I don't read much these days.
- Liz has got short hair now but it **used to be** very long.
- They **used to live** in the same street as us, so we often **used to see** them. But we don't see them very often these days.
- Ann **used to have** a piano but she sold it a few years ago.

The negative is **I didn't use to** ...:  
● When I was a child I **didn't use to like** tomatoes.

The question is **did you use to** ... ?:

● Where did you **use to live** before you came here?

**C** We use **used to** ... only for the **past**. You cannot say 'I use to ...' (**present**):  
● I **used to play** tennis. These days I **play** golf. (**not** 'I **use to play** golf')  
● We **usually get up** early. (**not** 'We **use to get up** early')  
● When you were a child?

**25.2** Karen works very hard and has very little free time. A few years ago, things were different.

Write sentences about Karen with **used to** ... .

- 1 She **used to go swimming every day**.  
2 She **used to go to the cinema every week**.  
3 She **used to work in a shop**.  
4 She **used to work in a hotel**.  
5 She **used to work in a shop**.  
6 She **used to work in a hotel**.

Complete these sentences. Use **used to** or the present simple (I **play** / **he lives** etc.)

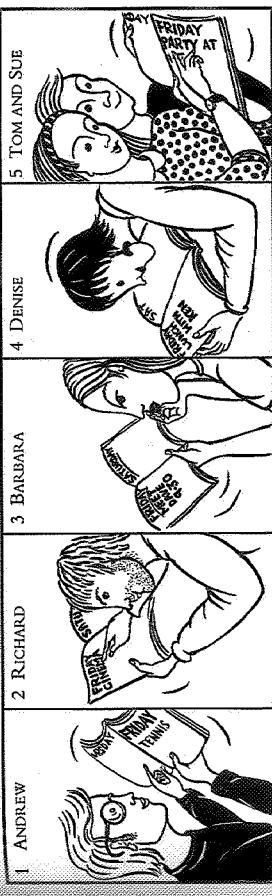
- 1 I **used to play** tennis. I stopped playing a few years ago.  
2 Do you do any sport? 'Yes, I **play** basketball.'  
3 'Have you got a car?' 'No, I **haven't** one but I sold it.'  
4 George **used to be** a waiter. Now he's the manager of a hotel.  
5 'Do you go to work by car?' 'Sometimes but most days I **take** the bus.'  
6 When I was a child, I **never ate** meat, but I eat it now.  
7 Mary loves watching TV. She **uses** the remote control.  
8 We **usually get up** early. (**not** 'We **use to get up** early')  
9 Normally I start work at 7 o'clock, so I **wake up** very early.  
10 What games **do you play**?

# What are you doing tomorrow?

## EXERCISES

26.1

Look at the pictures. What are these people doing next Friday?



They are playing tennis (now).

We use **am/is/are + -ing** (*present continuous*) for something happening now:

- Where are Sue and Caroline? 'They're **playing** tennis in the park.'
- Please be quiet. I'm **working**.

We also use **am/is/are + -ing** for the *future* (tomorrow / next week etc.):

- Andrew is **playing** tennis tomorrow.
- I'm **not working** next week.

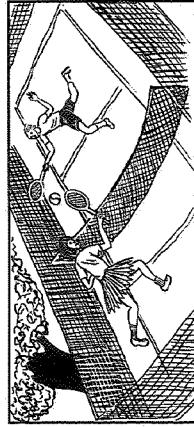
**I am doing something tomorrow** = I have *arranged* to do it. I have a plan to do it:

- Alice is **going** to the dentist on Friday.  
(= she has an appointment to see the dentist)
- We're **having** a party next weekend.
- Are you **meeting** Bill this evening?
- What are you **doing** tomorrow evening?
- I'm **not going** out tonight. I'm **staying** at home.

You can also say 'I'm **going to** do something' (⇒ Unit 27).



He is **playing** tennis (now).



They are **playing** tennis (now).

1. Andrew **is playing tennis on Friday**.  
2. Richard ..... to the cinema.  
3. Barbara .....

Write questions. All the sentences are future.

- 1 (you / go / out / tonight?)
- 2 (you / work / next week?)
- 3 (what / you / do / tomorrow evening?)
- 4 (what time / your friends / arrive?)
- 5 (when / Liz / go / on holiday?)

Write sentences about yourself. What are you doing in the next few days?

- 1 I'm **staying at home, tonight**.
- 2 I'm **going to the theatre on Monday**..
- 3 .....
- 4 .....
- 5 .....

**G** Do *not* use the present simple (**I stay / do you go** etc.) for plans and arrangements:

- I'm **staying** at home this evening. (*not* 'I stay')
- Are you **going** out tonight? (*not* 'Do you go?')
- Ann **isn't coming** to the party next week. (*not* 'Ann doesn't come')
- But we use the present simple for timetables, programmes, trains, buses etc.:
  - The train **arrives** at 7.30.
  - What time **does** the film **finish**?

Compare:

<i>present continuous</i> – usually for people	present simple – timetables, programmes etc.
• I'm <b>going</b> to a concert tomorrow.	• The concert <b>starts</b> at 7.30.

• What time **are you leaving**?

- 6 There's a football match tomorrow but ..... (I/not/go).
- 7 ..... (I/go) out with some friends tonight. Why don't you come too? ..... (we/meet) at John's house at 8 o'clock.
- 8 A: How ..... B: No, I can go by bus. The last bus ..... (you/get) home after the party tomorrow? By taxi? ..... (leave) at midnight.
- 9 A: Do you want to go to the cinema tonight?  
B: Yes, what time ..... (you/do) next Monday afternoon?
- 10 A: What ..... (I/work).  
B: ..... (I/work).

**I'm going to ...**

**A** I'm going to (do something)

MORNING

I'm going to watch TV this evening.

We use am/is/are going to... for the future:

I	am	(not) going to	do ...
he/she/it	is		drink ...
we/you/they	are		watch ...

am	I	going to	buy ... ?
is	he/she/it		eat ... ?
are	we/you/they		wear ... ?

**B** I am going to do something = I have decided to do it, my intention is to do it:

I decided to do it → **'I'm going to do it'**

past

NOW

future

- I'm going to buy some books tomorrow.
- Sarah is going to sell her car.
- I'm not going to have breakfast this morning. I'm not hungry.
- What are you going to wear to the party tonight?
- Your hands are dirty.
- Are you going to invite John to your party?

We also use the present continuous (I am doing) for the future, usually for arrangements (⇒ Unit 26):

- I am playing tennis with Julia tomorrow.

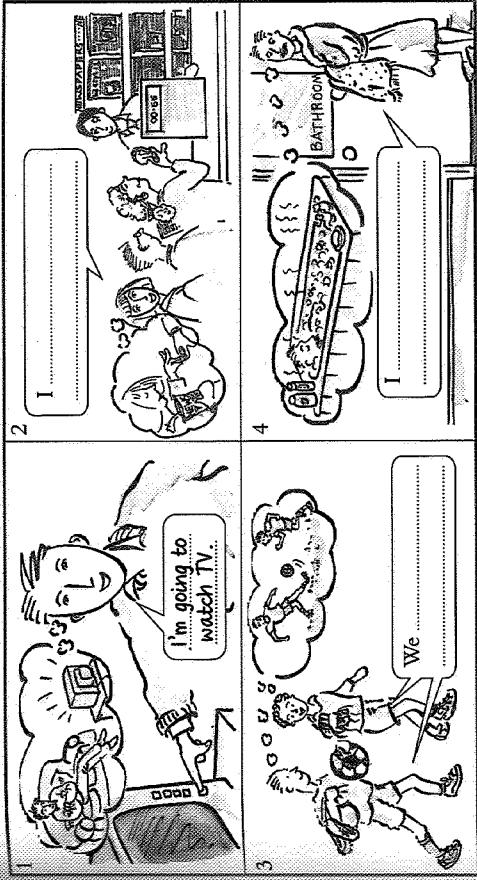
**C** Something is going to happen = it is clear now that it is sure to happen:

- Look at the sky! It's going to rain.  
(black clouds now → rain)
- Oh dear! It's 9 o'clock and I'm not ready.  
I'm going to be late.  
(9 o'clock now, and not ready → late)

**EXERCISES**

27.1

What are these people saying?

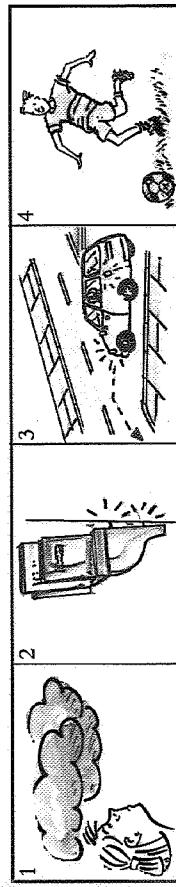


**Z1.2** Complete the sentences. Use going to + one of these verbs:

eat do give lie down stay walk wash wash watch wear

- 1 My hands are dirty. I'm going to **wash** them.
- 2 What **are you going to wear** to the party tonight?
- 3 I don't want to go home by bus. I **lie down** this sandwich.
- 4 John is going to London next week. He **give** this sandwich.
- 5 I'm hungry. I **eat** her a present.
- 6 It's Sharon's birthday next week. We **walk** for an hour.
- 7 Sue says she's feeling very tired. She **stay** it?
- 8 There's a good film on TV this evening. **watch** you ..... when she leaves school?
- 9 What **wear** Rachel?

**Z1.3** Look at the pictures. What is going to happen?



- 1 It's going to rain.

2 The shelf

3 The car

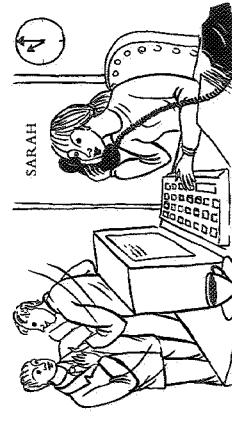
4 He

What are you going to do today or tomorrow? Write three sentences.

1 I'm .....

2 .....

3 .....

**will/shall (1)****EXERCISES**

**A** Sarah goes to work every day. She is always there from 8.30 until 4.30.  
It is 11 o'clock now. Sarah **is** at work.  
At 11 o'clock yesterday, she **was** at work.  
At 11 o'clock tomorrow, she **will be** at work.



Helen is travelling in Europe. Complete the sentences with **she was**, **she's** or **she'll be**.

- 1 Yesterday **she was** in Paris.
- 2 Tomorrow ..... in Amsterdam.
- 3 Last week ..... in Barcelona.
- 4 Next week ..... in London.
- 5 At the moment ..... in Brussels.
- 6 Three days ago ..... in Munich.
- 7 At the end of her trip ..... very tired.

Where will you be? Write sentences about yourself. Use:

**I'll be ... or I'll probably be ... or I don't know where I'll be.**

1 (at 10 o'clock tomorrow)  
**I'll probably be on the beach. OR I'll be at work. OR I don't know where I'll be...**

- 2 (one hour from now) .....
- 3 (at midnight tonight) .....
- 4 (at 3 o'clock tomorrow afternoon) .....
- 5 (two years from now) .....

**will + infinitive (will be / will win / will come etc.):**

I/we/you/they he/she/it	will (?) will not (won't)	be win eat come etc.	I/we/you/they he/she/it	be? win? eat? come? etc.
----------------------------	------------------------------	-------------------------------	----------------------------	-----------------------------------

**will = will; I'll (I will) / you'll / she'll etc.**

**won't = will not; I won't (= I will not) / you won't / she won't etc.**

**B** We use **will** for the *future (tomorrow / next week etc.)*:

- Sue travels a lot. Today she is in Madrid. Tomorrow she'll **be** in Rome. Next week she'll **be** in Tokyo.

• You can phone me this evening. I'll **be** at home.

• Leave the old bread in the garden. The birds will **eat** it.

• We'll probably **go** out this evening.

• Will you **be** at home this evening?

• I won't **be** here tomorrow. (= I will not be here)

• Don't drink coffee before you go to bed. You won't **sleep**.

We often say I **think** ... **will** ... :

• I think Diana will **pass** the exam.

• I don't think it will **rain** this afternoon.

• Do you **think** the exam will **be** difficult?

**C** We do *not* use **will** for things we have *arranged* or *decided* to do (⇒ Units 26-27):

• We're going to the cinema on Saturday. (*not* 'We will go')

• I'm not working tomorrow. (*not* 'I won't work')

• Are you going to **do** the exam? (*not* 'Will you do')

**D**

**Shall**

You can say I **shall** (= we will) and we **shall** (= we will):

• I shall be late tomorrow. **or** I will (I'll) be late tomorrow.

• I think we shall **win**. **or** I think we will (we'll) win.

But *do not* use **shall** with **you/they/he/she/it**:

• Tom will be late. (*not* 'Tom shall be')

Which is right? (Study Unit 26 before you do this exercise.)

1 **We're going** / We're going to the theatre tonight. We've got tickets. **We're going** is right.

2 What will you do / are you doing tomorrow evening? 'Nothing. I'm free.'

3 They'll go / They're going away tomorrow morning. Their train is at 8.40.

4 I'm sure she'll lend / she's lending us some money. She's very rich.

5 Why are you putting on your coat?

6 Do you think Claire will phone / is phoning us tonight?

7 Steve can't meet us on Saturday. **He'll work** / He's working.

8 Will / Shall you be at home tomorrow evening?

**will/shall<sup>1</sup> (2)****EXERCISES**

Complete the sentences. Use I'll (I will) + one of these verbs:

**A**

**carry**   **do**   **eat**   **send**   **show**   **sit**   **stay**

I'll carry ... it for you.  
 Thank you. .... you a postcard.  
 Well, I'm hungry. .... it.  
 No, it's OK. .... on the floor.  
 Oh no, I forgot. .... it now.  
 No, I don't think so. .... here.  
 Give it to me and ..... you.

Complete the sentences. Use I think I'll ... or I don't think I'll ... + one of these verbs:

**B**

buy   go   have   play

My bag is very heavy.  
 Enjoy your holiday.  
 I don't want this banana.  
 Do you want a chair?  
 Did you phone Jenny?  
 Are you coming with me?  
 How do you use this camera?

It's cold today. I don't think I'll ... out.  
 I'm hungry. I ..... something to eat.  
 I feel tired. .... tennis.  
 This camera is too expensive. .... it.

Which is right?

**C**

I'll phone / I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? I'll phone is right  
 1 I haven't done the shopping yet. I do / I'll do it later.  
 2 I like sport. I watch a lot of sport on TV.  
 3 I need some exercise. I think I go / I'll go for a walk.  
 4 Jim is going to buy / will buy a new car. He told me last week.  
 5 'This letter is for Rose.' 'OK. I give / I'll give it to her.'  
 6 'Are you doing / Will you do anything this evening?'  
 7 A: Yes, I'm going / I'll go out with some friends.

Write sentences with Shall I ... ? Choose words from Box A and Box B.

**A**

turn on   make   open

It's very warm in this room.  
 This programme isn't very good.  
 I'm hungry.  
 It's dark in this room.

**B**

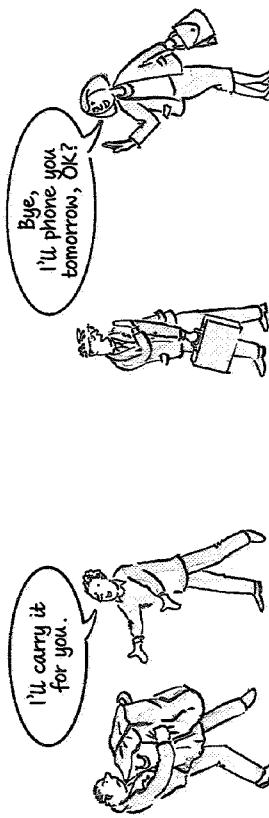
some sandwiches   the television  
 the window   the light

Shall I open the window?

Shall I/we ... ? Do you think this is a good idea?

- It's very warm in this room. Shall I open the window?
- 'Shall I phone you this evening?' 'Yes, please.'
- I'm going to a party tonight. What shall I wear?
- It's a nice day. Shall we go for a walk?
- Where shall we go for our holidays this year?
- Let's go out this evening.'

will/shall (1) =&gt; [28]



You can use I'll ... (I will) when you offer or decide to do something:

- 'My bag is very heavy.' 'I'll carry it for you.'
- 'I'll phone you tomorrow, OK?' 'OK, goodbye.'

We often say I think I'll ... / I don't think I'll ... when we decide to do something:

- I'm tired. I think I'll go to bed early tonight.
- It's a nice day. I think I'll sit in the garden.
- It's raining. I don't think I'll go out.

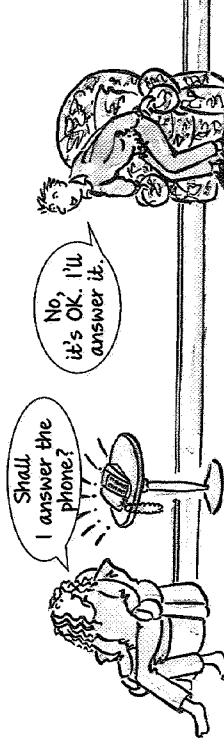
Do not use the present simple (I go / I phone etc.) in sentences like these:

- I'll phone you tomorrow, OK? (not 'I phone you')
- I think I'll go to bed early. (not 'I go to bed')

Do not use I'll ... for something you decided before (=&gt; Units 26-27):

- I'm working tomorrow. (not 'I'll work')
- There's a good film on TV tonight. I'm going to watch it. (not 'I'll watch')
- What are you doing at the weekend? (not 'What will you do?')

Shall I ... ? Shall we ... ?



Write sentences with Shall we ... ? Choose words from Box A and Box B.

**A**

what   where  
 when   who

Let's go out tonight.  
 Let's have a holiday.  
 Let's spend some money.  
 Let's have a party.

**B**

buy   invite  
 go   meet

OK, what time shall we meet?  
 OK, OK, OK, OK,

**might**1 Write sentences with **might**.

- 1 (it's possible that I'll go to the cinema)  
 2 (it's possible that I'll see you tomorrow)  
 3 (it's possible that Ann will forget to phone)  
 4 (it's possible that it will snow today)  
 5 (it's possible that I'll be late tonight)

Write sentences with **might not**.

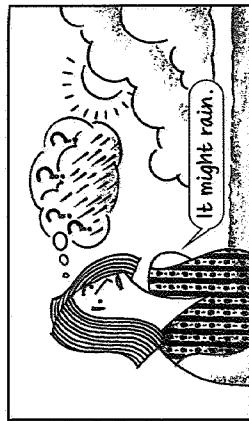
- 6 (it's possible that Mary will not be here)  
 7 (it's possible that I won't have time to meet you)

Somebody is asking you about your plans. You have some ideas but you are not sure. Choose from the list and write sentences with **I might**.**fish**   **go away**   **Italy**   **Monday**   **new car**   **taxis**It **might rain**.

(= it is possible that it will rain)

**might + infinitive** (might go / might be / might rain etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>might</b>	(not)	<b>be</b>	<b>go</b>	<b>play</b>	<b>come</b>	<b>etc.</b>
----------------------------	--------------	-------	-----------	-----------	-------------	-------------	-------------

He **might go** to New York.

(= it is possible that he will go to New York)

**might + infinitive** (might go / might be / might rain etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	<b>might</b>	(not)	<b>be</b>	<b>go</b>	<b>play</b>	<b>come</b>	<b>etc.</b>
----------------------------	--------------	-------	-----------	-----------	-------------	-------------	-------------

B I **might ...** = it is possible that I will ... :

- I **might go** to the cinema this evening. (= it is possible that I will go)
- A: When is Barbara going to phone you?  
B: I don't know. She **might** phone this afternoon.
- Take an umbrella with you. It **might** rain.
- Buy a lottery ticket. You **might** be lucky. (= perhaps you will be lucky)
- 'Are you going out tonight?' 'I **might**'. (= I might go out)

Study the difference:

- I'm **playing** tennis tomorrow. (*sure*)
- I **might** play tennis tomorrow. (*possible*)
- Barbara is **going to** phone later. (*sure*)
- Barbara **might** phone later. (*possible*)

The negative is **might not**:

- I **might not** go to work tomorrow. (= it is possible that I will not go)
- Sue **might not** come to the party. (= it is possible that she will not come)

## C

You can use **may** in the same way. I **may ...** = I **might ...**:

- I **may go** to the cinema this evening. (= I might go)
- Sue **may not come** to the party. (= Sue might not come)
- May I ...? = Is it OK to ... / Can I ...?
- May I ask a question? (= Can I ask?)
- May I sit here? 'Yes, of course.'

## D

**may**

- I **can** go to the cinema this evening. (= I might go)
- Sue **can** not come to the party. (= Sue might not come)
- May I ...? = Is it OK to ... / Can I ...?
- May I ask a question? (= Can I ask?)
- May I sit here? 'Yes, of course.'

1 Write sentences with **cinema**.

- 1 I **might go to the cinema**.  
 2 I ...  
 3 I ...  
 4 I ...  
 5 I ...

- 6 I ...  
 7 I ...

Choose from the list and write sentences with **I might**.**fish**   **go away**   **Italy**   **Monday**   **new car**   **taxis**

## Where are you going for your holidays?

- 1 I'm not sure.  
 2 What are you doing at the weekend?  
 3 When will you see Ann again?  
 4 What are you going to have for dinner?  
 5 How are you going to get home tonight?  
 6 I hear you won some money. What are you going to do with it?

## You ask Bill questions about his plans. Sometimes he is sure but usually he is not sure.

- 1 I'm not sure. I **might go to Italy**.  
 2 I don't know. I ...  
 3 I'm not sure.  
 4 I don't know.  
 5 I'm not sure.  
 6 I haven't decided yet.
- 1 Are you playing tennis tomorrow?  
 2 Are you going out in the evening?  
 3 Are you going to get up early?  
 4 Are you working tomorrow?  
 5 Will you be at home tomorrow morning?  
 6 Are you going to watch television?  
 7 Are you going out in the afternoon?  
 8 Are you going shopping?
- BILL

Now write about Bill. Use **might** where necessary.

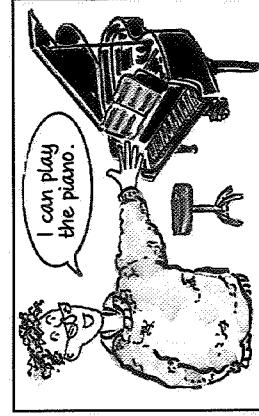
- 1 He's **playing tennis** tomorrow **afternoon**.  
 2 He **might go out this evening**.  
 3 He ...

- 4 ...  
 5 ...  
 6 ...  
 7 ...  
 8 ...

- 1 Write three things that you might do tomorrow.
- 1 ...  
 2 ...  
 3 ...

**can and could****EXERCISES**

STEVE



He can play the piano.



can + infinitive (can do / can play / can come etc.):

I/we/you/they he/she/it	can cannot (can't)	do play see come etc.	can I/we/you/they he/she/it do? play? see? come? etc.
----------------------------	-----------------------	--------------------------------	---

**B** I can do something = I know how to do it or it is possible for me to do it:

- I can play the piano. My brother can play the piano too.
- Sarah can speak Italian but she can't speak Spanish.
- 'Can you swim?' 'Yes, but I'm not a very good swimmer.'
- 'Can you change twenty pounds?' 'I'm sorry, I can't.'
- I'm having a party next week but Paul and Jenny can't come.

For the past (yesterday / last week etc.), we use could/couldn't:

- When I was young, I could run very fast.
- Before Anna came to Britain, she couldn't understand much English. Now she can understand everything.
- I was tired last night but I couldn't sleep.
- I had a party last week but Paul and Jenny couldn't come.

**D** Can you ... ? Could you ... ? Can I ... ? Could I ... ?

We use Can you ... ? or Could you ... ? when we ask people to do things:

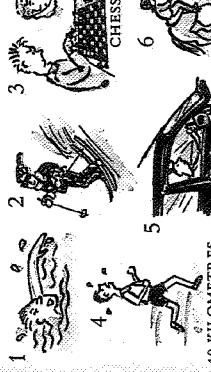
- Can you open the door, please? or Could you open the door, please?
- Can you wait a moment, please? or Could you wait ... ?

We use Can I have ... ? or Could I have ... ? to ask for something:

- (in a shop) Can I have these postcards, please? or Could I have ... ?

Can I ... ? or Could I ... ? = is it OK to do something?

- Tom, can I borrow your umbrella? or Tom, could I borrow your umbrella?
- (on the phone) Hello, can I speak to Gerry, please? or ... could I speak ... ?

**31.1** Ask Steve if he can do these things:

Can you do these things? Write sentences about yourself. Use I can or I can't.

- 7 1 ..... 9 ..... 11 .....  
8 ..... 10 ..... 12 .....

**31.2** Complete these sentences. Use can or can't + one of these verbs:

see    find    hear    see    speak

- 1 I'm sorry but we can't come to your party next Saturday.  
2 I like this hotel room. You ..... the mountains from the window.  
3 You are speaking very quietly. I ..... you.  
4 Have you seen my bag? I ..... it.  
5 Catherine got the job because she ..... five languages.

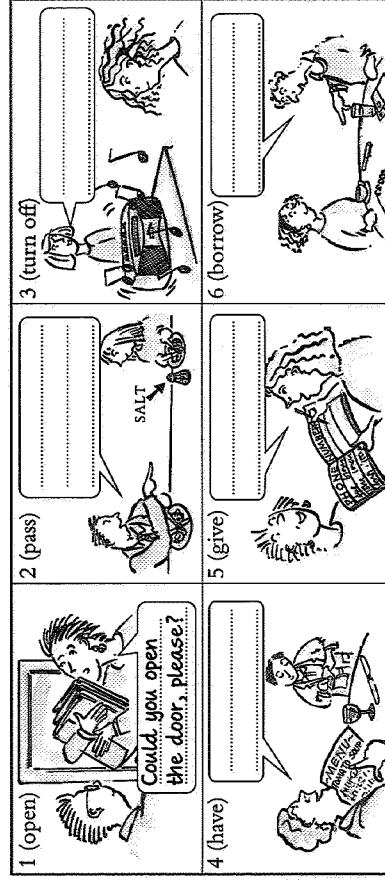
**31.3** Complete these sentences. Use can't or couldn't + one of these verbs:

eat    decide    find    go    go    sleep

- 1 I was tired but I couldn't sleep...  
2 I wasn't hungry yesterday. I ..... my dinner.  
3 Ann doesn't know what to do. She ..... .  
4 I wanted to speak to Martin yesterday but I ..... him.  
5 Jim ..... to the concert next Saturday. He has to work.  
6 Paula ..... to the meeting last week. She was ill.

**31.4**

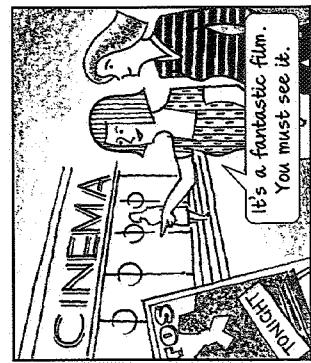
What do you say in these situations? Use can or could. Use the words in brackets (...).



## EXERCISES

### must    mustn't    needn't

**UNIT  
32**



**A**

**must + infinitive (must do / must see etc.):**

I/we/you/they he/she/it	must	do stop go write etc.
----------------------------	------	--------------------------------

**B** Use **must** when you think it is necessary to do something:

- ❖ The windows are very dirty. I **must clean** them.
- ❖ It's a fantastic film. You **must see** it.
- ❖ We **must** go to the bank today. We haven't got any money.

For the past ('yesterday / last week etc.'), we use **had to** ... (**not must**):

- ❖ We **had to** go to the bank yesterday. (**not** 'We **must** go ... yesterday')
- ❖ I **had to** walk home last night. There were no buses. (**not** 'I **must** walk')

**mustn't** (= must not)

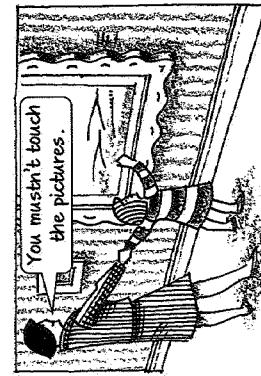
I **mustn't** (do something) = it is necessary *not* to do it, it is the wrong thing to do:

- ❖ I **must hurry**. I **mustn't be late**.  
(= I **must remember** to phone her)
- ❖ Be happy! You **mustn't be sad**. (= don't be sad)
- ❖ You **mustn't touch** the pictures.  
(= don't touch the pictures)

**needn't** (= need not)

I **needn't** (do something) = it is *not necessary* to do it, I don't need to do it:

- ❖ I **needn't clean** the windows. They aren't very dirty.
  - ❖ You **needn't go** to the bank today. I can give you some money.
- You can also say **don't need to** ... (= needn't):
- ❖ I **don't need to clean** the windows.
  - ❖ You **don't need to go** to the bank today.
- Compare **needn't** and **mustn't**:
- ❖ You **needn't go**. You can stay here if you want.
  - ❖ You **mustn't go**. You must stay here.



**32.3**

Complete the sentences. Use **mustn't or needn't + one of these verbs:**

clean	forget	hurry	lose	wait	write
-------	--------	-------	------	------	-------

- 1 The windows aren't very dirty. You **needn't clean** them.
- 2 We have a lot of time. We **needn't hurry**.
- 3 Keep these documents in a safe place. You **mustn't lose** them.
- 4 I'm not ready yet but you **mustn't wait** for me. You can go now and I'll come later.
- 5 We **needn't forget** to turn off the lights before we leave.
- 6 I **needn't** write the letter now. I can do it tomorrow.

**32.4**

- Find the sentences with the same meaning.
- |                                       |         |
|---------------------------------------|---------|
| 1 We can leave the meeting early.     | 1 D     |
| 2 We must leave the meeting early.    | 2 ..... |
| 3 We mustn't leave the meeting early. | 3 ..... |
| 4 We needn't leave the meeting early. | 4 ..... |
| 5 We had to leave the meeting early.  | 5 ..... |

Put in **must / had to / mustn't / needn't**.

- 1 You **needn't** go. You can stay here if you want.
- 2 It's a fantastic film. You **must** see it.
- 3 We've got enough food, so we **needn't** go shopping.
- 4 We didn't have any food yesterday, so we **had to** go shopping.
- 5 I want to know what happened. You **must** tell me.
- 6 You **needn't** tell Sue what happened. I don't want her to know.
- 7 I **had to** hurry or I'll be late.
- 8 'Why were you so late?' 'I **had to** wait half an hour for a bus.'
- 9 We **had to** decide now. We can decide later.

**32.5**

**should****EXERCISES**Complete the sentences. Use **you should** + one of these verbs:

clean    go    take    visit    watch    wear

- 1 When you play tennis, **you should** **watch** the ball.  
 2 It's late and you're very tired. ....  
 3 .... your teeth twice a day.  
 4 If you have time, ....  
 5 When you're driving, ....  
 6 It's too far to walk from here to the station. ....

**should + infinitive (should do / should watch etc.):**

I/we/you/they he/she/it	should shouldn't	do stop go watch etc.
----------------------------	---------------------	--------------------------------

**B** (You) **should** do something = it is a good thing to do, it is the right thing to do:

- Tom **should** **go** to bed earlier. He goes to bed very late and he's always tired.
- It's a good film. You **should** **go** and see it.
- When you play tennis, you **should** always **watch** the ball.

**C** (You) **shouldn't** do something = it is *not* a good thing to do. **Shouldn't** = should not:

- Tom **shouldn't** **go** to bed so late.
- You watch TV all the time. You **shouldn't** watch TV so much.

**D** We often use **think** with **should**:**I think ... should ... :**

- I think Carol **should** **buy** some new clothes.  
(= I think it is a good idea.)
- It's late. I **think** I **should** **go** home now.
- Shall I buy this coat?
- A: Shall I buy this coat?  
B: Yes, I think you **should**.

**I don't think ... should ... :**

- I don't think you **should** **work** so hard.  
(= I don't think it is a good idea.)
- I don't think we **should** **go** yet. It's too early.
- Do you **think** ... **should** ... ?;  
• Do you **think** I **should** **buy** this hat?  
• What time do you **think** we **should** **go** home?

**E** **Must** is stronger than **should**:

- It's a **good** film. You **should** go and see it.
- It's a **fantastic** film. You **must** go and see it.

**F** Another way to say **should** ... is **ought to** ... :

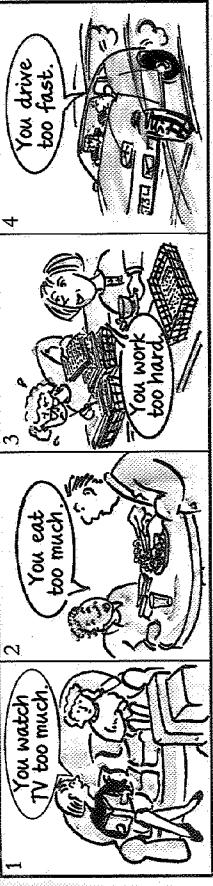
- It's a good film. You **ought to** **go** and see it. (= you should go)
- I think Carol **ought to** **buy** some new clothes. (= Carol should buy)

33.1

Complete the sentences. Use **you should** + one of these verbs:

clean    go    take    visit    watch    wear

- 1 When you play tennis, **you should** **watch** the ball.  
 2 It's late and you're very tired. ....  
 3 .... your teeth twice a day.  
 4 If you have time, ....  
 5 When you're driving, ....  
 6 It's too far to walk from here to the station. ....

Write about the people in the pictures. Use **He/She shouldn't ... so ...**33.2 Write about the people in the pictures. Use **He/She shouldn't ... so ...**

- 1 She **shouldn't** **watch** TV **so** **much**.  
 2 He .... hard.
- 3 ....  
 4 ....

33.3 You ask a friend for advice. Write questions with **Do you think I should ... ?**

- 1 You are in a shop. You are trying on a jacket. (buy?)  
 You ask your friend: **Do you think I should buy this jacket?**
- 2 You can't drive. (learn?)  
 You ask your friend: **Do you think ... ?**
- 3 You don't like your job. (get another job?)  
 You ask your friend: **Do you think ... ?**
- 4 You are going to have a party. (invite Gary?)  
 You ask your friend: **Do you think ... ?**

33.4

Write sentences with **I think ... should ... or I don't think ... should ...**

- 1 It's late. (go home now) **I think we should go home now.**  
 2 That coat is too big for you. (buy it) **I don't think you should buy it.**  
 3 You don't need your car. (sell it) ....  
 4 Diane needs a rest. (have a holiday) ....  
 5 Sally and Colin are too young. (get married) ....  
 6 You're not well this morning. (go to work) ....  
 7 James isn't well today. (go to the doctor) ....  
 8 The hotel is too expensive for us. (stay there) ....

33.5

What do you think? Write sentences with **should**.

- 1 I think **everybody** **should** **learn** **another language**.  
 2 I think **everybody** ....  
 3 I think ....  
 4 I don't think ....  
 5 I think I **should** ....

**I have to ...**

**A** I have to do something = it is necessary for me to do it, I am obliged to do it

I/we/you/they	have	to do
he/she/it	has	to work
		to go to wear etc.

- I'll be late for work tomorrow. I have to go to the dentist.
- Jill starts work at 7 o'clock, so she has to get up at 6.
- You have to pass a test before you can get a driving licence.

**B** The past (yesterday / last week etc.) is had to ... :

- I was late for work yesterday. I had to go to the dentist.
- We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.

**C** In questions and negatives we use do/does (present) and did (past):  
*present*

do	I/we/you/they	have to ... ?
does	he/she/it	has to

past	I/we/you/they	have to ... ?
did	he/she/it	had to

- What time do you have to go to the dentist tomorrow?
- Does Jill have to work on Sundays?
- Why did they have to leave the party early?

**I don't have to** (do something) = it is not necessary to do it:

- I'm not working tomorrow, so I don't have to get up early.
- Ian doesn't have to work very hard. He's got an easy job.
- We didn't have to wait very long for the bus.

**D** must and have to

Use must or have to when you say what you think is necessary, when you give your opinion:

- It's a fantastic film. You must see it. or You have to see it.

When you are not giving your personal opinion, use have to (*not* must):

- Jill won't be at work this afternoon. She has to go to the doctor. (this is not my personal opinion – it is a fact)
- In many countries, men have to do military service. (this is not my opinion – it is the law in those countries)

**E** Complete the sentences. Use have to or has to + one of these verbs:

do      read      speak      travel      wear

- 1 My eyes are not very good. I have to wear glasses.
- 2 At the end of the course all the students ..... a test.
- 3 Mary is studying literature. She ..... a lot of books.
- 4 Albert doesn't understand much English. You ..... very slowly to him.
- 5 Kate is not often at home. She ..... a lot in her job.

Complete the sentences. Use have to or had to + one of these verbs:

answer      buy      change      go      walk

- 1 We had to walk home last night. There were no buses.
- 2 It's late. I ..... now. I'll see you tomorrow.
- 3 I went to the supermarket after work yesterday. I ..... some food.
- 4 This train doesn't go all the way to London. You ..... at Bristol.
- 5 We did an exam yesterday. We ..... six questions out of ten.

Complete the questions. Some are present and some are past.

- 1 I have to get up early tomorrow.
- 2 George had to wait a long time.
- 3 Liz has to go somewhere.
- 4 We had to pay a lot of money.
- 5 I have to do some work.

Write sentences with don't/doesn't/didn't have to ...

- 1 Why are you going out? You don't have to go out...
- 2 Why is Ann waiting? She ....
- 3 Why did you get up early? You ....
- 4 Why is Paul working so hard? He ....
- 5 Why do you want to leave now? We ....

Which is correct? Sometimes must and have to are both correct.

- 1 It's a great film. You must see / have to see it. both are correct
- 2 In many countries, men ~~must see~~ / have to do military service. have to do is correct
- 3 You can't park your car here for nothing. You must pay / have to pay.
- 4 I didn't have any money with me last night, so I must borrow / had to borrow some.
- 5 I eat too much chocolate. I really ~~must stop~~ / have to stop.
- 6 "Why is Paul going now?" 'She ~~must meet~~ / has to meet somebody.'
- 7 What's wrong? You ~~must tell~~ / have to tell me. I want to help you.

**F** Write some things that you (or your friends or family) have to do or had to do.

- 1 (every day) I have to travel ten miles every day.
- 2 (every day)
- 3 (tomorrow)
- 4 (yesterday)

## EXERCISES

## Would you like ... ? I'd like ...

**A** Would you like ...? = Do you want ...?

- We use **Would you like ...?** to invite things:
- A: **Would you like some coffee?**
  - B: No, thank you.
  - A: **Would you like a chocolate?**
  - B: Yes, please.
  - A: **What would you like, tea or coffee?**
  - B: Tea, please.

We use **Would you like to ...?** to invite somebody:

- Would you like to go for a walk?
- A: **Would you like to have dinner with us on Sunday?**
- B: Yes, I'd love to. (= I would love to have dinner with you)
- What would you like to do this evening?

**B** I'd like ... is a polite way to say 'I want'. I'd like = I would like:

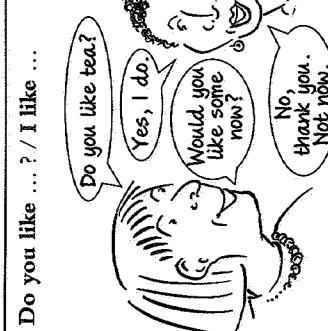
- I'm thirsty. I'd like a drink.
- (in a tourist office) I'd like some information about hotels, please.
- I'd like to see the film on television this evening.

**C** Would you like ...? and Do you like ...?



Would you like ...? / I'd like ...

Do you like ...? / I like ...



Would you like some tea? = Do you want some tea?

- A: **Would you like to go to the cinema tonight? (= Do you want to go tonight?)**
- B: Yes, I'd love to.
- I'd like an orange, please. (= Can I have an orange?)
- What would you like to do next weekend?

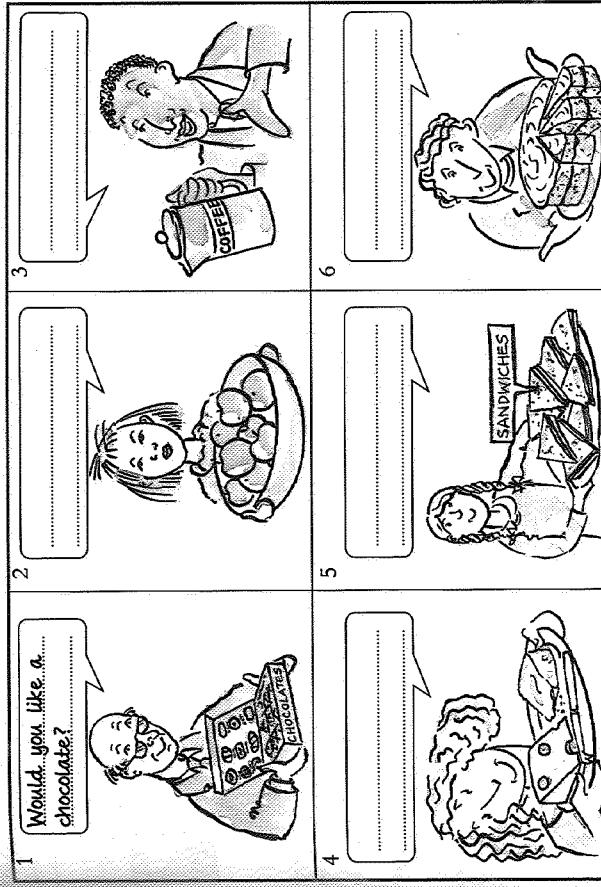
Do you like tea? = Do you think tea is nice?

- A: **Do you like going to the cinema? (in general)**
- B: Yes, I go to the cinema a lot.
- I like oranges. (in general)
- What do you like to do at weekends?

Which is right?

- 1 'Do ~~you~~ like / Would you like a chocolate?' "Yes, please."    Would you like is right
- 2 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' "Yes, I love them."
- 3 'Do you like / Would you like an ice-cream?' "No, thank you."
- 4 'What do you like / would you like to drink?' "A glass of water, please."
- 5 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' "Not now. Perhaps later."
- 6 I like / I'd like tomatoes but I don't eat them very often.
- 7 What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
- 8 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' "No, thanks. I'm not hungry."
- 9 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' "Yes, I'm enjoying it."
- 10 I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.

What are the people in the pictures saying? Use **Would you like ...?** ?



What do you say to Sue in these situations? Use **Would you like to ...?** ?

- 1 You want to go to the cinema tonight. Perhaps Sue will go with you. (go)
- You say: **Would you like to go to the cinema tonight?**
- 2 You want to play tennis tomorrow. Perhaps Sue will play too. (play)
- You say: You've got some holiday photographs. Sue hasn't seen them yet. (see)
- 3 You say: You have an extra ticket for a concert next week. Perhaps Sue will go. (go)
- You say: It's raining and Sue is going out. She hasn't got an umbrella but you have one. (borrow)
- You say:

3.3

Which is right?

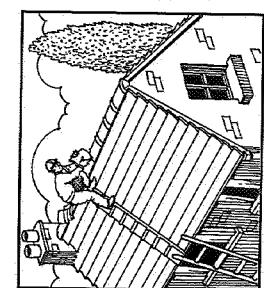
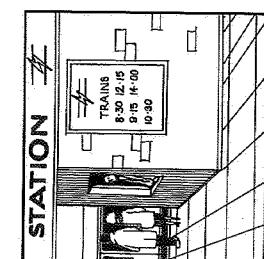
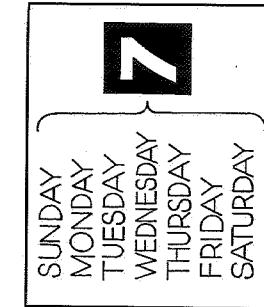
- 1 'Do ~~you~~ like / Would you like a chocolate?' "Yes, please."    Would you like is right
- 2 'Do you like / Would you like bananas?' "Yes, I love them."
- 3 'Do you like / Would you like an ice-cream?' "No, thank you."
- 4 'What do you like / would you like to drink?' "A glass of water, please."
- 5 'Do you like / Would you like to go out for a walk?' "Not now. Perhaps later."
- 6 I like / I'd like tomatoes but I don't eat them very often.
- 7 What time do you like / would you like to have dinner this evening?
- 8 'Do you like / Would you like something to eat?' "No, thanks. I'm not hungry."
- 9 'Do you like / Would you like your new job?' "Yes, I'm enjoying it."
- 10 I'm tired. I like / I'd like to go to sleep now.

# EXERCISES

## UNIT 36

# there is / there are

Kentham is a small town. Look at the information in the box and write sentences about Kentham with **There is/are** or **There isn't/aren't**.



A

There's a man on the roof. There's a train at 10.30.

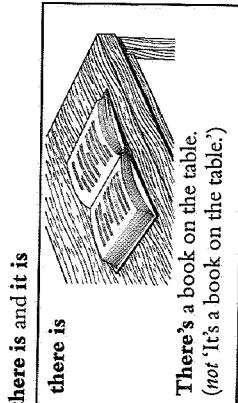
singular

**there is ... (there's)**  
**is there ... ?**  
**there is not ... (there isn't or there's not)**

- There's a big tree in the garden.
- There's a good film on TV tonight.
- A: Have you got any money?  
B: Yes, there's some in my bag.
- A: Excuse me, is there a hotel near here?  
B: Yes, there is. / No, there isn't.
- We can't go skiing. There isn't any snow.
- There are some big trees in the garden.
- There are a lot of accidents on this road.
- A: Are there any letters for me today?  
B: Yes, there are. / No, there aren't.
- This restaurant is very quiet. There aren't many people here.
- How many players are there in a football team?  
There are 11 players in a football team.
- There are not ... (there aren't)

plural

**there are ... ?**  
**there are not ... (there aren't)**



B  
there is and it is

**Compare:**  
• What's that noise? It's a train. (it = that noise)  
There's a train at 10.30. It's a fast train.

- There's a lot of salt in this soup.
- I don't like this soup. It's too salty. (it = this soup)
- 7 a restaurant in this hotel? 'No, I'm afraid not.'

there was / were / has been etc. ⇒ it and there ⇒

some and any ⇒

1 a castle?	No
2 any restaurants?	Yes (a lot)
3 a hospital?	Yes
4 a swimming pool?	No
5 any cinemas?	Yes (two)
6 a university?	No
7 any big hotels?	No

Write sentences about your town (or a town that you know). Use **There is/are/isn't/aren't**.

- 1 There are a few restaurants.  
2 There's a big park.  
3

Put in **there is** / **there isn't** / **is there** / **there aren't** / **are there**.

- 1 Kenham isn't an old town. There aren't any old buildings.  
2 Look! ..... a photograph of your brother in the newspaper!  
3 'Excuse me, ..... a bank near here?' 'Yes, at the end of the street.'

- 4 ..... five people in my family: my parents, my two sisters and me.  
5 'How many students ..... in the class?' 'Twenty.'  
6 'Can we take a photograph?' 'No, ..... a film in the camera.'  
7 ..... a bus from the city centre to the airport?' 'Yes, Every 20 minutes.'  
8 ..... any problems?' 'No, everything is OK.'  
9 ..... nowhere to sit down. .... any chairs.

Write sentences with **There are** ... Choose from the boxes.

1 seven	twenty-six	letters
2 nine	thirty	players
3 fifteen	fifty	planets

4 days	days	states
5	5	5

6 weeks	week	the English alphabet
7	7	7

1 There are seven days in a week.

- 2

Put in **there's** / **is there** / **it's** / **is it**.

- 1 'There's a train at 10.30.' 'Is it ..... a fast train?'  
2 I'm not going to buy this shirt. .... something in my eye.  
3 'What's wrong?' .... a red car outside the house.  
4 'What's that building?' .... anything on television tonight?' 'Yes, ..... yours?'  
5 'What's that building?' .... a school.  
6 'What's that building?' .... a restaurant in this hotel?' 'No, I'm afraid not.'

# there was/were there will be

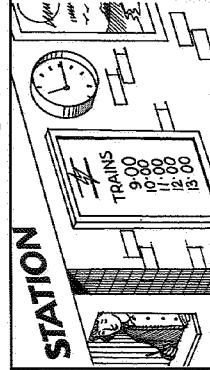
## UNIT 37

### EXERCISES

## 37

Look at the two pictures. Now the room is empty but what was in the room last week? Write sentences with **There was ...** or **There were ... + the words in the list.**

#### A there was / there were (past)



Compare:

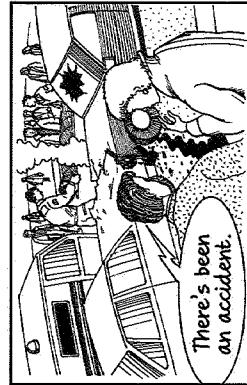
#### there is/are (present)

- There is a good film on TV tonight.
- We are staying at a very big hotel. **There** are 250 rooms.
- **Are** there any letters for me this morning?
- I'm hungry but **there isn't** anything to eat.

#### there was/were (past)

- There was a good film on TV last night.
- We stayed at a very big hotel. **There were** 250 rooms.
- **Were** there any letters for me yesterday?
- When I got home, I was hungry but **there wasn't** anything to eat.

#### B there has been / there have been (present perfect)



#### Compare there was (past):

- There was an accident **last night**.  
(not 'There has been an accident last night.')

For past simple and present perfect see Unit 20.

#### C there will be



- Do you think there **will be** a lot of people at the party on Saturday?
- The manager of the company is leaving, so **there will be** a new manager soon.
- I'm going away tomorrow. I'll do my packing today because **there won't be** time tomorrow. (**there won't be** = **there will not be**)

was/were ⇒ **[1]**    had/have been ⇒ **[1]**    will ⇒ **[1]**  
there and it ⇒ **[1]**    some and any ⇒ **[1]**

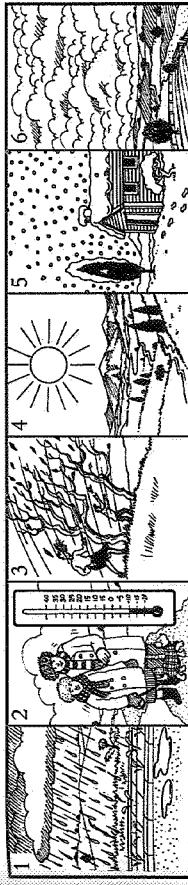
#### Put in **there was / there wasn't / was there / there were / there weren't / were there**.

- 1 **There was** a clock ... on the wall near the window.
  - 2 ... on the floor.
  - 3 ... on the wall near the door.
  - 4 ... in the middle of the room.
  - 5 ... on the table.
  - 6 ... on the shelves.
  - 7 ... in the corner near the door.
  - 8 ... opposite the door.
- 37.2 Put in **there was / there wasn't / was there / there were / there weren't / were there**.
- 1 I was hungry but **there wasn't** ... anything to eat.
  - 2 **Were there** ... any letters for me yesterday?
  - 3 ... a football match on TV last night. Did you see it?
  - 4 'We stayed at a very nice hotel.' 'Did you?' ... a swimming pool?
  - 5 'Did you buy any eggs?' 'No, ...' ... any in the shop?
  - 6 The wallet was empty. ... any money in it.
  - 7 ... many people at the meeting?' 'No, very few.' ... enough time.
  - 8 We didn't visit the museum. ... a lot of traffic.
  - 9 I'm sorry I'm late.
  - 10 Twenty years ago ... many tourists here. Now there are a lot.

- 37.3 Put in **there + is / are / was / were / has been / have been / will be**.
- 1 **There was** ... a good film on TV yesterday evening.
  - 2 ... 24 hours in a day.
  - 3 ... a party at the club last Friday but I didn't go.
  - 4 'Where can I buy a newspaper?' ... a shop at the end of the street.
  - 5 'Why are those policemen outside the bank?' ... somebody at the cinema,
  - 6 When we arrived at the cinema, ... a long queue to see the film.
  - 7 When you arrive tomorrow, ... 500 children at the school. Now ...
  - 8 Ten years ago ... more than a thousand.
  - 9 Last week I went back to the town where I was born. It's very different now. ....
  - 10 I think everything will be OK. I don't think ... any problems.

## EXERCISES

Write about the weather in the pictures. Use it's ... .



## A We use it for time/day/distance/weather:

<b>time</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What time is it?</li> <li>• It's half past ten.</li> <li>• It's late.</li> <li>• It's time to go home.</li> </ul>
<b>day</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• What day is it?</li> <li>• It's Thursday.</li> <li>• It's 16 March.</li> <li>• It was my birthday yesterday.</li> </ul>
<b>distance</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It's three miles from our house to the city centre.</li> <li>• How far is it from London to Bristol?</li> <li>• It's a long way from here to the station.</li> <li>• We can walk home. It isn't far.</li> </ul> <p>We use <b>far</b> in questions (<b>is it far?</b>) and negatives (<b>it isn't far</b>). We use <b>a long way</b> in positive sentences (<b>it's a long way</b>).</p>
<b>weather</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It's raining.</li> <li>• It isn't raining.</li> <li>• It rains a lot here. It didn't rain yesterday.</li> <li>• Does it snow very often?</li> <li>• It's warm/hot/cold/fine/cloudy/windy/sunny/foggy/dark etc.</li> <li>• It's a nice day today.</li> </ul>

## It ...

<b>A</b>	<p><b>Compare it and there:</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It rains a lot in winter. There is a lot of rain in winter.</li> <li>• It was very windy. There was a strong wind yesterday.</li> </ul> <p><b>B</b> It's nice to ... etc.</p> <table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">It's</td><td style="padding: 5px;">easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe</td><td style="padding: 5px;">to ...</td></tr> <tr> <td style="padding: 5px;">It's</td><td style="padding: 5px;">expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.</td><td style="padding: 5px;">to ...</td></tr> </table> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It's nice to see you again. (it = to see you again)</li> <li>• It's impossible to understand her. (it = to understand her)</li> <li>• It wasn't easy to find your house. (it = to find your house)</li> </ul> <p><b>C</b> Don't forget it:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It's raining again. (not 'Is raining again')</li> <li>• Is it true that you are going away? (not 'Is true that ...')</li> </ul>	It's	easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe	to ...	It's	expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.	to ...
It's	easy / difficult / impossible / dangerous / safe	to ...					
It's	expensive / interesting / nice / wonderful / terrible etc.	to ...					

## It's raining... Put in it is (it's) or is it.

1. What time **is it**?
2. We must go now ..... very late.
3. .... true that Bill can fly a helicopter?
4. What day ..... today? Tuesday? No, ..... Wednesday?
5. .... ten kilometres from the airport to the city centre.
6. .... possible to phone you at your office?
7. 'Do you want to walk to the restaurant?' 'I don't know. How far ..... ?'
8. .... Linda's birthday today. She's 27.
9. I don't believe it! ..... impossible.

## Write questions with How far ... ?

1. (here / the station)
2. (the hotel / the beach)
3. (New York / Washington)
4. (your house / the airport)

## Put in it or there.

1. **It** rains a lot in winter.
2. **There** was a strong wind yesterday.
3. .... was a nice day yesterday.
4. We can't go skiing. .... isn't any snow.
5. .... shot in this room. Open a window. nearest shop.

## Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

- |      |             |                        |
|------|-------------|------------------------|
| it's | dangerous   | get-up-early           |
| it's | nice        | go out alone           |
| it's | impossible  | make friends           |
| it's | easy        | work in this office    |
| it's | difficult   | visit different places |
| it's | interesting | see you again          |

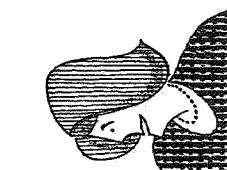
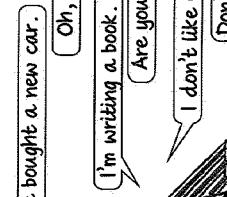
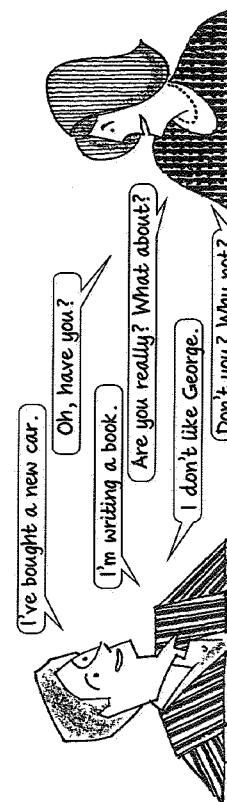
1. If you go to bed late, **it's difficult to get up early** in the morning.
2. Hello, Jill. .... How are you?
3. .... There is too much noise.
4. Everybody is very nice at work. ....
5. I like travelling. ....
6. A lot of cities are not safe. .... at night.



# Have you? Are you? Don't you? etc.

## EXERCISES

Answer with **Do you?** / **Doesn't she?** / **Did they?** etc.



You can say **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't he?** etc. to show that you are interested or surprised:

- 'You're late.' 'Oh, am I? I'm sorry.'
- 'I was ill last week.' 'Were you? I didn't know that.'
- 'It's raining again.' 'Is it? It was sunny ten minutes ago.'
- 'There's a letter for you.' 'Is there? Where is it?'
- 'Bill can't drive.' 'Can't he? I didn't know that.'
- 'I'm not hungry.' 'Aren't you? I am.'
- 'Sue isn't at work today.' 'Isn't she? Is she ill?'
- 'There's a letter for you.' 'Is there? Where is it?'
- 'Tom doesn't eat meat.' 'Doesn't he? Does he eat fish?'
- 'Linda got married last week.' 'Did she? Really?'

Use **do**/does for the *present simple* and did for the *past simple*:

- 'I speak four languages.'
- 'Tom doesn't eat meat.'
- 'Linda got married last week.'

*It's a beautiful day, isn't it?*



You can use **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't she?** etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'mini-questions' are **question tags**.

a *positive sentence* → a *negative question tag*  
a *negative sentence* → a *positive question tag*

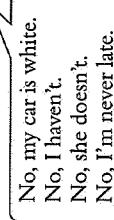
*positive* → *negative*

*It's a beautiful day, isn't it?*

Sally lives in London, doesn't she?  
You closed the window, didn't you?  
Those shoes are nice, aren't they?  
Tom will be here soon, won't he?

*Yes, it's lovely.*

Yes, that's right.  
Yes, I think so.  
Yes, very nice.  
Yes, probably.



*negative* → *positive*

*No, my car is white.*  
*No, I haven't.*  
*No, she doesn't.*  
*No, I'm never late.*

**That isn't your car, is it?**  
**You haven't met my mother, have you?**  
**Sally doesn't smoke, does she?**  
**You won't be late, will you?**

<b>Do you</b> .....	?	Which ones?
.....	?	I work in a bank too.
.....	?	Were you ill?
.....	?	Why not?
.....	?	I feel fine.
.....	?	What did she say?

<b>Have you</b> .....	?	What make is it?
<b>Doesn't he</b> .....	?	Does he eat fish?
.....	?	When did you last have it?
.....	?	She should learn.
.....	?	I didn't know that.
.....	?	Was the bed uncomfortable?
.....	?	Are you going to watch it?
.....	?	Why not?
.....	?	How is she?
.....	?	What kind of factory?
.....	?	Where will you be?
.....	?	It was working yesterday.

Answer with **Have you?** / **Haven't you?** / **Did she?** / **Didn't she?** etc.

1 I've bought a new car.	2 Tim doesn't eat meat.	3 I've lost my key.	4 Sue can't drive.	5 I was born in Italy.	6 I didn't sleep well last night.	7 There's a film on TV tonight.	8 I'm not happy.	9 I met Paula last week.	10 Margaret works in a factory.	11 I won't be here next week.	12 The clock isn't working.
--------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------	--------------------	------------------------	-----------------------------------	---------------------------------	------------------	--------------------------	---------------------------------	-------------------------------	-----------------------------

Complete these sentences with a question tag (**isn't it?** / **haven't you?** etc.).

1 It's a beautiful day, <b>isn't it?</b> ?	2 These flowers are nice, <b>?</b>	3 Judy was at the party, <b>?</b>	4 You've been to Paris, <b>?</b>	5 You speak German, <b>?</b>	6 Martin looks tired, <b>?</b>	7 You'll help me, <b>?</b>
--	------------------------------------	-----------------------------------	----------------------------------	------------------------------	--------------------------------	----------------------------

Complete these sentences with a question tag, positive (**is it?** / **do you?** etc.) or negative (**isn't it?** / **don't you?** etc.).

1 You haven't got a car, <b>have you?</b> ?	2 You aren't tired, <b>?</b>	3 Carol is a very nice person, <b>?</b>	4 You can play the piano, <b>?</b>	5 You don't know Mike's sister, <b>?</b>	6 Sally went to university, <b>?</b>	7 The film wasn't very good, <b>?</b>	8 Ann lives near you, <b>?</b>	9 You won't tell anybody what I said, <b>?</b>
---	------------------------------	---	------------------------------------	--	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------	--------------------------------	--

## B

**Question tags**

You can use **have you?** / **is it?** / **can't she?** etc. at the end of a sentence.

These 'mini-questions' are **question tags**.

a *positive sentence* → a *negative question tag*  
a *negative sentence* → a *positive question tag*

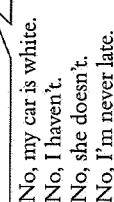
*positive* → *negative*

*It's a beautiful day, isn't it?*

Sally lives in London, doesn't she?  
You closed the window, didn't you?  
Those shoes are nice, aren't they?  
Tom will be here soon, won't he?

*Yes, it's lovely.*

Yes, that's right.  
Yes, I think so.  
Yes, very nice.  
Yes, probably.



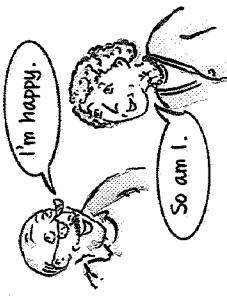
*negative* → *positive*

*No, my car is white.*  
*No, I haven't.*  
*No, she doesn't.*  
*No, I'm never late.*

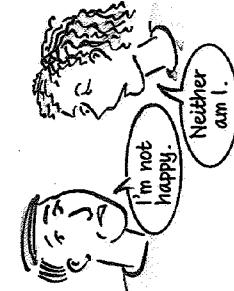
**That isn't your car, is it?**  
**You haven't met my mother, have you?**  
**Sally doesn't smoke, does she?**  
**You won't be late, will you?**

**EXERCISES****Put in too or either.****A** **too and either**We use **too** and either at the end of a sentence.

We use <b>too</b> after a positive verb:	We use <b>either</b> after a negative verb:
• A: I'm happy. B: I'm happy <b>too</b> .	• A: I'm not happy. B: I'm not happy <b>either</b> . ( <i>not</i> 'I'm not ... too')
• A: I enjoyed the film. B: I enjoyed it <b>too</b> .	• A: I can't cook. B: I can't <b>either</b> . ( <i>not</i> 'I can't too')
• Mary is a doctor. Her husband is a doctor <b>too</b> .	• Bill doesn't watch TV. He doesn't read newspapers <b>either</b> .

**B** **so am I / neither do I etc.****Answer with So ... I (So am I / So do I / So can I etc.).**

1 I went to bed late last night.	1 I'm thirsty.
2 I've just had dinner.	2 I haven't got any money.
3 I'll be late tomorrow.	3 I don't know what to do.
4 I was very tired this morning.	4 I'm not.
5 I'm tired.	5 I'm not.
6 I don't work hard.	6 I do.

**Answer with Neither.**

7 I can't go to the party.	7 You can answer: <b>So am I.</b> or <b>Neither do I.</b>
8 I didn't phone Alex last night.	8 You can answer: <b>So am I.</b> or <b>I'm not.</b>
9 I haven't got any money.	9 You can answer: <b>So am I.</b> or <b>I'm not.</b>
10 I'm not going out tomorrow.	10 You can answer: <b>So am I.</b> or <b>I'm not.</b>
11 I don't know what to do.	11 You can answer: <b>So am I.</b> or <b>I'm not.</b>

7 I can't go to the party.	7 You are talking to Maria. Write true sentences about yourself. Where possible, use <b>So ... I</b> or <b>Neither ... I</b> .
8 I didn't phone Alex last night.	8 You can answer: <b>So am I.</b> or <b>I'm not.</b>
9 I haven't got any money.	9 You can answer: <b>So am I.</b> or <b>I'm not.</b>
10 I'm not going out tomorrow.	10 You can answer: <b>So am I.</b> or <b>I'm not.</b>
11 I don't know what to do.	11 You can answer: <b>So am I.</b> or <b>I'm not.</b>

neither am I = I'm not either neither can I = I can't either (etc.):	neither am I = I'm not either neither can I = I can't either (etc.):
• A: I haven't got a key. B: Neither have I. (= I haven't either)	• A: I haven't got a key. B: Neither have I. (= I haven't either)
• A: Ann can't cook. B: Neither can Ann. (= Tom can't either)	• A: Ann can't cook. B: Neither can Ann. (= Tom can't either)
• A: I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow. B: Neither will I.	• A: I won't (= will not) be here tomorrow. B: Neither will I.
• A: I never go to the cinema. B: Neither do I.	• A: I never go to the cinema. B: Neither do I.

- You can also use **Nor ...** (= Neither ...):  
 • A: I'm not married.  
 B: Nor am I. or Neither am I.

Note that we say: **So am I** (*not* 'So I am'), **Neither have I** (*not* 'Neither I have').

I am / I don't etc. ⇒

I'm happy <b>too</b> .
I'm not hungry.
I'm going out.
It rained on Saturday.
Jenny can't drive a car.
I don't like shopping.
Her father is a teacher.

**Answer with So ... I (So am I / So do I / So can I etc.).**

So did I.
.....
.....
.....
.....

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

**You are talking to Maria. Write true sentences about yourself. Where possible, use **So ... I** or **Neither ... I**.**

- So am I.** or **I'm not.**  
**Neither do I.** or **I do.**

MARIA	1 I'm learning English.
	2 I can ride a bicycle.
	3 I'm not American.
	4 I like cooking.
	5 I don't like cold weather.
	6 I slept well last night.
	7 I've never been to Scotland.
	8 I don't write letters very often.
	9 I'm going out tomorrow evening.
	10 I haven't got a headache.
	11 I didn't watch TV last night.
	12 I often go to the cinema.

**isn't haven't don't etc. (negatives)****A** We use **not (n't)** in negative sentences:

positive → negative	am not ('m not) is not ('s not) are not (aren't or 're not) was not ('wasn't) were not (weren't) have not (haven't) has not (hasn't) will not (won't) can not (can't) could not (couldn't) must not (mustn't) should not (shouldn't) would not (wouldn't)	I'm not tired. It isn't (or It's not) raining. They aren't (or They're not) here. Julian wasn't hungry. The shops weren't open. I haven't finished my work. Sue hasn't got a car. We won't be here tomorrow. George can't drive. I couldn't sleep last night. I mustn't forget to phone Ann. You shouldn't work so hard. I wouldn't like to be an actor.
---------------------	---	--

**B****don't/doesn't/didn't****Present simple negative:** I/we/you/they **do not (don't)** **he/she/it does not (doesn't)** **work/live/go etc.****Past simple negative:** I/they/he/she (*etc.*) **did not (didn't)** **work/live/go etc.****positive → negative****I want to go out.** → I **don't want** to go out.They **work** hard. → They **don't work** hard.Liz **plays** the guitar. → Liz **doesn't play** the guitar.My father **likes** his job. → My father **doesn't like** his job.I **got** up early this morning. → I **didn't get** up early this morning.They **worked** hard yesterday. → They **didn't work** hard yesterday.We **played** tennis. → We **didn't play** tennis.Diane **had** a bath. → Diane **didn't have** a bath.**C** Complete these sentences with a negative verb (**isn't/haven't/don't etc.**).

- 1 They aren't rich. They **haven't** got much money.  
 2 'Would you like something to eat?' 'No, thank you. I **haven't** ... hungry.'  
 3 I **haven't** ... my glasses. Have you seen them?  
 4 George **haven't** ... write letters very often. He prefers to use the phone.  
 5 We can walk to the station from here. It **isn't** ... very far.  
 6 'Where's Jill?' 'I **haven't** ... seen her today.'  
 7 Be careful! I **haven't** ... fall!  
 8 We went to the cinema last night. I **haven't** ... like the film very much.  
 9 I've been to Spain many times but I **haven't** ... been to Portugal.  
 10 Julia **isn't** ... be here tomorrow. She's going away.  
 11 'Who broke that window?' 'Not me. I **haven't** ... do it.'  
 12 We didn't see what happened. We **haven't** ... looking at the time.

**D** You ask Gary some questions. His answers are always 'Yes' or 'No'. Write sentences about Gary, positive or negative.**E** Don't ...**Look!** → **Don't look!**Wait for me. → **Don't wait** for me.Sometimes **do** is the main verb (**don't do / doesn't do / didn't do**):**Do something!** → **Don't do anything!**Sue **does** a lot at weekends. → Sue **doesn't do** much at weekends.I **did** what you said. → I **didn't do** what you said.

No.	1	He <b>isn't married</b> .
Yes.	2	He <b>lives in London</b> .
No.	3	
No.	4	
Yes.	5	
Yes.	6	
No.	7	
No.	8	
No.	9	
Yes.	10	
No.	11	
Yes.	12	



GARY

Are you married?	
Do you live in London?	
Were you born in London?	
Do you like London?	
Would you like to live in the country?	
Can you drive?	
Have you got a car?	
Do you read newspapers?	
Are you interested in politics?	
Do you watch TV most evenings?	
Did you watch TV last night?	
Did you go out last night?	

# is it ...? have you ...? do they ...? etc. (questions 1)

## EXERCISES

**A** positive: **you** **are** You are eating.  
 question: **are** **you** Are you eating? What are you eating?  
 In questions, the first verb (**is/are/have etc.**) is before the subject:

positive	verb + subject	question
I am late.	→	Is that seat free?
She is free.	→	Why was she angry?
David has gone.	→	Where has David gone?
You have got a car.	→	Have you got a car?
They will be here soon.	→	When will they be here?
Paula can swim.	→	Can Paula swim?

Be careful with word order: the subject is after the first verb:

- Where has **David** gone? (*not* 'Where has gone David?')
- Are those people waiting for something? (*not* 'Are waiting ... ?')
- When was the telephone invented? (*not* 'When was invented ... ?')

**B** **do** ... ? / **does** ... ? / **did** ... ?

**Present simple questions:** **do** I/we/you/they {work/live/go etc.  
**does** he/she/it      did you/she/they (etc.) work/live/go etc.

**Past simple questions:**

positive	question	Do they work hard?
They work hard.	→	How often do you watch television?
You watch television.	→	Does Chris work hard?
Chris works hard.	→	What time does she get up?
She gets up early.	→	Did they work hard?
They worked hard.	→	What did you have for dinner?
You had dinner.	→	What time did she get up?
She got up early.	→	

Sometimes **do** is the main verb (**do you do / did he do etc.**):

- What do you usually **do** at weekends?
- What **do** your brother **do**? 'He works in a bank.'
- I broke my finger last week.'How **did** you **do** that?' (*not* 'How did you that?')

**C** **Why isn't ... ? / Why don't ... ? etc. (Why + negative):**

- Where's John? **Why isn't** he here? (*not* 'Why he isn't here?')
- Why can't Paula come to the meeting tomorrow? (*not* 'Why Paula can't ... ?')
- Why didn't you phone me last night?

**E1** Write questions.

- I can swim.
- I work hard.
- I was late this morning.
- I've got a key.
- I'll be here tomorrow.
- I'm going out this evening.
- I like my job.
- I live near here.
- I enjoyed my holiday.
- I had a shower this morning.

**Can you swim?  
Does Jim work hard?**

Yes, I have.  
Yes, nearly every day.  
Yes, to go to work.  
Not very much.  
I think I am.  
No, never.

You are talking to a friend about driving. Write the full questions.

- (have / a car?) **Have you got a car?**
- (use / a lot?) **It**
- (use / yesterday?)
- (enjoy driving?)
- (a good driver?)
- (ever / have / an accident?)

Yes, I have.  
Yes, nearly every day.  
Yes, to go to work.  
Not very much.  
I think I am.  
No, never.

Put the words in the right order. All the sentences are questions.

- (has / gone / where / David?) **Where has David gone?**
- (working / Rachel / is / today?) **Is Rachel working today?**
- (the children / what / are / doing?) **What**
- (made / is / how / cheese?) **What**
- (to the party / coming / is / your sister?) **What**
- (you / the truth / tell / don't / why?) **What**
- (your guests / have / yet / arrived?) **What**
- (leave / what time / your train / does?) **When**
- (your car / in the accident / was / damaged?) **Where**
- (to work / Ann / why / go / didn't) **When**

Complete the questions.

- I want to go out.
- Ann and Paul aren't going to the party.
- I'm reading.
- Sue went to bed early.
- My parents are going on holiday.
- I met Tom a few days ago.
- Tina has gone away.
- I can't come to the party.
- I need some money.
- Angela doesn't like me.
- It rains sometimes.
- I did the shopping.

Where **do** you **want to go?**  
Why **aren't** they **going?**

What **time** **do** **they** **go?**

When **do** **they** **leave?**

Where **do** **they** **go?**

Why **do** **they** **go?**

How **much** **do** **they** **pay?**

Why **don't** **they** **go?**

What **time** **do** **they** **get up?**

When **do** **they** **get up?**

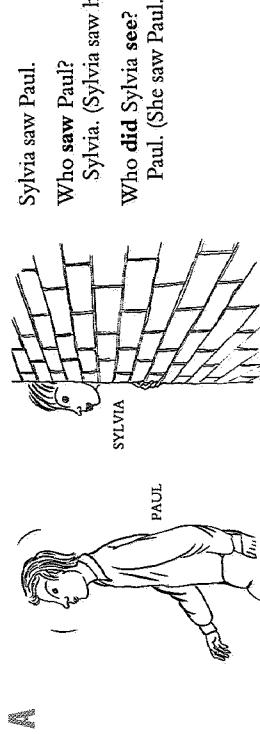
Where **do** **they** **get up?**

Why **do** **they** **get up?**

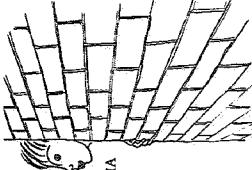
# Who saw you? Who did you see? (Questions 2)

## UNIT 44

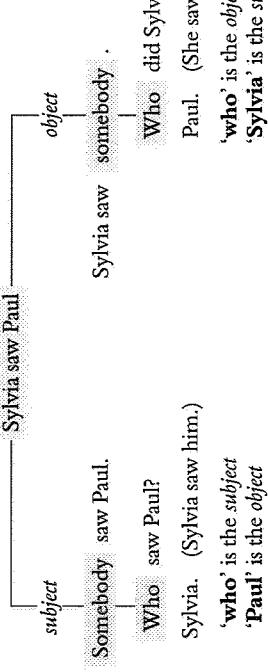
### EXERCISES



Sylvia saw Paul.  
Who saw Paul?  
Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)  
Who did Sylvia see?  
Paul. (She saw Paul.)



Sylvia saw Paul.  
Who saw Paul?  
Sylvia. (Sylvia saw him.)  
Who's the subject?  
'Paul' is the object.



In these questions, **who/what** is the **subject**:

- Who lives in this house? (= somebody lives in it – who?)  
(not 'Who does live?')
- What happened? (= something happened – what?)  
(not 'What did happen?')
- What's happening? (What's = What is)
- Who's got my key? (Who's = Who has)

In these questions, **who/what** is the **object**:

- Who did you meet yesterday? (= you met somebody – who?)
- What did Paul say? (= Paul said something – what?)
- Who are you phoning?
- What was Sylvia wearing?

Compare:

- George likes oranges. → Who likes oranges? – George.
- What does George like? – Oranges.
- Jill won some money. → Who won some money? – Jill.
- What did Jill win? – A hundred pounds.
- Who is your favourite singer?
- What is your favourite song?

6 Use **who** for people (somebody). Use **what** for things, ideas etc. (something):

- Who was I? ⇒ **Who** was I?
- What was I? ⇒ **What** was I?
- Who was my birthday last week and I had some presents. **XXXXX** gave me a book and Catherine gave me **XXXXX**.

4.1 Make questions with **who** or **what**. In these questions, **who/what** is the subject.

- 1 Somebody broke the window.  
2 Something fell off the shelf.  
3 Somebody wants to see you.  
4 Somebody took my umbrella.  
5 Something made me ill.  
6 Somebody is coming.

4.2 Make questions with **who** or **what** (subject or object).

- Who broke the window?  
What... me?  
  
Who lives in this house?  
What did you buy?  
  
Who did you lose?  
Who found it?

4.3 You want the missing information (**XXXXX**). Write questions with **who** or **what**.

- 1 I lost **XXXXX** yesterday but fortunately **XXXXX** found it and gave it back to me.  
2 **XXXXX** phoned me last night. She wanted **XXXXX**.  
3 I needed some advice, so I asked **XXXXX**. He said **XXXXX**.  
4 I hear that **XXXXX** got married last week. **XXXXX** told me.  
5 I met **XXXXX** on my way home this evening. She told me **XXXXX**.  
6 Steve and I played tennis yesterday. **XXXXX** won. After the game we **XXXXX**.  
7 It was my birthday last week and I had some presents. **XXXXX** gave me a book and Catherine gave me **XXXXX**.

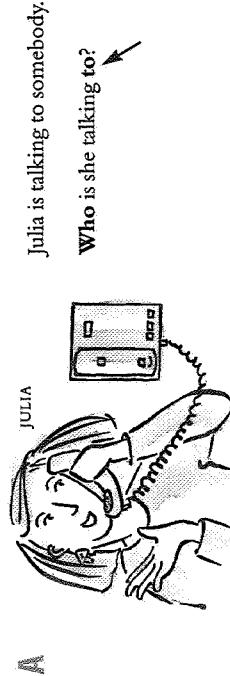
# Who is she talking to? What is it like?

## (questions 3)

### EXERCISES

45.1

You want the missing information (XXXXX). Write questions with who or what.



JULIA

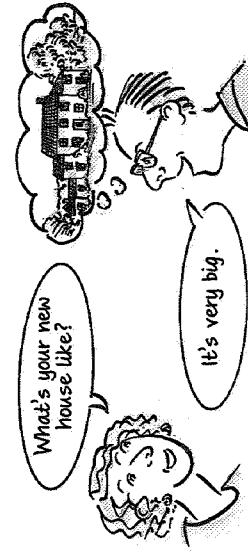
Who is she talking to?

- 1 The letter is from **XXXXX**.  
 2 I'm looking for a **XXXXX**.  
 3 I went to the cinema with **XXXXX**.  
 4 The film was about **XXXXX**.  
 5 I gave the money to **XXXXX**.  
 6 The book was written by **XXXXX**.

In questions beginning **Who ... ? / What ... ? / Where ... ? / Which ... ?**, prepositions (to/from/with etc.) usually go at the end:

- 'Where are you **from**?' 'I'm from Thailand.'
- 'John was afraid.' '**What** was he afraid **of**?' 'John's father is in hospital.' '**Which** hospital is he **in**?' 'They're mine.'
- 'Who do these books belong **to**?' 'Who's mine.'
- 'Kate is going on holiday.' '**Who with**?' / '**Who** is she going **with**?' 'I want to talk to you.' '**What about**?' / '**What** do you want to talk to me **about**?'

**B** What is it like? / What are they like? etc.



What's your new house like?

It's very big.

**What's** (= What is) **it like**? = tell me something about it – is it good or bad, big or small, old or new? etc.  
 When we say **What is it like?**, **like** is a preposition. It is *not* the verb **like** ('Do you like your new house? etc.).

- A: There's a new restaurant in our street.  
 B: **What's** it like? Is it good?  
 A: I don't know. I haven't eaten there yet.

- A: **What's** your new teacher like?  
 B: She's very good. We learn a lot.

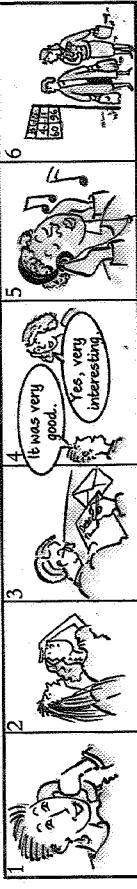
- A: I met Linda's parents yesterday.  
 B: Did you? **What** are they like?  
 A: They're very friendly.

- A: Did you have a nice holiday? **What** was the weather like?  
 B: It was lovely. The sun shone every day.

45.2

You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with **What is/are ... like?**

- 1 Who is she talking to?  
 2 What  
 3 Who  
 4 What  
 5 What  
 6 Which bus



Complete the questions for the pictures. Use one of these verbs + a preposition:

listen look talk talk wait write

- 1 Who is he in?  
 2 What  
 3 Who  
 4 What  
 5 What  
 6 Which bus

Write questions beginning **Which ... ?**

- 1 Tom's father is in hospital.  
 2 We stayed at a hotel.  
 3 Jack plays for a football team.  
 4 I went to school in this town.

45.4

You want some information about another country. You ask somebody who has been there. Ask questions with **What is/are ... like?**

- 1 (the roads) **What are the roads like?**  
 2 (the food) **What is the food like?**  
 3 (the people) **What are the people like?**  
 4 (the weather) **What is the weather like?**

Ask questions with **What was/were ... like?**

- 1 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the weather.  
**What was the weather like?**  
 2 Your friend has just come back from the cinema. Ask about the film.  
 3 Your friend has just finished an English course. Ask about the lessons.  
 4 Your friend has just come back from holiday. Ask about the hotel.

# EXERCISES

## What ...?   Which ...?   How ...?

### UNIT 46

- A**
- 1 **What + noun** (**What colour** ...? / **What kind** ...? etc.)
  - 2 **What colour** is your car?   • **What colour** are your eyes?
  - 3 **What size** is this shirt?   • **What make** is your TV set?
  - 4 **What time** is it?   • **What day** is it today?
  - 5 **What kind** of job do you want? (or **What type** of job ...? / **What sort** of job ...?)

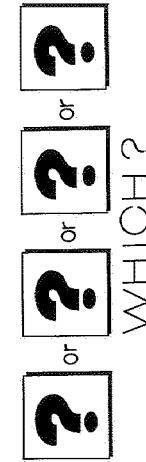
**What without a noun:**

- What's your favourite colour?   • What do you want to do this evening?

- B**
- **Which + noun** (things or people):
  - Which train did you catch – the 9.50 or the 10.30?
  - Which doctor did you see – Doctor Ellis, Doctor Gray or Doctor Hill?
- We use **which** *without a noun* for things, not people:
- Which is bigger – Canada or Australia?
  - Who for people (*without a noun*):
  - Who is taller – Bill or Gerry? (not ‘Which is taller?’)

**C**

We use **which** when we are thinking about a small number of possibilities (perhaps 2, 3 or 4):



- What** is more general:
- What is the capital of Argentina?
  - What **sort** of music do you like?

**Compare:**

- What colour are his eyes? (*not ‘Which colour?’*)
- Which colour do you prefer, pink or yellow?

- What is the longest river in the world?
- Which is the longest river – the Mississippi, the Amazon or the Nile?

**D**

**How ...?**

- How was the party last night?   ‘It was great.’
- How do you usually go to work?   ‘By bus.’

You can use **how + adjective/adverb** (**how tall** / **how old** / **how often** etc.):

<b>How</b> tall are you?   ‘I’m 1 metre 70.’ <b>How</b> big is the house?   ‘Not very big.’ <b>How</b> old is your mother?   ‘She’s 45.’ <b>How</b> far is it from here to the airport?   ‘Five kilometres.’ <b>How</b> often do you use your car?   ‘Every day.’ <b>How</b> long have they been married?   ‘Ten years.’ <b>How</b> much was the meal?   ‘Twenty pounds.’	<b>How tall</b> are you? ... <b>How big</b> ... <b>How old</b> ... <b>How far</b> ... <b>How often</b> ... <b>How long</b> ... <b>How much</b> ...
---	--

**46.1** Write questions with **what**.

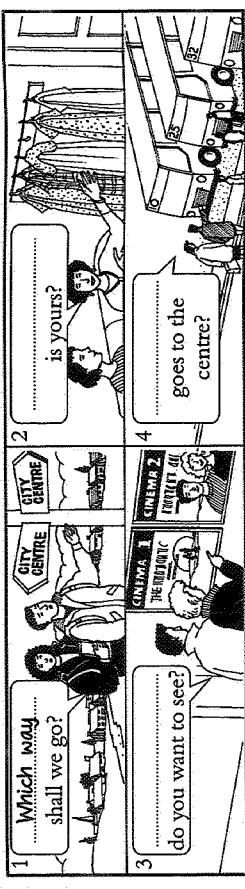
- 1 I've got a new TV set.  
 2 I want a job.  
 3 I've got a new sweater.  
 4 I got up early this morning.  
 5 I like music.  
 6 I want to buy a car.

- (make?)  
 (kind?)  
 (colour?)  
 (time?)  
 (type?)  
 (kind?)

- What make is it?  
 What kind of job do you want?  
 What colour are your eyes?  
 What size is this shirt?  
 What day is it today?  
 What kind of job do you want? (or What type of job ...? / What sort of job ...?)

**46.2** Complete the questions. Use **which** ... ?

- 1 **Which way** shall we go?  
 2 **Which** is yours?  
 3 **Which** do you want to see?  
 4 **Which** goes to the centre?



**46.3** Put in **what/which/who**.

- 1 **What** is that man's name?  
 2 **Which** way shall we go? Left or right?  
 3 You can have tea or coffee. ..... do you prefer?  
 4 **What** day is it today? ‘Friday’  
 5 This is a nice house. ..... room is yours?

- 6 ..... is your favourite sport?  
 7 ..... is more expensive, meat or fish?  
 8 ..... is older, Ann or George?  
 9 ..... kind of camera have you got?  
 10 A: Mary has got three cameras.  
 B: ..... camera does she use most?  
 11 ..... nationality are you?

**46.4** Complete the questions with **how + adjective or adverb** (**high/long etc.**).

- 1 **How high** is Mount Everest?  
 2 ..... is it to the station?  
 3 ..... is Helen?  
 4 ..... do the buses run?  
 5 ..... is the water in the pool?  
 6 ..... have you lived here?

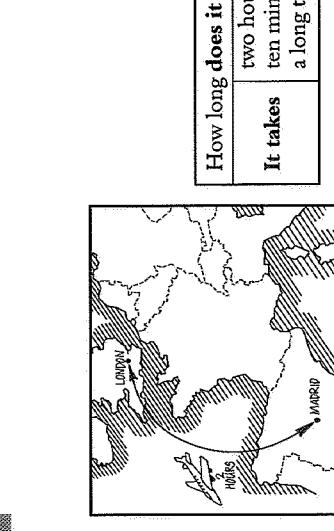
- Nearly 9000 metres.  
 It's about two kilometres from here.  
 She's 26.  
 Every ten minutes.  
 Two metres.  
 Nearly three years.

**46.5** Write questions with **how** ... ?

- 1 Are you 1 metre 70? 1.80?  
 2 Is this box one kilogram? Two? Three?  
 3 Are you 20 years old? 22? 25?  
 4 Did you spend £10? £15? £20?  
 5 Do you watch TV every day? Once a week? Never?  
 6 Is it 1000 miles from Paris to Moscow? 1500? 2000?

# How long does it take ... ?

## EXERCISES

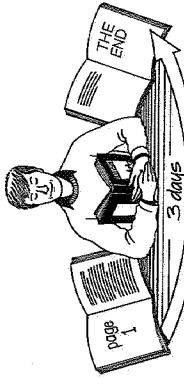


How long does it take by plane from London to Madrid?

It takes two hours.

- How long does it take by train from London to Manchester?
- It takes two hours by train from London to Manchester.
- How long does it take by car from your house to the station?
- It takes ten minutes by car from my house to the station.

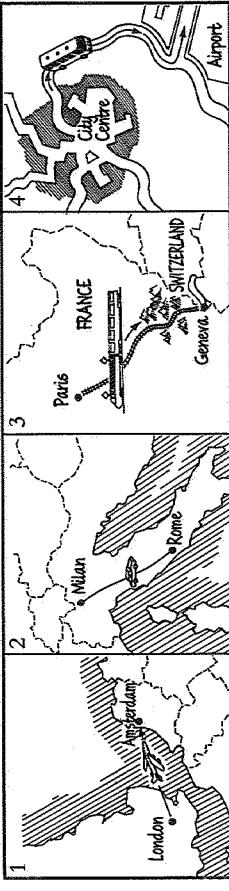
**B**



I started reading the book on Monday.  
I finished it on Wednesday evening.  
It took me three days to read it.

- How long does it take to fly from London to Madrid?
- It takes a long time to learn a language.
- It doesn't take long to cook an omelette.
- It takes me 20 minutes to get to work.
- 'I came by train.' 'Did you? How long did it take (to get here)?'
- It took Tom an hour to do his shopping.
- Did it take you a long time to find a job?
- How long will it take me to learn to drive?
- It will take us an hour to cook the dinner.

Look at the pictures and write questions with **How long ... ?**



1 How long does it take by plane from London to Amsterdam?

2

3

4

How long does it take to do these things? Write full sentences.

- 1 fly from your city/country to London  
**It takes two hours to fly from Madrid to London.**
- 2 fly from your city/country to New York
- 3 study to be a doctor in your country
- 4 walk from your home to the nearest shop
- 5 get from your home to the nearest airport

Write questions with **How long did it take ... ?**

- 1 (She found a place to live.) **How long did it take her to find a place to live?**
- 2 (I walked to the station.)
- 3 (He cleaned the windows.)
- 4 (I learnt to ski.)
- 5 (They repaired the car.)

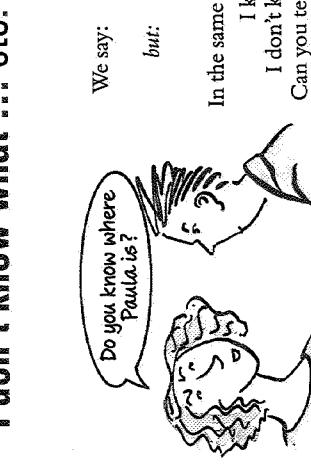
47.4

Read the situations and write sentences with **It took ...**

- 1 I read a book last week. I started reading it on Monday. I finished it three days later.  
**It took me three days to read the book.**
- 2 We walked home last night. We left at 10 o'clock and we arrived home at 10.20.
- 3 I learnt to drive last year. I had my first driving lesson in January. I passed my driving test six months later.
- 4 Mark drove to London yesterday. He left home at 8 o'clock and got to London at 10.
- 5 Linda began looking for a job a long time ago. She got a job last week.
- 6 (write a true sentence about yourself)

# Do you know where ... ? I don't know what ... etc.

## EXERCISES



Answer these questions with **I don't know where/when/why ... etc.**

**A** We say: Where is Paula?

but: Do you know where Paula is?  
(not 'Do you know where is Paula?')

In the same way we say:

I know [ ] where Paula is  
I don't know [ ] where Paula is  
Can you tell me [ ]

Compare:

Who are those people? but  
How old is Linda? What time is it?  
What are you going away?  
Where have they gone?  
What was Ann wearing?  
Where can I go?  
How much is this camera?

who those people are	Do you know	how aeroplanes fly?
how old Linda is	Can you tell me	what time it is?
what time it is		When are you / you are going away?
where I can go		Do you know what time it is? Is it right
how much this camera is		Why are you / they are going away?
when you're going away		I don't know where are they / they are going.
where they have gone		Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?
what Ann was wearing		Where do you want / you want to go for your holidays?
		Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?

**B** Questions with **do/does/did** (*present simple and past simple*):

Where does he live?

Do you know where he lives? (not 'Do you know where does he live?')

Compare:

How do aeroplanes fly? but  
What does Jane want?  
Why did she go home?  
Where did I put the key?

Do you know	how aeroplanes fly
I don't know	what Jane wants
I don't remember	why she went home
I know	where I put the key

Do you know where he lives? (not 'Do you know where does he live?')

Compare:

How do aeroplanes fly? but  
What does Jane want?  
Why did she go home?  
Where did I put the key?

Do you know where he lives?

Do you know	how aeroplanes fly
I don't know	what Jane wants
I don't remember	why she went home
I know	where I put the key

**C** Questions beginning **Is ... ? / Do ... ? / Can ... ? etc. (yes/no questions):**

Compare:

Is Jack at home? but  
Have they got a car?  
Can Brian swim?  
Do they live near here?  
Did anybody see you?

Do you know where he lives?

Do you know	if	Jack is at home
I don't know	or	they've got a car
I don't know	whether	Brian can swim
		they live near here
		anybody saw you

Do you know where he lives?

Do you know	if	Jack is at home
I don't know	or	they've got a car
I don't know	whether	Brian can swim
		they live near here
		anybody saw you

You can use **if** or **whether** in these sentences:

● Do you know if they've got a car? or Do you know whether they've got a car?

- 1 Do you know why **the bus was late**?
- 2 Do you know what time ...?
- 3 Excuse me, can you tell me where ...?
- 4 I don't know what ...?
- 5 Do you know if ...?

1 Have your friends gone home? 2 Is Kate in her office? 3 Is the castle very old? 4 Will Paul be here soon? 5 Was he angry because I was late? 6 Has Sally lived here a long time?
---

(where) I don't know where they've gone. (where) I don't know ... (how old) ... (when) ... (why) ... (how long) ...
--

Complete the sentences.

- 1 (How do aeroplanes fly?)
- 2 (Where does Susan work?)
- 3 (What did Peter say?)
- 4 (Why did he go home early?)
- 5 (What time does the film begin?)
- 6 (How did the accident happen?)

Which is right?

- 1 Do you know what time is it / it is?  
2 Why are you / you are going away?  
3 I don't know where are they / they are going.  
4 Can you tell me where is the museum / the museum is?  
5 Where do you want / you want to go for your holidays?  
6 Do you know what do elephants eat / elephants eat?

Write questions with **Do you know if ... ?**

- 1 (Have they got a car?)
- 2 (Are they married?)
- 3 (Does Sue know Bill?)
- 4 (Will George be here tomorrow?)
- 5 (Did he pass his exam?)

Write questions beginning **Do you know ... ?**

- 1 (What does Ann want?)
- 2 (Where is Paula?)
- 3 (Is she working today?)
- 4 (What time does she start work?)
- 5 (Are the shops open tomorrow?)
- 6 (Where do Sarah and Tim live?)
- 7 (Did they go to Ann's party?)

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

- 1 Do you know why **the bus was late**?
- 2 Do you know what time ...?
- 3 Excuse me, can you tell me where ...?
- 4 I don't know what ...?
- 5 Do you know if ...?

**She said that ...****EXERCISES****He told me that ...**

**g.1** Read what these people say and write sentences with **He/She /They said (that) ...**

- |   |                          |    |                                   |
|---|--------------------------|----|-----------------------------------|
| 1 | I've lost my watch.      | 6  | < I don't feel very well.         |
| 2 | I'm very busy.           | 7  | We'll be home late.               |
| 3 | I can't go to the party. | 8  | I've just come back from holiday. |
| 4 | I have to go out.        | 9  | I'm going to buy a computer.      |
| 5 | I'm learning Russian.    | 10 | We haven't got a key.             |

**g.2** Use the pictures to complete the sentences.



- 1 Peter said that he **had** to go early.  
 2 Diane said that **she was** enjoying her new job.  
 3 She said that **her father wasn't** very well.  
 4 Sarah and Tim said that **they were** going to buy a house.  
 5 Peter said that **he had** to go early.  
 6 He said that **his sister had** gone to Australia.  
 7 Ann said that **she couldn't** find a job.  
 8 Steve said that he **would** phone me.  
 9 Angela said that **she didn't** like her job.  
 10 She said that **her son didn't** like school.

- 1 I met Diane last week. She said **she was** enjoying her new job.  
 2 Betty didn't want anything to eat. She said **she** ...  
 3 I wanted to borrow Mike's ladder but he said **he** ...  
 4 Sally was invited to the party but she said **she** ...  
 5 Sharon told me she didn't want the picture. She said **she** ...  
 6 Martin has just gone away on holiday. He said **he** ...  
 7 I was looking for Robert. Linda said **she** ...  
 8 'Why did Steve stay at home?' 'He said **he** ...'  
 9 'Has Mary gone out?' 'I think so. She said **she** ...'

**g.3** Put in **say/said or tell/told**.

- 1 He **said**, he was tired.  
 2 What did she **tell** you?  
 3 Ann ..... us she was a reporter.  
 4 They asked me a lot of questions but I ..... them anything.  
 5 Please don't ..... Jim what happened.  
 6 Did Lucy ..... she would be late?
- You can say:  
 ● He **said** that he was tired.  
 (not 'He said me')  
 ● What did she **say to** you?  
 (not 'say you')  
 Do not say: 'he said me', 'I said Ann' etc. Do not say: 'he told to me', 'I told to Ann' etc.
- C You can say:  
 ● He **said** he was tired. or He **said** he was tired. (*without 'that'*)  
 ● Ann told me that she didn't like her job. or Ann told me she didn't like her job.

# work/working    go-going    do/doing

## EXERCISES

10.1

Complete the sentences. Write: ... phone Paul or ... to phone Paul.

- 1 I'll ... phone Paul.
- 2 I'm going ... to phone Paul.
- 3 Can you ... Paul?
- 4 Shall I ... ?
- 5 I'd like ... .

**A** work/go/be etc. (infinitive)

We use the infinitive with will/can/must etc.:

will	Ann will be here soon.	⇒ Units 28-29
shall	Shall I open the window? I might phone you later.	⇒ Unit 30
might		
may	May I sit here?	
can	I can't meet you tomorrow.	⇒ Unit 31
could	Could you pass the salt, please?	⇒ Unit 32
must	It's late. I must go now.	⇒ Unit 33
should	You shouldn't work so hard.	⇒ Unit 34
would	Would you like some coffee?	⇒ Unit 35

Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (work/go etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (working/going etc.).

do/doing	get/getting	sleep/sleeping	watch/watching
eat/eating	go-going	stay/staying	wear/wearing
fly/flying	listen/listening	wait/waiting	work/working

Complete the sentences with a verb from the box. Sometimes you need the infinitive (work/go etc.) and sometimes you need -ing (working/going etc.).

**B** to work / to go / to be etc. (to + infinitive)

do/does (present simple)	Do you work? They don't work very hard. Tina doesn't know many people. How much does it cost?	⇒ Units 6-7
did (past simple)	What time did the train leave? We didn't sleep well.	⇒ Unit 12

**C** working/going/playing etc.

am/is/are + -ing (present continuous)	Please be quiet. I'm working. Tom isn't working today. What time are you going out?	⇒ Units 3-4, 8, 26
was/were + -ing (past continuous)	It was raining, so we didn't go out. What were you doing when the phone rang?	⇒ Units 13-14
		verbs + to ... and -ing (I want to do / I enjoy doing) ⇒
		go + -ing ⇒
		[109]

# to ... (I want to do) and -ing (I enjoy doing)

## EXERCISES

### 51.1 Put the verb in the right form, to ... or -ing.

- 1 I enjoy dancing (dance).
- 2 What do you want to do (do) tonight?
- 3 Goodbye! I hope ..... (see) you again soon.

<b>A</b>	<b>verbs + to ... (I want to do)</b>	<b>try</b>	+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)
	want	plan	decide
	hope	expect	forget
	need	promise	refuse
	learn		

- What do you **want to do** this evening?  
 • It's not very late. We **don't need to go** home yet.  
 • Tina has **decided to sell** her car.  
 • You **forgot to switch off** the light when you went out.  
 • My brother is **learning to drive**.  
 • I **tried to read** my book but I was too tired.

### B verbs + -ing (I enjoy doing)

<b>enjoy</b>	<b>stop</b>	<b>suggest</b>	+ -ing (doing / working / being etc.)
<b>mind</b>	<b>finish</b>		

- I **enjoy dancing**. ('not 'enjoy to dance')
- I don't mind getting up early.
- Has it stopped raining?
- Sonia suggested going to the cinema.



I enjoy dancing.

<b>C</b>	<b>verbs + -ing or to...</b>	<b>+ -ing (doing etc.) or to ... (to do etc.)</b>
	<b>like</b>	<b>love</b>
	<b>prefer</b>	<b>hate</b>
	<b>would like</b>	<b>would love</b>
	<b>would prefer</b>	<b>would hate</b>

- Do you like getting up early? **or** Do you **like to get up early**?
- I prefer travelling by car. **or** I prefer **to travel by car**.
- Ann loves dancing. **or** Ann **loves to dance**.
- I hate being late. **or** I **hate to be late**.
- It started raining. **or** It **started to rain**.

### D would like to ... (etc.)

<b>would like</b>	<b>would love</b>	+ to ... (to do / to work / to be etc.)
<b>would prefer</b>	<b>would hate</b>	

- Julia would like to meet you. ('not 'would like meeting')
- I'd love to go to Australia. (I'd = I would)
- Would you like to sit down? 'No, I'd prefer to stand, thank you.'
- I wouldn't like to be a teacher.

### 51.2 Complete the sentences using to ... or -ing. Use one of these verbs:

<b>go</b>	<b>help</b>	<b>have</b>	<b>lose</b>	<b>rain</b>	<b>read</b>	<b>see</b>	<b>send</b>	<b>take</b>	<b>wait</b>	<b>walk</b>	<b>watch</b>
1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2	2
3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3	3
4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4	4
5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5	5
6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6	6
7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7	7
8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8	8
9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9	9
10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10	10
11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11	11
12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12	12

Yes, I like ... <b>getting</b> (OR <b>to get</b> ) <b>up early</b> ...
Yes, I love ...
No, I don't like ...
No, but I'd love ...
Yes, I enjoy ...

1	1	1	1
2	2	2	2
3	3	3	3
4	4	4	4
5	5	5	5
6	6	6	6

1	1	1	1
2	2	2	2
3	3	3	3
4	4	4	4
5	5	5	5
6	6	6	6

- Complete the answers to the questions.



1	1	1	1
2	2	2	2
3	3	3	3
4	4	4	4
5	5	5	5
6	6	6	6

### 51.3 Complete the answers to the questions.

1	1	1	1
2	2	2	2
3	3	3	3
4	4	4	4
5	5	5	5
6	6	6	6

### 51.4 Complete these sentences. Write about yourself. Use to ... or -ing.

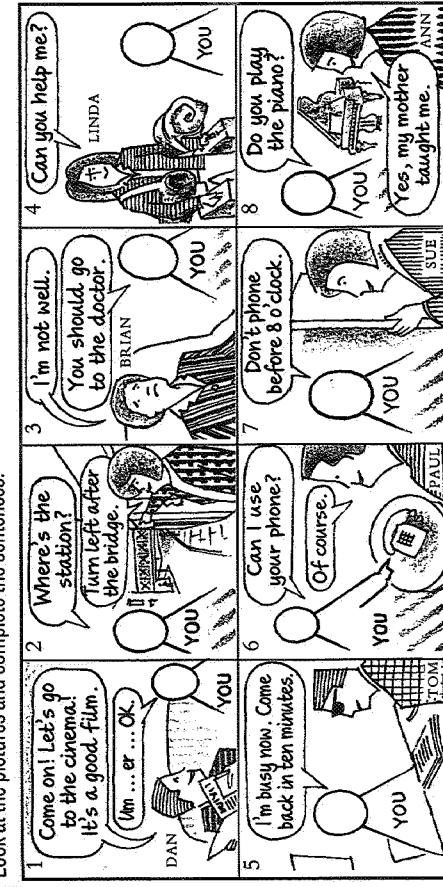
1	1	1	1
2	2	2	2
3	3	3	3
4	4	4	4
5	5	5	5
6	6	6	6

**I want you to ... I told you to ...****EXERCISES**

Write sentences beginning **I want you ... / I don't want you ... / Do you want me ... ?**

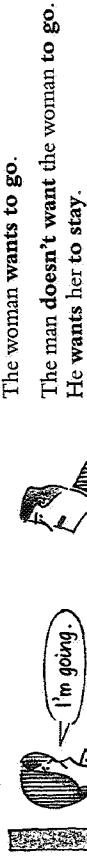
- 1 (you must come with me) **I want you to come with me.**
- 2 (listen carefully) **I want ...**
- 3 (please don't be angry) **I don't ...**
- 4 (shall I wait for you?) **Do you ...**
- 5 (don't phone me tonight) **Don't phone me tonight!**
- 6 (you must meet Sarah) **You must meet Sarah!**

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 We say: **I want { you | somebody } to do something**
  - 2 **Would you like me to lend you some money?**
  - 3 **Do we use would like in the same way?**
  - 4 **We also use this structure (verb + somebody + to ...) with:**
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <b>verb</b>   | <b>+ somebody + to ...</b>   |
| Sue asked I told What do you advise I didn't expect We persuaded I taught | a friend you me them George my brother to lend to be to do? to be to come to swim. |
|   | her some money. careful. here. with us.  |

- 5 **We use would like in the same way:**
- 6 **Do we use would like in the same way?**
- 7 **Would you like me to tell you something?**
- 8 **Would you like me to borrow your car?**
- 9 **Would you like me to get a taxi?**
- 10 **Would you like me to make a phone call?**
- 11 **Would you like me to go to the cinema?**
- 12 **Would you like me to repeat what you said?**
- 13 **Would you like me to think about it?**
- 14 **Would you like me to wait for you?**

**A I want you to ...**

We say: **I want { you | somebody } to do something**

- I want you to be happy. (*not* 'I want that you are happy')
- They didn't want anybody to know their secret.
- Do you want me to lend you some money?

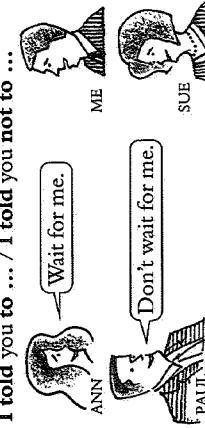
We use would like in the same way:

• Would you like me to lend you some money?

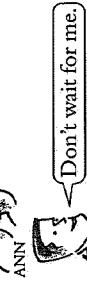
We also use this structure (verb + somebody + to ...) with:

ask	tell	advise	expect	persuade	teach
Sue asked I told What do you advise I didn't expect We persuaded I taught	a friend you me them George my brother to lend to be to do? to be to come to swim.				

verb	+ somebody + to ...
Sue asked I told What do you advise I didn't expect We persuaded I taught	a friend you me them George my brother to lend to be to do? to be to come to swim.
	her some money. careful. here. with us.

**C I told you to ... / I told you not to ...**

→ Ann told me to wait for her.



→ Paul told Sue not to wait for him.

**D make and let**

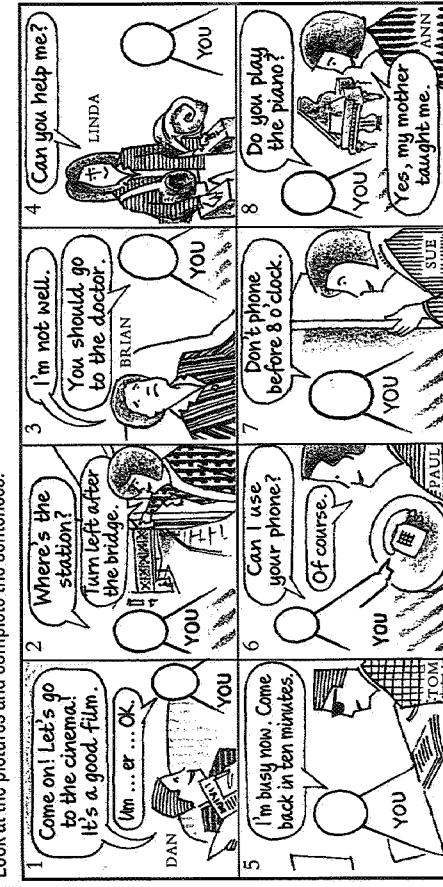
After make and let, we do not use to:

- He's very funny. He makes me laugh. (*not* 'makes me to laugh')
  - At school our teacher made us work very hard.
  - Sue let me use her computer, because mine wasn't working (*not* 'let me to use')
- You can say Let's ... (= Let us) when you want people to do things with you:
- Come on! Let's dance.
  - Shall we go out tonight?" "No, I'm tired. Let's stay at home."

Write sentences beginning **I want you ... / I don't want you ... / Do you want me ... ?**

- 1 (you must come with me) **I want you to come with me.**
- 2 (listen carefully) **I want ...**
- 3 (please don't be angry) **I don't ...**
- 4 (shall I wait for you?) **Do you ...**
- 5 (don't phone me tonight) **Don't phone me tonight!**
- 6 (you must meet Sarah) **You must meet Sarah!**

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 Dan persuaded me to go to the cinema.
- 2 I wanted to get to the station. A woman told ...
- 3 Brian wasn't well. I advised ...
- 4 Linda had a lot of luggage. She asked ...
- 5 I was busy. I told ...
- 6 I wanted to make a phone call. Paul let ...
- 7 Sue is going to phone later. I told ...
- 8 Ann's mother taught ...

- Complete these sentences with the verbs in the list. Sometimes **to** is necessary (to go / to wait etc.); sometimes **to** is not necessary (go / wait etc.).
- |        |        |     |    |      |        |      |       |      |
|--------|--------|-----|----|------|--------|------|-------|------|
| arrive | borrow | get | go | make | repeat | tell | think | wait |
|--------|--------|-----|----|------|--------|------|-------|------|

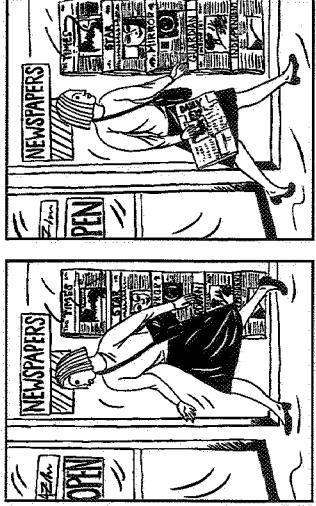
- 1 Please stay here. I don't want you to go.
- 2 I didn't hear what she said, so I asked her to ... it.
- 3 'Shall we begin?' 'No, let's ... a few minutes.'
- 4 Are they already here? I expected them to ... married.
- 5 Kevin's parents didn't want him to ... much later.
- 6 I want to stay here. You can't make me ... with you.
- 7 Is that your bicycle? 'No, it's John's. He let me ... it.'
- 8 Mary can't come to the party. She told me to ... you.
- 9 Would you like a drink? Would you like me to ... some coffee?
- 10 'Ann doesn't like me.' 'What makes you ... that?'

**I went to the shop to ...**

**A** Paula wanted a newspaper, so she went to the shop.

Why did she go to the shop?  
**To buy** a newspaper.

She went to the shop **to buy** a newspaper.



- to ... (to buy / to see etc.)** tells us *why* a person does something:
- 'Why are you going out?' 'To get some bread.'
  - Ann went to the station **to meet** her friend.
  - Sue turned on the television **to watch** the news.
  - I'd like to go to Spain **to learn** Spanish.

**money/time to (do something):**

- We need some **money to buy** food.
- I haven't got **time to watch** television.

**B** **to ... and for ...**

- to + verb**  
(**to buy / to see etc.**)
- I went to the shop **to buy** a newspaper.  
(*not for buy*)
  - They're going to Scotland **to see** their friends.
  - We need some **money to buy** food.

**for + noun**  
(**for a newspaper / for food etc.**)

- I went to the shop **for a newspaper**.
- They're going to Scotland **for a holiday**.
- We need some **money for** food.

**C** **wait for ...**

- Please wait **for** me.
  - Are you waiting **for the bus**?
- wait to (do something):**
- Hurry up! I'm waiting **to go**.
  - Are you waiting **to see** the doctor?

**wait for (somebody/something) to ... :**

- I can't go out yet. I'm waiting **for John to phone**.
- Are you waiting **for the doctor** to come?

go to ... and go for ... ⇒ something to eat / nothing to do etc. ⇒   
enough to/for ... ⇒ too ... to/for ... ⇒

**EXERCISES**

Write sentences beginning **I went to ...**. Choose from the boxes.

the station	the post office	buy some food	get some stamps
the cafe	the supermarket	eat-a-tea	meet a friend

- 1 **I went to the station to catch a train.**  
2 I went .....  
3 .....  
4 .....

Finish the sentences. Choose from the box.

to open this door	to wake him up	to see who it was
to-watch-the-news	to read the newspaper	to get some fresh air

- 1 I turned on the television **to watch the news**....  
2 Alice sat down in an armchair .....  
3 Do I need a key .....  
4 I went for a walk by the river .....  
5 I knocked on the door of David's room .....  
6 The doorbell rang, so I looked out of the window .....

Use your own ideas to finish these sentences. Use **to** ... .

- 1 I went to the shop **to buy a newspaper**....  
2 I'm very busy. I haven't got time .....  
3 I phoned Ann .....  
4 I'm going out .....  
5 I borrowed some money .....

Put in **to** or **for**.

**E3.4**

- 1 Paula went to the shop **to** ... buy some bread.  
2 We went to a restaurant **to** ... have dinner.  
3 Robert wants to go to university **to** ... study economics.  
4 I'm going to London **to** ... an interview next week.  
5 I'm going to see some friends of mine.  
6 Have you got time **to** ... a cup of coffee?  
7 I got up late this morning. I didn't have time **to** ... wash.  
8 Everybody needs money **to** ... live.  
9 The office is very small. There's space only **for** ... a desk and chair.

10 A: Excuse me, are you waiting **for** ... use the phone?  
B: No, I'm waiting **for** ... somebody.

**E3.5** Finish these sentences. Choose from:

- John → phone**    **it / to arrive**    **you / tell me**    **the film / begin**  
1 I can't go out yet. I'm waiting **for** John **to phone**.  
2 I sat down in the cinema and waited .....  
3 We called an ambulance and waited .....  
4 'Do you know what to do?' 'No, I'm waiting .....

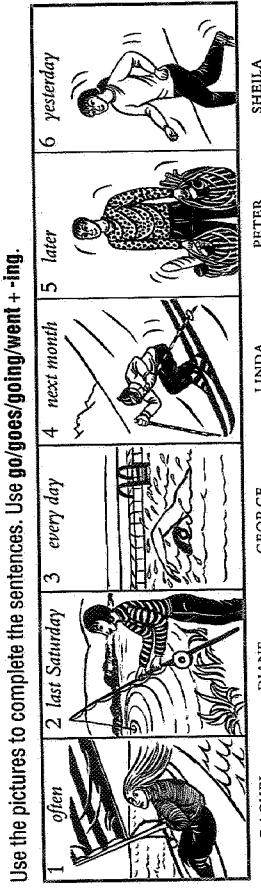
**John → phone**    **it / to arrive**    **you / tell me**    **the film / begin**

# go to ...    go on ...    go for ...    go for

## EXERCISES

Put in **to/on/for** where necessary.

- 1 I'm going **to** France next week.
- 2 Rachel often goes **—** sailing.
- 3 Sue went **.....** Mexico last year.
- 4 Would you like to go **.....** the cinema this evening?
- 5 Jack goes **.....** jogging every morning.
- 6 I'm going out **.....** a walk. Do you want to come?
- 7 I'm tired because I went to a party last night and went **.....** bed very late.
- 8 Martin is going **.....** holiday **.....** Italy next week.
- 9 The weather was warm and the river was clean, so we went **.....** a swim.
- 10 There will be no buses next week because the bus drivers are going **.....** strike.
- 11 I need some stamps, so I'm going **.....** the post office.
- 12 It's late. I must go **.....** home now.
- 13 Would you like to go **.....** a tour of the city?
- 14 Shall we go out **.....** a meal this evening?
- 15 My parents are going **.....** a cruise this summer.



Use the pictures to complete the sentences. Use **go/goes/going/went + -ing**.

54.2

- 1 **RACHEL** **often** **goes** **swimming**.
- 2 **DIANE** **last Saturday** **went** **skiing**.
- 3 **GEORGE** **every day** **goes** **running**.
- 4 **LINDA** **next month** **is going** **on a holiday**.
- 5 **PETER** **later** **is going** **on a boat trip**.
- 6 **SHEILA** **yesterday** **went** **shopping**.

Use the words in the box to finish these sentences. Use **to/on/for** if necessary.

54.3

home	shopping	holiday	sleep
a walk	Portugal	riding	skiing

- 1 The sea looks nice. Let's go **for a swim**.
- 2 Is Ann at home? 'No, she's gone **.....** now. I have to buy **some presents**.  
to get some money.'
- 3 I'm going **.....** now. I have to buy **some presents**.
- 4 I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went **.....** early.
- 5 I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went **.....** now.
- 6 We live near the mountains. In winter we go **.....** every weekend.
- 7 Richard has got a horse. He often goes **.....** in the park.
- 8 The weather is nice. Shall we go **.....** soon?
- 9 A: Are you going **.....** soon?  
B: Yes, next month. We're going **.....**.

A **go to ... (go to work / go to London / go to a concert etc.)**

- What time do you usually **go to work**?
- I'm **going to** France next week.
- Tom didn't want to **go to the concert**.
- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's **gone to bed**'.
- I **went to the dentist** last week.

**go to sleep** = start to sleep:

- I was very tired and **went to sleep** quickly.

**go home (without to)**

- I'm **going home** now. (not 'going to home')

**go on ...**

- We're **going on holiday** next week.
- Children often **go on school trips**.
- When we were in Scotland, we **went on a lot of excursions** to different places.
- The workers have **gone on strike**. (= they are refusing to work)

**go for ...**

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| a walk       | a swim    |
| a run        | a drink   |
| an excursion | a meal    |
| a cruise     | a holiday |
| strike       |           |

**go for ...**

- 'Where's Ann?' 'She's **gone for a walk**'.
- Do you **go for a run** every day?
- The sea looks nice. Let's **go for a swim**.
- We **went for a drink** after work yesterday.
- Shall we **go out for a meal**? I know a good restaurant.
- They've **gone to Scotland for a holiday**.
- (We say 'on holiday' but **for a holiday**.)

**go for ...**

- |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| I go shopping          | he is going swimming   |
| we went fishing        | they have gone sailing |
| she wants to go skiing | jogging etc.           |

**go for ...**

**C**

**go for ...**

- |              |           |
|--------------|-----------|
| a walk       | a swim    |
| a run        | a drink   |
| an excursion | a meal    |
| a cruise     | a holiday |
| strike       |           |

**go for ...**

- 'The sea looks nice. Let's go **for a swim**'.
- 'Is Ann at home?' 'No, she's gone **.....** now. I have to buy **some presents**.  
to get some money.'
- I'm going **.....** now. I have to buy **some presents**.
- I was very tired last night. I sat down in an armchair and went **.....** early.
- I wasn't enjoying the party, so I went **.....** now.
- We live near the mountains. In winter we go **.....** every weekend.
- Richard has got a horse. He often goes **.....** in the park.
- The weather is nice. Shall we go **.....** soon?
- A: Are you going **.....** soon?  
B: Yes, next month. We're going **.....**.

**D**

**go + -ing**

I go shopping	he is going swimming
we went fishing	they have gone sailing
she wants to go skiing	jogging etc.

**go + -ing**

We use **go + -ing** for many sports (swimming / skiing etc.) and also **shopping**:

I'm going skiing.



- Are you **going shopping** this afternoon?
- It's a nice day. Let's **go swimming**. (or Let's **go for a swim**.)
- Rachel has a small boat and she often **goes sailing**.
- I **went jogging** before breakfast this morning.

**get**

**A** get a letter / get a job etc. (get + noun) = receive/buy/fetch/find:

- you don't have something → you get it → you have it
- Did you get my letter? 'Yes, I **got** it yesterday.' (= receive)
- I like your pullover. Where did you **get** it? (= buy)
- (on the phone) 'Hello, can I speak to Ann, please?' 'One moment. I'll **get** her.' (= fetch)
- It's difficult to **get** a job at the moment. (= find)
- also **get a bus / a train / a taxi** (= take a bus/train/etc.):
- 'Did you come here on foot?' 'No, I **got** the bus.'

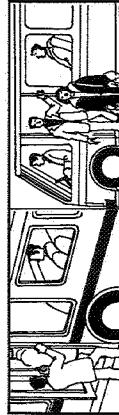
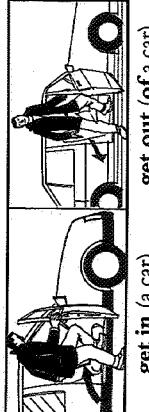
**B** get hungry / get cold / get tired etc. (get + adjective) = become:

- you're not hungry → you get hungry → you are hungry
- If you don't eat, you **get** hungry.
- Drink your coffee. It's **getting** cold.
- I'm sorry your mother is ill. I hope she **gets** better soon.
- We **got** very wet because we didn't have an umbrella.
- also **get married**
- get dressed (= put your clothes on) → I got up and **got** dressed quickly.
- get lost (= lose your way) → We went for a walk and **got** lost.

**C** get to a place = arrive:

- I usually **get to work** before 8.30. (= arrive at work)
- We left London at 10 o'clock and **got to** Manchester at 12.45.
- How did you **get here**? By bus?
- get home (*without* to):
- What time did you **get home** last night?

**D** get in/out/on/off



get in (a car) → get out (of a car)

get on → get off

- Kate **got in** the car and drove away. (You can also say: Kate **got into** the car ...)
- A car stopped and a man **got out**. (but A man **got off** the car.)
- We **got on** the bus outside the hotel and **got off** in Church Street.

get to ⇒ in/out/on/off ⇒ get up ⇒ get on ⇒

**E** Complete these sentences. Use **get(s)** and choose from the box.

a taxi	my letter	some milk	a doctor
your jacket	a good salary	a ticket	the job

1. I wrote to you last week. Did you **get... my letter**...? It's very nice.  
 2. Where did you .....?  
 3. Quick! This man is ill. We must .....  
 4. I don't want to walk home. Let's .....  
 5. I had an interview with the manager but I didn't .....  
 6. When you go out, can you .....?  
 7. 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can .....'  
 8. Margaret has got a well-paid job. She .....

**F** Complete these sentences. Use **getting + one of these words:**

- dark late sold ready married

1. Drink your coffee. It's **getting cold**....  
 2. Turn on the light. It's ..... next week.' 'Oh, really? Congratulations!'  
 3. I'm ..... to go out.  
 4. 'Where's Sally?' 'She's ..... . It's time to go home.  
 5. It's ..... with me? I didn't do anything wrong.

**G** Complete the sentences. Use **get/got + one of these words:**

- angry better hungry lost married nervous old wet

1. If you don't eat, you ... **get hungry**....  
 2. Don't go out in the rain. You'll .....  
 3. My brother ..... last year. His wife's name is Julia.  
 4. Why did you ..... before examinations.  
 5. We tried to find the hotel but we .....  
 6. Everybody wants to stay young but we all .....  
 7. The beginning of the film wasn't very good but it .....  
 8. Most people ..... before examinations.

**H** Write sentences with **I left ... and got to ...**

1. home / 7.30 → work / 8.15 I **left** home at 7.30 and **got to work at 8.15**.  
 2. London / 10.15 → Bristol / 11.45  
 I left London at 10.15 and .....  
 3. the party / 11.15 → home / midnight  
 ..... before examinations.

**I** Write a true sentence about yourself.

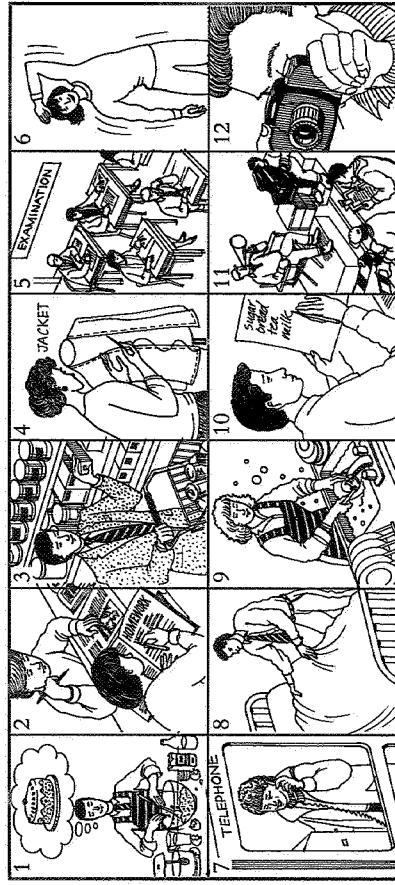
1. Kate **got in** the car and drove away.  
 2. I ..... the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.  
 3. Ann ..... the car, shut the door and went into a shop.  
 4. I made a stupid mistake. I ..... the wrong train.

**J** Put in **in / out of / get on / get off**.

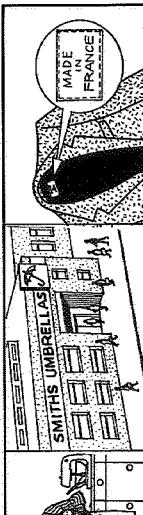
1. Kate **got in** the car and drove away.  
 2. I ..... the bus and walked to my house from the bus stop.  
 3. Ann ..... the car, shut the door and went into a shop.  
 4. I made a stupid mistake. I ..... the wrong train.

**do and make****EXERCISES****Put in make/making/made or do/doing/did/done.**

- A Do is a general word for actions:
- What are you **doing** this evening? (not 'What are you making?')
  - 'Shall I open the window?' 'No, it's OK. I'll **do** it.'
  - 'What did you ..... at the weekend? Did you go away?'
  - 3 Do you know how to .....?
  - 4 Paper is ..... from wood.
  - 5 Richard didn't help me. He sat in an armchair and ..... nothing.
  - 6 'What do you .....?' 'I'm a doctor.'
  - 7 I asked you to clean the bathroom. Have you ..... it?
  - 8 'What do they ..... in that factory?' 'Shoes.'
  - 9 I'm ..... some coffee. Would you like some?
  - 10 Why are you angry with me? I didn't ..... anything wrong.
  - 11 'What are you ..... tomorrow afternoon?' 'I'm working.'

**What are these people doing?**

- B Make = produce/create. For example:
- 'What do you do?' 'I work in a bank.'
- C Expressions with do
- She's **making** coffee. He has **made** a cake. They **make** umbrellas. It was **made** in France.
- Compare **do** and **make**:
- I **do** a lot of things yesterday. I **cleaned** my room, I **wrote** some letters and I **made** a cake.
  - A: What do you **do** in your free time? Sport? Reading? Hobbies?  
B: I **make** clothes. I make dresses and jackets. I also make toys for children.



She's **making** coffee. He has **made** a cake. They **make** umbrellas. It was **made** in France.

Compare **do** and **make**:

- I'm **doing** my driving test next week.
  - John has just done a training course.
  - Have the children done their homework?
  - Ann, could you do me a favour?
  - I go for a run and do exercises every morning.
  - I hate **doing** housework, especially cleaning.
- also do the shopping / the washing / the washing-up / the ironing / the cooking etc.:**
- I did the washing but I didn't do the shopping.
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| Expressions with <b>make</b>  | Expressions with <b>do</b>   |
| an exam (examination) / a test<br>a course<br>homework<br>(somebody) a favour<br>exercises<br>housework | I'm sorry, I made a mistake.<br>I must make an appointment to see the doctor.<br>Excuse me, I have to make a phone call.<br>Have you made a shopping list?<br>It's late. We mustn't make a noise.<br>Sometimes I forget to make my bed in the morning. |

**C**

<b>make</b>	a mistake	I'm sorry, I made a mistake.
	an appointment	I must make an appointment to see the doctor.
<b>do</b>	a phone call	Excuse me, I have to make a phone call.
	a list	Have you made a shopping list?
	a noise	It's late. We mustn't make a noise.
	a bed	Sometimes I forget to make my bed in the morning.

**Expressions with make**

- D With **make**
- We say **make a film** *but* **take a photograph**:
- When was this **film** made? *but* When was this **photograph** taken?
  - 9 There's something wrong with the car. The engine is ..... a strange noise.
  - 10 It was a bad mistake. I was the worst mistake I've ever ..... today.
  - 11 Let's ..... a list of all the things we have to ..... today.

**have****A have and have got (⇒ Unit 9)**

I've got (something) or I have (something) = it is mine:

- I've got a new car. or I have a new car.
- Sue has got long hair. or Sue has long hair.
- Have they got any children? or Do they have any children?
- Tim hasn't got a job. or Tim doesn't have a job.
- How much time have you got? or How much time do you have?

also

I've got	a headache / (a) toothache / a stomach ache / a pain (in my leg etc.)
I have	a cold / a cough / a sore throat / a temperature / flu etc.

I've got a headache. or I have a headache.

Have you got a cold? or Do you have a cold?

The past is: I had (without 'got') / I didn't have / Did you have? etc.:

- When I first met Sue, she had short hair.
- He didn't have any money because he didn't have a job.
- How much time did you have?

**B have breakfast / have a shower etc.**

In these expressions have = eat/drink/take etc. You cannot use 'have got'.

have	breakfast / lunch / dinner a meal / a sandwich / a pizza etc. a cup of coffee / a glass of milk etc. something to eat/drink
------	--

We also use have (not 'have got') in these expressions:

have	a bath / a shower a rest / a holiday / a party a nice time / a good journey etc. a walk / a swim / a game (of tennis etc.) a dream / an accident a baby a look (at ...)
------	---

**C Compare I've got and I have:**

- I've got / I have a new shower. It's very good.  
(You can use 'I've got or I have in this sentence.)
- I have a shower every morning. (not 'I've got')
- A: Where's Paul?  
B: He's having a shower. (= he's washing now)

**D I have / I've got ⇒ I've (done) (present perfect) ⇒ I've (been)**

- 1 I've got a new shower.
- 2 Shall we go to the beach?
- 3 I was thirsty, so I had a drink.
- 4 I like to get up early and have breakfast.
- 5 Tina is a very good driver. She has never had an accident.
- 6 There's something wrong with the engine of my car. Can you help me?

at it?

Put in the correct form of **have** or **have got**.

1 I didn't have time to do the shopping yesterday.  
2 Has Lisa got (OR Does Lisa have) a car? 'No, she can't drive.'  
3 He can't open the door. .... a key.  
4 .... a cold last week. He's better now.  
5 What's wrong? .... a headache?  
6 We wanted to go by taxi but we ..... enough money.  
7 Liz is very busy. .... much free time.  
8 ..... any problems when you were on holiday?

(I / not / have)  
(Lisa / have?)  
(he / not / have)  
(George / have)  
(you / have?)  
(we / not / have)  
(she / not / have)  
(you / have?)

Complete the sentences. Use **have/had** and choose from the list:  
an accident a glass of water a look a walk a party something to eat

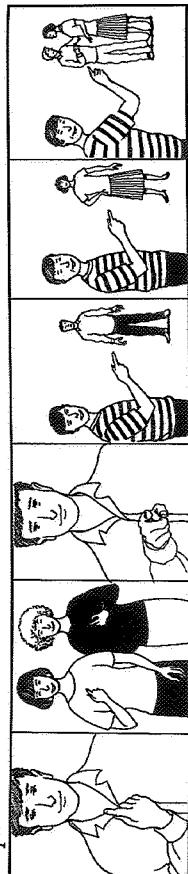
1 We had a party ... a few weeks ago. We invited fifty people.  
2 'Shall we ... ?' 'No, I'm not hungry.'  
3 I was thirsty, so I ...  
4 I like to get up early and ... before breakfast.

# I/me he/him they/them etc.

## EXERCISES

### I/me he/him

A

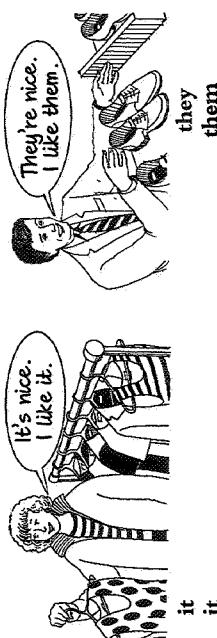


People

subject      I      we      you      he      she  
object      me      us      you      him      her

		object
I	I know Ann.	Ann knows me.
we	We know Ann.	Ann knows us.
you	You know Ann.	Ann knows you.
he	He knows Ann.	Ann knows him.
she	She knows Ann.	Ann knows her.
they	They know Ann.	Ann knows them.

B



Things

subject      it  
object      it

- I don't want **this book**. You can have it.
- I don't want **these books**. You can have **them**.
- Diane never drinks **milk**. She doesn't like **it**.
- I never go to **parties**. I don't like **them**.

- I want that **book**. Please give **it to me**.
- Robert wants these **books**. Can you give **them to him**, please?

C

We use **me/her/them etc. (object)** after a preposition (**for/to/with etc.**):

- This letter isn't **for me**. It's **for you**.
- Who is that woman? Why are you looking **at her**?
- We're going to the cinema. Do you want to come **with us**?
- Sue and Kevin are going to the newspaper? 'You're sitting **on it**'
- I want that **money**. Can you **give it to me**?
- Robert wants these **books**. Can you give **them to him**, please?

### they/them

S8.1

### Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/you/she/her etc.**

- I don't know those girls. Do you know **them**?
- I don't know that man. Do you know **him**?
- I don't know those people. Do you know **them**?
- I don't know David's wife. Do you know **her**?
- I don't know Mr Stevens. Do you know **him**?
- I don't know Sarah's parents. Do you know **them**?
- I don't know the woman with the black coat. Do you know **her**?

Finish the sentences with **him/her/their/their**.

### Exercise 1

### Exercise 2

Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/you/she/her etc.**

- I want to see **her** but **she** doesn't want to see **me**.  
They want to see **me** but **me** doesn't want to see **them**.
- She wants to see **him** but **he** doesn't want to see **us**.  
We want to see **them** but **they** don't want to see **us**.
- He wants to see **us** but **we** don't want to see **her**.  
They want to see **her** but **she** doesn't want to see **us**.
- I want to see **them** but **they** don't want to see **me**.  
You want to see **her** but **she** doesn't want to see **us**.

### Exercise 3

Write sentences beginning **I like ...** or **Do you like ... ?**

- I don't eat tomatoes. I don't like **them**.
- George is a very nice man. I like **him**.
- This jacket isn't very nice. I don't like **it**.
- This is my new car. Do you like **it**?
- Mrs Clark is not very friendly. I don't like **her**.
- These are my new shoes. I like **them**.

S8.4

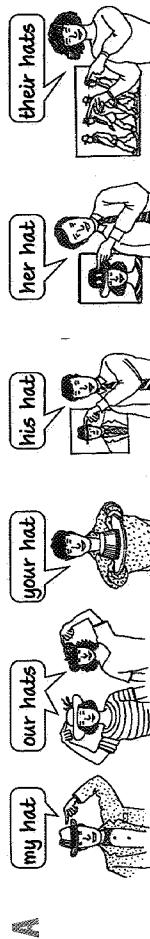
### Complete the sentences. Use **I/me/he/him etc.**

- Who is that woman? Why are you looking at **her**?
- 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, I work with **him**'.
- Where are the tickets? I can't find **them**.
- I can't find my keys. Where are **they**?
- We're going out. You can come with **us**.
- Margaret likes music. She likes **it**.
- I don't like dogs. I'm afraid of **them**.
- I'm talking to you. Please listen to **me**.
- Where is Ann? I want to talk to **her**.
- My brother has a new job. He doesn't like **it** very much.

### Exercise 4

### Exercise 5

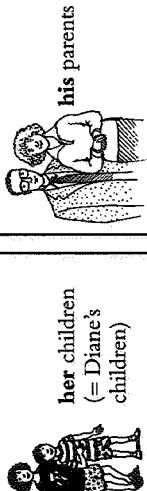
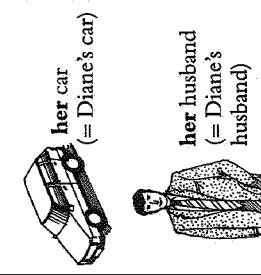
- I want that book. Can you give **it to me**?
- He wants the key. Can you give **it to me**?
- She wants the keys. Can you give **them to me**?
- I want that letter. Can you give **it to me**?
- They want the money. Can you give **it to me**?
- We want the photographs. Can you give **them to me**?

**my/his/their etc.**

I → my	I like my job.
we → our	We like our jobs.
you → your	You like your job.
he → his	He likes his job.
she → her	She likes her job.
they → their	They like their jobs.
it → its	Oxford (= it) is famous for its university.

We use **my/your/his etc. + a noun:**

my hands      his mother      your best friend  
our house      your new car      their room



**C**

its and it's      Oxford is famous for its university.  
its      It's a nice city. (= It is a nice city.)  
it's (= it is)      I like Oxford. It's a nice city.

**EXERCISES****59.1**

Finish these sentences.

- I'm going to wash **my hands**.
- She's going to wash .....
- We're going to wash .....
- He's going to wash .....
- They're going to wash .....
- Are you going to wash .....

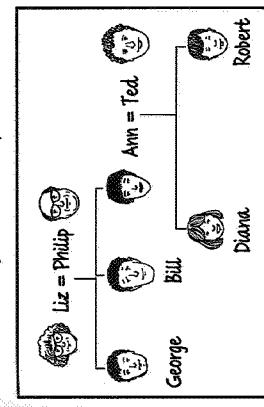
**59.2**

Finish these sentences.

- He **lives with his parents**.
- They live with .....
- We ..... parents.
- Julia lives .....
- I ..... parents.
- John .....
- Do you live .....
- Most children .....

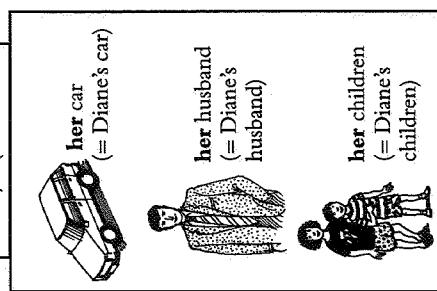
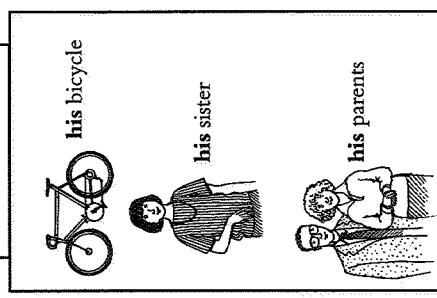
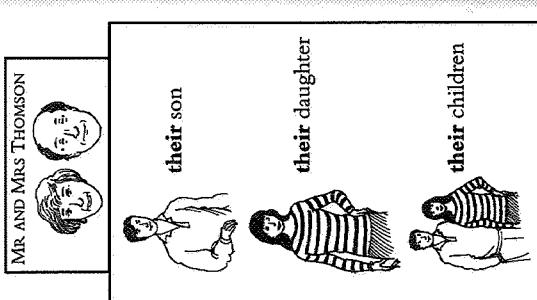
**59.3**

Look at the family tree and complete the sentences with **his/her/their/its**.



Put in **my/our/your/his/her/their/its**.

- Do you like **your job**?
- I know Mr Watson but I don't know ..... wife.
- Mr and Mrs Baker live in London. ..... son lives in Australia.
- We're going to have a party. We're going to invite all ..... friends.
- Ann is going out with ..... friends this evening.
- I like tennis. It's ..... favourite sport.
- 'Is that ..... car?' 'No, I haven't got a car.'
- I want to phone Ann. Do you know ..... phone number?
- Do you think most people are happy in ..... jobs?
- I'm going to wash ..... hair before I go out.
- This is a beautiful tree. ..... leaves are a beautiful colour.
- John has a brother and a sister. ..... brother is 25 and ..... sister is 21.

**59.4**

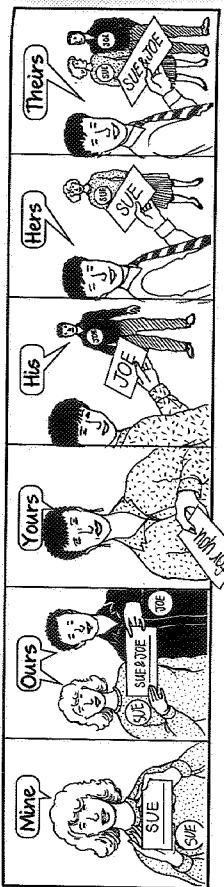
mine/yours etc. ⇒ I/me/my/mine ⇒

- It's very cold today. Put on ..... when you go out.
- I can't open the door. I haven't got ..... works in a bank.
- Sally is married. ..... is at the end on the left.
- 'What are the children doing?' 'They're doing .....'
- 'Do you know that man?' 'Yes, but I don't know .....'
- We live in Barton Street.

# Whose is this?

## It's mine/yours/hers etc.

A



I → my	→ mine
we → our	→ ours
you → your	→ yours
he → his	→ his
she → her	→ hers
they → their	→ theirs

It's my money.	It's mine.
It's our money.	It's ours.
It's your money.	It's yours.
It's his money.	It's his.
It's her money.	It's hers.
It's their money.	It's theirs.

B We use **my/your etc. + a noun** (my hands / your book etc.):

- My hands are cold.
- Is this your book?
- Ann gave me her umbrella.
- It's their problem, not our problem.

We use **mine/yours etc. without a noun**:

- Is this book **mine** or **yours**? (= my book or your book)
- I didn't have an umbrella, so Ann gave me **hers**. (= her umbrella)
- It's their problem, not **ours**. (= not our problem)
- We went in our car and they went in **theirs**. (= their car)

You can use **his** with or without a noun:

- Is this **his** camera or **hers**? 'It's **his**'.

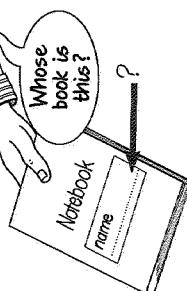
C a friend of **mine** / a friend of **his** / some friends of **yours** etc.

- I went out to meet a friend of **mine**. (*not* 'a friend of me')
- Tom was with a friend of **his**. (*not* 'a friend of him')
- Are those people friends of **yours**? (*not* friends of you)

D Whose ... ?

● Whose book is this? (= Is it your book? his book? my book? etc.)

- You can use **whose with or without a noun**:
- Whose money is this?  
Whose is this?  
Who's this?  
Whose shoes are these?  
Who's these?
  - It's mine.  
They're John's.



### EXERCISES

A Finish the sentences with **mine/yours etc.**

- 1 It's your money. It's **Yours**.
- 2 It's my bag. It's **My**.
- 3 It's our car. It's **Our**.
- 4 They're her shoes. They're **Hers**.
- 5 It's their house. It's **Theirs**.
- 6 They're your books. They're **Yours**.
- 7 They're my glasses. They're **Mine**.
- 8 It's his coat. It's **His**.

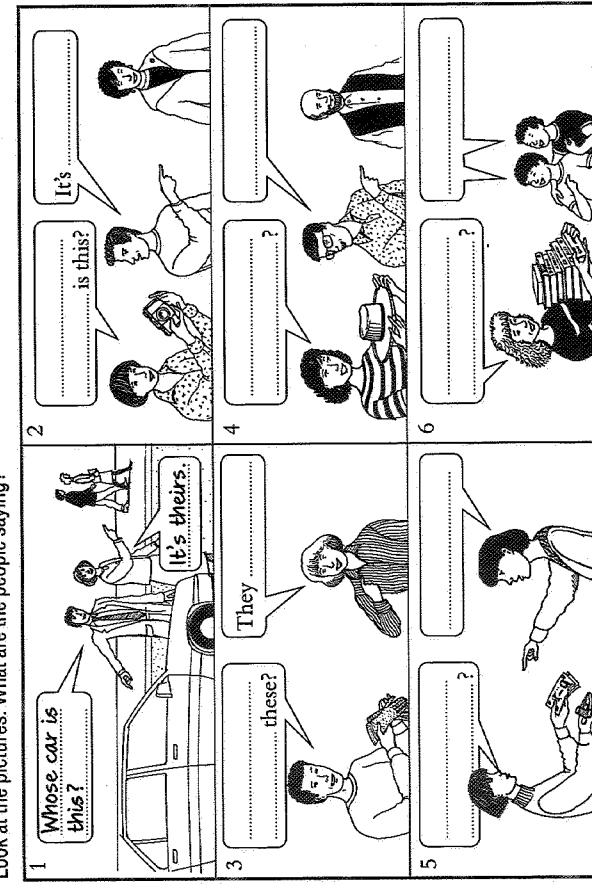
Choose the right word.

- 1 It's **their/theirs** problem, not **our/ours**.
- 2 This is a nice camera. Is it **your/yours**?
- 3 That's not my/mine umbrella. **My/Mine** is black.
- 4 Whose books are these? **Your/Yours** or **my/mine**?
- 5 Catherine is going out with her/his friends this evening.
- 6 My/**Mine** room is bigger than her/hers.
- 7 They've got two children but I don't know their/heirs names.
- 8 Can we use your washing machine? **Our/Ours** is broken.

B Finish these sentences. Use **friend(s) of mine/yours etc.**

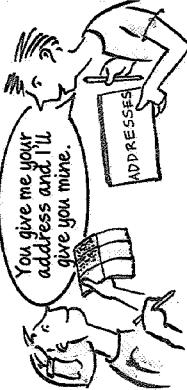
- 1 I went to the cinema with a **friend of mine**.
- 2 They went on holiday with some **friends of theirs**.
- 3 She's going out with a friend .....
- 4 We had dinner with some .....
- 5 I played tennis with a .....
- 6 Tom is going to meet a .....
- 7 Do you know those people? Are they .....

C Look at the pictures. What are the people saying?



## I/me/my/mine

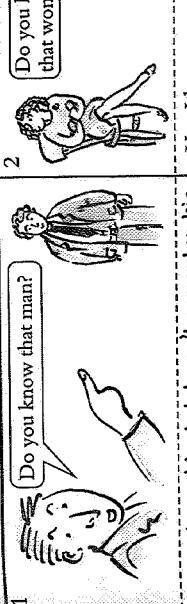
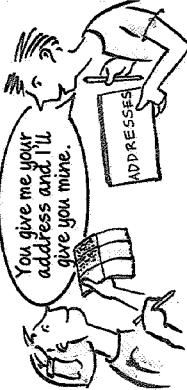
## EXERCISES



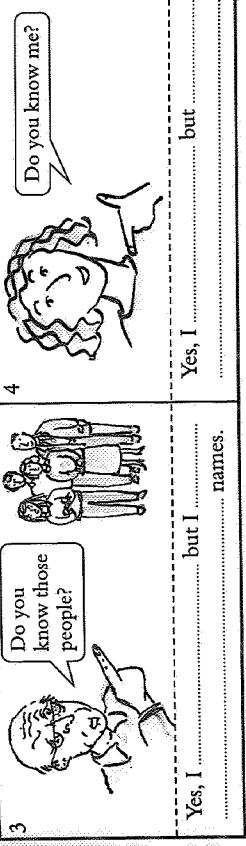
I etc. (⇒ Unit 58)      me etc. (⇒ Unit 58)      my etc. (⇒ Unit 59)      mine etc. (⇒ Unit 60)

I know Tom.	Tom knows me.	It's my car.	It's mine.
We know Tom.	Tom knows us.	It's our car.	It's ours.
You know Tom.	Tom knows you.	It's your car.	It's yours.
He knows Tom.	Tom knows him.	It's his car.	It's his.
She knows Tom.	Tom knows her.	It's her car.	It's hers.
They know Tom.	Tom knows them.	It's their car.	It's theirs.

Answer the questions in the same way.



1      Do you know that man?  
 Yes, I know him but I can't remember his name.  
 2      Do you know that woman?  
 Yes, I know her but I can't remember her name.



3      Do you know those people?  
 Yes, I know them but I can't remember their names.  
 4      Do you know me?  
 Yes, I know you but I can't remember your name.

Finish these sentences in the same way.

- 1 We invited her to stay with us at our house.  
 2 He invited us to stay with ..... house.  
 3 They invited me to stay with ..... house.  
 4 I invited them .....  
 5 She invited us .....  
 6 Did you invite him .....

Complete the sentences in the same way.

- 1 I gave him my address and he gave me his.....  
 2 I gave her ..... address and she gave me .....  
 3 He gave me ..... address and I gave .....  
 4 We gave them ..... address and they gave .....  
 5 She gave him ..... address and .....  
 6 You gave us ..... address and .....  
 7 They gave you ..... address and .....

Put in him/her/your etc.

- 1 Where's Ann? Have you seen her...?  
 2 Where are my keys? Where did I put .....?  
 3 This letter is for Bill. Can you give it to ..... letter.  
 4 We wrote to John but he didn't answer ..... letter.  
 5 I can't find my pen. Can I use .....?  
 6 We're going to the cinema. Why don't you come with .....?  
 7 Did your sister pass ..... exams?  
 8 Some people talk about ..... jobs all the time.  
 9 Last night I went out for a meal with a friend of .....

**myself/yourself/themselves etc.****EXERCISES**Finish the sentences with **myself/yourself/itself etc.**

- 1 He looked at **himself** ... in the mirror.  
 2 I'm not angry with you. I'm angry with .....  
 3 Margaret had a nice time in London. She enjoyed .....  
 4 My friends had a nice time in London. They enjoyed .....  
 5 I picked up a very hot plate and burnt .....  
 6 He never thinks about other people. He only thinks about ..... (one person)  
 7 I want to know more about you. Tell me about ..... ! (two people)  
 8 Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look after ..... ! (two people)

They're enjoying themselves.



Help yourself!



He's looking at himself.



- I → me → myself**  
**he → him → himself**  
**she → her → herself**  
**you → you → yourself**  
**we → us → ourselves**  
**they → them → themselves**
- I looked at myself in the mirror.
  - He cut himself with a knife.
  - She fell off her bike but she didn't hurt herself.
  - Please help yourself. (one person)
  - Please help yourselves. (two or more people)
  - We had a good holiday. We enjoyed ourselves.
  - They had a nice time. They enjoyed themselves.

- Compare:  
**me/him/them etc.**
- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <b>She</b> is looking at <b>him</b> | <b>He</b> is looking at <b>himself</b> |
| <b>different people</b>             | <b>the same person</b>                 |

Compare:

- me/him/them etc.**
- |                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <b>She</b> is looking at <b>him</b> | <b>He</b> is looking at <b>himself</b> |
| <b>different people</b>             | <b>the same person</b>                 |
- You never talk to me.
  - I didn't pay for them.
  - Did I hurt you?
  - Sometimes I talk to myself.
  - They paid for themselves.
  - Be careful. Don't hurt yourself!
- by myself / by yourself etc. = alone:**
- I went on holiday **by myself**. (= I went alone)
  - Was she with friends? 'No, she was **by herself**'.

- C each other**
- Jill and Ann are good friends. They know **each other** well. (= Jill knows Ann / Ann knows Jill)
  - Paul and I live near **each other**. (= he lives near me / I live near him)
- D -selves:**

- Compare **each other** and **-selves**:
- |              |            |
|--------------|------------|
| <b>STEVE</b> | <b>SUE</b> |
|              |            |
- Steve and Sue looked at **each other**. (= he looked at her / she looked at him)
  - Steve and Sue looked at **themselves**. (= he looked at himself / she looked at herself)

Complete the sentences. Use: **each other** or **ourselves/yourselves/themselves or us/you/them**.

- 1 Paul and I live near **each other**.  
 2 Who are those people? Do you know **them** ?  
 3 You can help Tom and Tom can help you. So you and Tom can help .....  
 4 There's food in the kitchen. If you and Chris are hungry, you can help .....  
 5 We didn't go to Ann's party. She didn't invite .....  
 6 When we go on holiday, we always enjoy .....  
 7 Mary and Jane were at school together but they never see ..... now.  
 8 Diane and I are very good friends. We've known ..... for a long time.  
 9 Did you see David and Diane at the party? 'Yes, but I didn't speak to ..... when they're alone.'

## EXERCISES

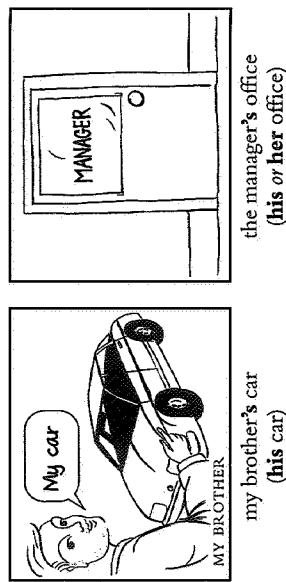
**'s (Ann's camera / my brother's car etc.)**

We normally use **'s** for people:

- I stayed at **my sister's** house. (*not* 'the house of my sister')
- Have you met **Mr Kelly's** wife? (*not* 'the wife of Mr Kelly')
- Are you going to **Jane's** party?
- Paul is a **man's** name. Paula is a **woman's** name.

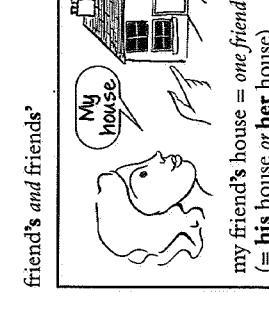
You can use **'s** without a noun after it:

- Mary's hair is longer than **Ann's**. (= Ann's hair)
- Whose umbrella is this? 'It's **my mother's**' (= my mother's umbrella)
- Where were you last night? 'I was at **Paul's**'. (= Paul's house)



We write **'s** after:

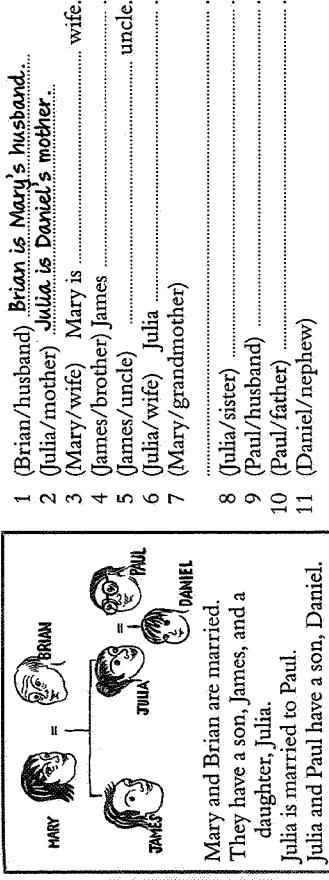
- friend/student/mother etc. (singular):  
my mother's car (*one mother*)
- friends/students/parents etc. (plural):  
my parents' car (*two parents*)



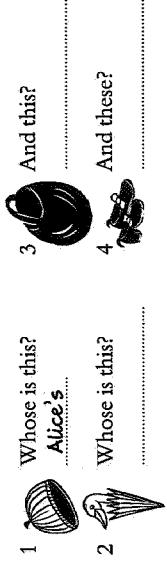
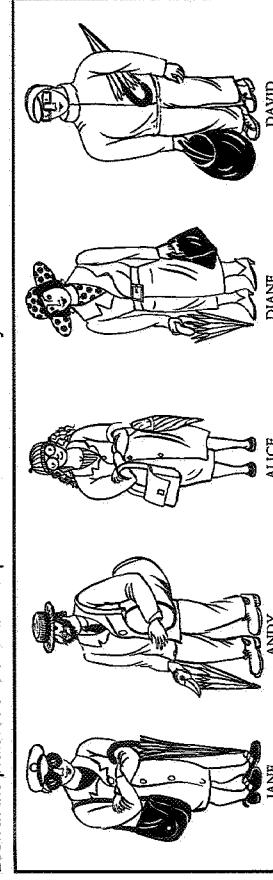
We use **of ...** for things, places etc.:

- Look at the roof of **that building**. (*not* 'that building's roof')
- We didn't see the beginning of **the film**. (*not* 'the film's beginning')
- What's the name of **this village**?
- Do you know the cause of **the problem**?
- You can sit in the back of **the car**.
- Madrid is the capital of **Spain**.

Look at the family tree. Write sentences about the people in the family.



Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use one word only.



Are these sentences OK? Correct the sentences where necessary.

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1 I stayed at <b>the house of my sister</b> .                   | 3 And this?<br><b>Alice's</b>  |
| 2 What is the name of <b>this village</b> ?                     | 4 And these?<br><b>Jane's</b>  |
| 3 Do you like the colour of <b>this coat</b> ?                  | 5 And this?<br><b>Diane's</b>  |
| 4 Do you know the phone number of <b>Bill</b> ?                 | 6 And these?<br><b>David's</b> |
| 5 The job of <b>my brother</b> is very interesting.             |                                |
| 6 Write your name at <b>the top of the page</b> .               |                                |
| 7 For me the morning is the best part of the day.               |                                |
| 8 The favourite colour of <b>Paula</b> is blue.                 |                                |
| 9 When is the <b>birthday</b> of your mother?                   |                                |
| 10 The <b>house</b> of my parents isn't very big.               |                                |
| 11 The <b>walls</b> of this house are very thin.                |                                |
| 12 The car stopped at <b>the end of the street</b> .            |                                |
| 13 Are you going to <b>the party of Silvia</b> next week?       |                                |
| 14 The manager of <b>the hotel</b> is on holiday at the moment. |                                |

## EXERCISES

## a/an

- 1 ***an*** old book    4 ..... airport    7 ..... university  
 2 window    5 ..... new airport    8 ..... hour  
 3 horse    6 ..... organisation    9 ..... economic problem

What are these things? Choose from the list.

bird	fruit	mountain	river	musical instrument
flower	game	planet	tool	vegetable

## a/an

- 1 A duck is ***a*** bird. ....  
 2 A carrot is ....  
 3 Tennis is ....  
 4 A hammer is ....  
 5 Everest is ....

a ... = one thing or person:

- Alice works in ***a bank***. (*not 'in bank'*)
- Can I ask ***a question***? (*not 'ask question'*)
- I haven't got ***a car***.
- There's ***a woman*** at the bus stop.

***an*** (*not 'a*) before ***a/e/i/o/u***:

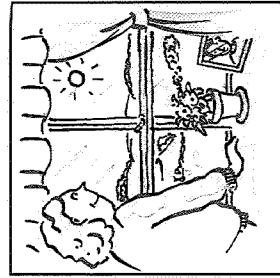
- Do you want ***an apple*** or ***a banana***?
  - I'm going to buy ***a hat*** and ***an umbrella***.
  - There was ***an interesting programme*** on TV last night.
- also*** ***an hour*** (*h* is not pronounced: ***an (h)our***)  
***but*** ***a university*** (*pronounced *yu:nɪvə:sɪtɪ*)  
***a European country*** (*pronounced *ju:pərəʊnɪk*)**

***another*** (= ***an + other***) is *one word*:

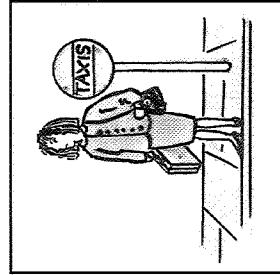
- Can I have ***another cup of tea***?
- The sun is ***a star***.
- Dallas is a ***city in Texas***.
- A mouse is ***an animal***. It's a ***small animal***.
- Joe is a ***very nice person***.

We use ***a/an*** ... for *jobs* etc.:

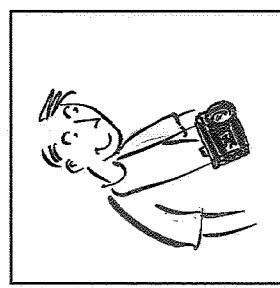
- A: What's your job?  
 B: I'm a ***dentist***. (*not 'I'm dentist.'*)
- 'What does Mark do?' 'He's an ***engineer***'
- Would you like to be a ***teacher***?
- Beethoven was a ***composer***.
- Picasso was a ***famous painter***.
- Are you a ***student***?



It's a beautiful day.



She's waiting for a taxi.



He's got a camera.

**A** ... = one thing or person:

- Can I ask ***a question***? (*not 'ask question'*)
- I haven't got ***a car***.
- There's ***a woman*** at the bus stop.

***an*** (*not 'a*) before ***a/e/i/o/u***:

- Do you want ***an apple*** or ***a banana***?
  - I'm going to buy ***a hat*** and ***an umbrella***.
  - There was ***an interesting programme*** on TV last night.
- also*** ***an hour*** (*h* is not pronounced: ***an (h)our***)  
***but*** ***a university*** (*pronounced *yu:nɪvə:sɪtɪ*)  
***a European country*** (*pronounced *ju:pərəʊnɪk*)**

***another*** (= ***an + other***) is *one word*:

- Can I have ***another cup of tea***?
- The sun is ***a star***.
- Dallas is a ***city in Texas***.
- A mouse is ***an animal***. It's a ***small animal***.
- Joe is a ***very nice person***.

**C** We use ***a/an*** ... when we say what a thing or a person is. For example:

- The sun is ***a star***.
- Football is a ***game***.
- Dallas is a ***city in Texas***.
- A mouse is ***an animal***. It's a ***small animal***.
- Joe is a ***very nice person***.

We use ***a/an*** ... for *jobs* etc.:

- A: What's your job?  
 B: I'm a ***dentist***. (*not 'I'm dentist.'*)
- 'What does Mark do?' 'He's an ***engineer***'
- Would you like to be a ***teacher***?
- Beethoven was a ***composer***.
- Picasso was a ***famous painter***.
- Are you a ***student***?



I'm a dentist.

<b>A</b>	<b><i>I want to ask you a question</i></b>	Barbara works in
		Ann wants to learn
		Jim lives in
		My brother is
		This evening I'm going to

old house    artist    question

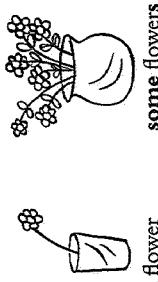
party    bookshop    foreign language

bicycle    hat

1	2	3
4	5	6
7	8	

**flower(s) / bus(es) (singular and plural)****EXERCISES**

**A** The plural of a noun is usually -s:  
**singular** (= one) → **plural** (= two or more)  
 a flower → **some flowers**  
 a week → two weeks  
 a nice place → many nice places  
 this shop → **these shops**



**Spelling** (⇒ Appendix 5):

-s / -sh / -ch / -x → -es	bus → buses	dish → dishes
	church → churches	box → boxes
also	potato → potatoes	tomato → tomatoes
-y → -ies	baby → babies	dictionary → dictionaries
	party → parties	
but -ay / -ey / -oy → -ys	day → days	monkey → monkeys
-f / -fe → -ves	shelf → shelves	knife → knives
	wife → wives	wife → wives

**B** These things are plural in English:



● Do you wear glasses?

● Where are the scissors? I need them.

You can also say a pair of scissors / a pair of trousers / a pair of pyjamas etc.:  
 ● I need a new pair of jeans. or I need some new jeans. (*not* 'a new jeans')

**C** Some plurals do *not* end in -s:

this man → these men	one foot → two feet	that sheep → those sheep
a woman → some women	a tooth → all my teeth	a fish → a lot of fish
a child → many children	a mouse → some mice	

also: a person → two people / some people / a lot of people etc.  
 ● She's a nice person.  
*but* ● They are nice people. (*not* 'nice persons')

**D** **People** is plural (= they), so we say **people are / people have etc.**:

● **A lot of people speak English.** (*not* 'speaks')

● I like the people here. They are very friendly.

**Police** is plural:

● 'The police are here.' 'Why? What do they want?'

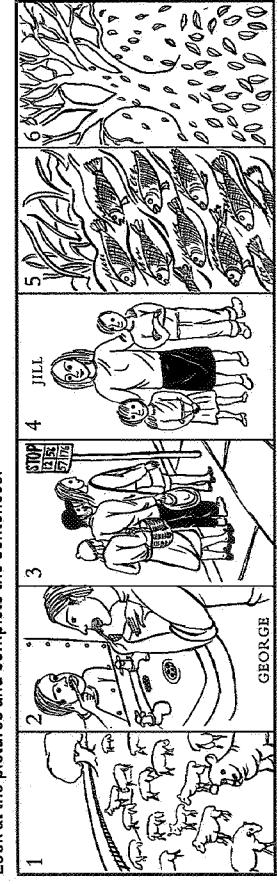
● 'The police are here.' 'I need my glasses but I can't find ...'

new jeans today.  
 10 I'm going to buy ..... new jeans today.

**5.1** Write the plural.

- 1 flower ..... 5 umbrella ..... 9 family .....  
 2 boat ..... 6 address ..... 10 foot .....  
 3 woman ..... 7 knife ..... 11 holiday .....  
 4 city ..... 8 sandwich ..... 12 potato .....

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 There are a lot of ..... in the field.  
 2 George is cleaning his ..... .  
 3 There are three ..... at the bus stop.  
 4 Jill has got two ..... .  
 5 There are a lot of ..... in the river.  
 6 The ..... are falling from the tree.

Some of these sentences are right but most are wrong. Correct the sentences that are wrong.

- 1 I'm going to buy some flowers. **OK**.  
 2 I need a new jeans. **I need a new pair of jeans.** OR I need some new jeans..  
 3 It's a lovely park with a lot of beautiful tree. ....  
 4 There was a woman in the car with two mens. ....  
 5 Sheep eat grass. ....  
 6 David is married and has three childs. ....  
 7 Most of my friend are student. ....  
 8 He put on his pyjama and went to bed. ....  
 9 We went fishing but we didn't catch many fish. ....  
 10 Do you know many persons in this town? ....  
 11 I like your trouser. Where did you get it? ....  
 12 The town centre is usually full of tourist. ....  
 13 I don't like mice. I'm afraid of them. ....  
 14 This scissor isn't very sharp. ....

**5.4** Which is right? Complete the sentences.

- (go or goes?)  
 (is or are?)  
 (don't or doesn't?)  
 (watch or watches?)  
 (was or were?)  
 (live or lives?)  
 (Do or Does?)  
 (is or are?)  
 (a or some?)

1 It's a nice place. Many people ..... there for a holiday.  
 2 Some people ..... always late.  
 3 The president is not popular. The people ..... like him.  
 4 A lot of people ..... television every day.  
 5 Three people ..... injured in the accident.  
 6 How many people ..... in that house?  
 7 ..... the police carry guns in your country?  
 8 The police ..... looking for the stolen car.  
 9 I need my glasses but I can't find .....  
 10 I'm going to buy ..... new jeans today.

# a car / some money (countable/uncountable 1)

## EXERCISES

UNIT  
66

6.1 What are these things? Some are countable and some are uncountable. Write **a/an** if necessary.  
The names of these things are:

A noun can be *countable* or *uncountable*.

**A Countable nouns**

For example: (a) **car**   (a) **man**   (a) **key**   (a) **house**   (a) **flower**   (an) **idea**   (an) **accident**



You can use **one/two/three** (etc.) + *countable nouns* (you can *count* them):



Countable nouns can be *singular* (= one) or *plural* (= two or more):

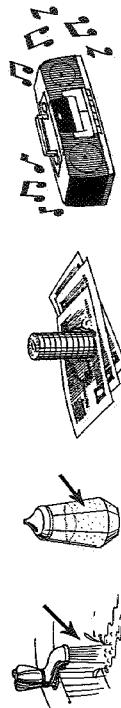
**singular:**   a **car**   my **car**   the **car** etc.  
**plural:**   **cars**   two **cars**   the **cars**   some **cars**   many **cars** etc.

- I've got a **car**.
- There aren't **many cars** in the car park.
- New **cars** are very expensive.

You *cannot* use the singular (car/house/key etc.) alone. You need **a/an** ( $\Rightarrow$  Unit 64):  
• We can't get in without **a key**. (*not* 'without key')

**B Uncountable nouns**

For example: **water**   **air**   **rice**   **salt**   **plastic**   **money**   **music**   **tennis**



You *cannot* say **one/two/three** (etc.) + these things: **one-water**   **two-musics**  
Uncountable nouns have only **one** form:  
**money**   **the money**   **my money**   **some money**   **much money** etc.

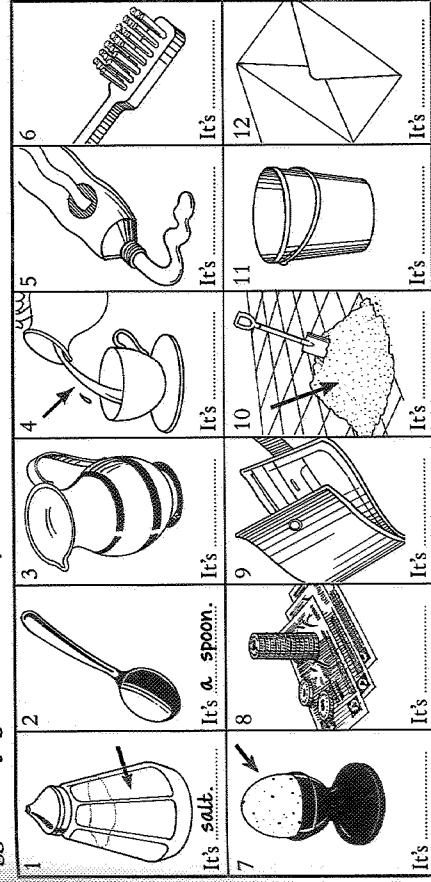
- I've got **some money**.
- There isn't **much money** in the box.
- Money isn't everything.

You *cannot* use **a/an** + *uncountable nouns*: **the money**   **the music**

But you can say a **piece** of ... / a **glass** of ... etc. + *uncountable noun*:

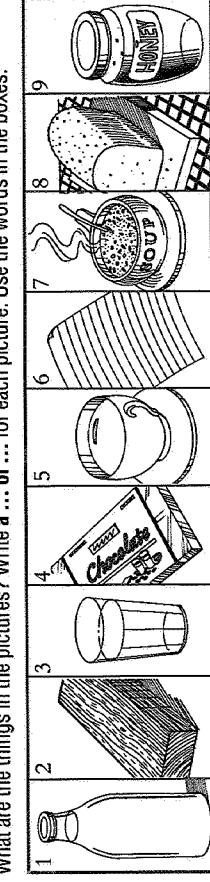
a <b>glass</b> of water	a <b>can</b> of oil	a <b>bar</b> of chocolate
a <b>bottle</b> of cheese	a <b>bottle</b> of milk	a <b>piece</b> of music
a <b>bowl</b> of rice	a <b>cup</b> of coffee	a <b>game</b> of tennis

**bucket**   **envelope**   **milk**   **salt**   **spoon**   **toothpaste**  
**egg**   **jug**   **money**   **sand**   **toothbrush**   **wallet**



Some of these sentences are right, but some of them need **a/an** where necessary.

- 1 I haven't got **watch**.   **a watch** ...
- 2 Do you like **cheese**?   **OK** ...
- 3 Ann never wears **hat**.
- 4 Are you looking for **job**?
- 5 Mary doesn't eat **meat**.
- 6 Mary eats **apple** every day.
- 7 I'm going to party tonight.
- 8 Music is wonderful **thing**.
- 9 Jamaica is **island**.
- 10 I don't need **key**.
- 11 Everybody needs **food**.
- 12 I've got good **idea**.
- 13 Can you drive **car**?
- 14 Do you want cup of **coffee**?
- 15 I don't like coffee without **milk**.
- 16 Don't go out without **umbrella**.



What are the things in the pictures? Write **a ... of ...** for each picture. Use the words in the boxes.

- 1 **bar**   **cup**   **loaf**  
**bottle**   **glass**   **piece**  
**bowl**   **jar**   **piece**
- 2 **bottle**   **of milk** ...
- 3 **bread**   **chocolate**   **honey**  
**cup**   **paper**   **soup**  
**glass**   **tea**   **water**  
**jar**   **wood**

# a car / **some** money (countable/uncountable 2)

## EXERCISES

UNIT  
**67**

What did you buy? Use the pictures to make sentences (I bought ...).

### A a/an and some

a/an + singular countable noun (car/apple/shoe etc.):

- I need a new car.
- Would you like an apple?

some + plural countable nouns (cars/apples/shoes etc.):

- I need some new shoes.
- Would you like some apples?

some + uncountable nouns (water/money/music etc.):

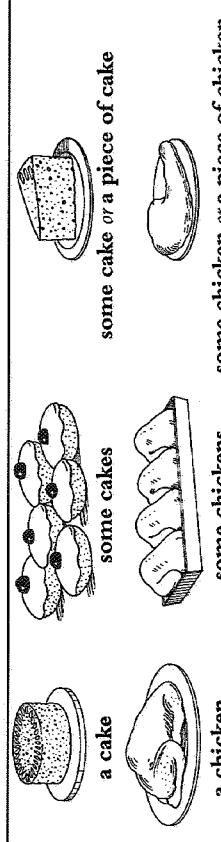
- I need some money.
- Would you like some cheese?
- (or) Would you like a piece of cheese?

Compare a and some:

- Linda bought a hat, some shoes and some perfume.
- I read a newspaper, wrote some letters and listened to some music.

### B

Many nouns are sometimes countable and sometimes uncountable. For example:



Compare a paper (= a newspaper) and some paper:

- I want something to read. I'm going to buy a paper.
- but • I want to make a list. I need some paper / a piece of paper. (not 'a paper')

Be careful with these nouns – they are usually uncountable:

- |                    |               |                |             |              |             |                  |             |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|
| <b>information</b> | <b>advice</b> | <b>weather</b> | <b>news</b> | <b>bread</b> | <b>hair</b> | <b>furniture</b> | <b>work</b> |
|--------------------|---------------|----------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|------------------|-------------|
- I need some information about hotels in London. (not 'informations')
  - It's nice weather today. (not 'a nice weather')
  - Listen! I've just had some good news. (not 'a good news')
  - I'm going to buy some bread. (not 'a bread')
  - Sue has got very long hair. (not 'hairs')
  - They've got some very nice furniture in their house. (not 'furnitures')
  - Do you like your job? 'Yes, but it's hard work.' (not 'a hard work')

We say a job (*but not 'a work'*)

- I've got a new job. (not 'a new work')



1 I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.

2 I bought ...

3 ...

4 ...

Write sentences with Would you like a ... ? or Would you like some ... ?



1 Would you like some cheese?

2 Would you like ...

3 Would ...

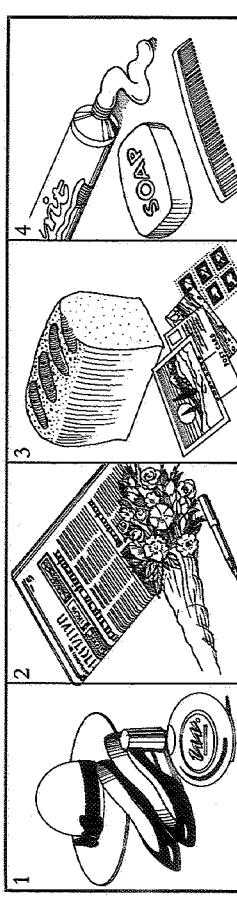
4 ...

Put in a/an or some.

- |  |       |
|--|-------|
| 1 I read <b>a</b> book and listened to <b>some</b> music.  | 4 ... |
| 2 I need <b>some</b> money. I want to buy <b>some</b> food.  | 5 ... |
| 3 We met <b>some</b> interesting people at the party.  | 6 ... |
| 4 I'm going to open <b>the</b> window to get <b>some</b> fresh air.                                  | 7 ... |
| 5 She didn't eat much for lunch – only <b>one</b> apple and <b>some</b> bread.                       | 8 ... |
| 6 We live in <b>the</b> big house. There's <b>some</b> nice garden with <b>some</b> beautiful trees. | 9 ... |

Which is right?

- |   |  |   |
|---|--|---|
| 1 I'm going to buy some new <b>shoe</b> /shoes.                                   | 2 Martin has got brown <b>eye</b> /eyes.                                   | 3 Paula has got short black <b>hair</b> /hairs.     |
| 4 The tourist guide gave us some <b>information</b> /informations about the town. | 5 We're going to buy some new chair/chairs.                                | 6 We're going to buy some new furniture/furnitures. |
| 7 It's difficult to get a work/job at the moment.                                 | 8 We had lovely weather / a lovely <b>weather</b> when we were on holiday. |   |



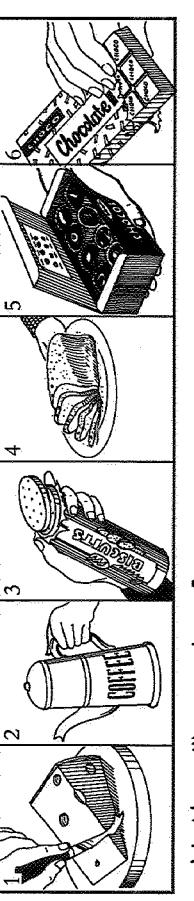
1 I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.

2 I bought ...

3 ...

4 ...

Write sentences with Would you like a ... ? or Would you like some ... ?



1 I bought some perfume, a hat and some shoes.

2 I bought ...

3 ...

4 ...

? ? ? ?

**a/an and 'the'****EXERCISES****8.1**

**a/an**

the

There is only **one** window here – the window.

There are **three** windows here.  
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- I've got **a car**.  
(there are many cars and I've got one)
- Can I ask **a question**?  
(there are many questions – can I ask one?)
- Is there **a hotel** near here?  
(there are many hotels – is there one near here?)
- Paris is **an interesting city**.  
(there are many interesting cities and Paris is one)
- Lisa is **a student**.  
(there are many students and Lisa is one)

**the**

the

There is only **one** window here – the window.

There are **three** windows here.  
a window = window 1 or 2 or 3

- I'm going to clean **the car** tomorrow.  
(= my car)
- Can you repeat **the question**, please?  
(= the question that you asked)
- We enjoyed **our holiday**. The hotel was very nice.  
(= our hotel)
- Paris is **the capital of France**.  
(there is only one capital of France)
- Lisa is **the youngest student** in her class.  
(there is only one youngest student in her class)

Compare **a** and **the**:

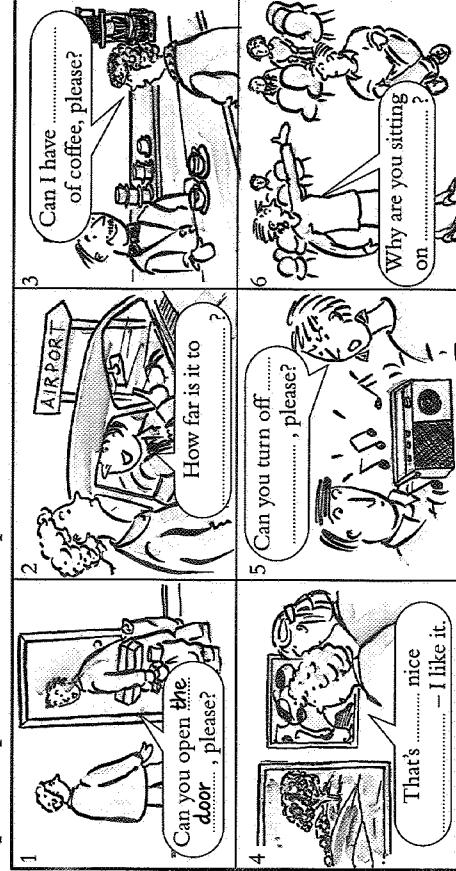
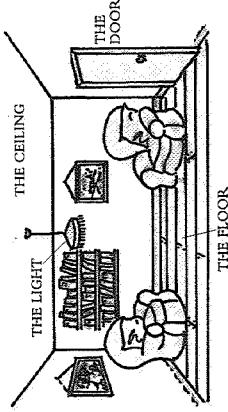
- I bought **a jacket** and a shirt. The jacket was cheap but **the shirt** was expensive.  
(= the jacket and the shirt that I bought)

- B** We say **the ...** when it is clear which thing or person we mean. For example:
- the door / the ceiling / the floor / the carpet / the light etc. (of a room)**  
**the roof / the garden / the kitchen / the bathroom etc. (of a house)**  
**the centre / the station / the airport / the town hall etc. (of a town)**

- 'Where's Tom?' 'In **the kitchen**'  
(= the kitchen in this house or flat)
- Turn off **the light** and close **the door**.  
(= the light and the door of the room)
- Do you live far from **the centre**?  
(= the centre of your town)
- I'd like to speak to **the manager**, please.  
(= the manager of this shop etc.)
- 1 Don't forget to **turn off light** when you go out.  
2 Enjoy your holiday and don't forget to send me postcard.  
3 What is name of this village?  
4 Canada is very big country.  
5 What is largest city in Canada?  
6 I like this room but I don't like colour of carpet.  
7 'Are you OK?' 'No, I've got headache.'  
8 We live in old house near station.  
9 What is name of director of film we saw last night?

**8.2**

Complete the sentences. Use **a** or **the** + one of these words:  
**airport cup deer floor picture radio**

**8.3**

**A** Put in **the** where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is already correct.

1. What is (name) of this street? **the name**
  2. What's on television tonight? **OK**
  3. Our apartment is on second floor.
  4. Would you like to go to moon?
  5. Which is best hotel in this town?
  6. What time is lunch?
  7. How far is it to city centre?
  8. We're going away at end of May.
  9. What are you doing next weekend?
  10. I didn't like her first time I met her.
  11. I'm going out after dinner.
  12. What's biggest city in world?
  13. My sister got married last month.
  14. My dictionary is on top shelf on right.
  15. We live in country about five miles from nearest village.
- B** Don't forget **the**:
- Do you live near the **city centre**? (*not* 'near city centre')
  - Excuse me, where is the **nearest bank**? (*not* 'where is nearest ...')
- C** the same ...
- We live in **the same street**. (*not* 'in same street')
  - 'Are these two books different?' 'No, they're **the same**' (*not* 'they're same')
- D** We say:
- the sun / the moon / the world / the sky / the sea / the country:**
- The sky is blue and the **sun** is shining.
  - Do you live in a town or in **the country**?
- the police / the fire brigade / the army (of a city, country etc.):**
- My brother is a soldier. He's in **the army**.
- the top / the end / the middle / the left etc.:**
- Write your name at the **top** of the page.
  - My house is at the **end** of this street.
  - The table is in the **middle** of the room.
  - Do you drive on the **right** or on **the left** in your country?
- (play) the piano / the guitar / the trumpet etc. (musical instruments):**
- Paula is learning to play **the piano**.
- the radio:**
- I listen to **the radio** a lot.

**E**

television:

**F**

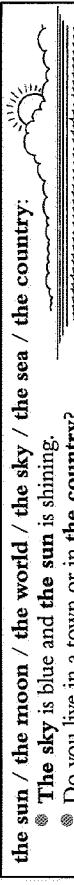
breakfast / lunch / dinner:

**G**

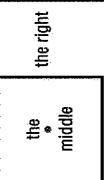
next / last + week/month/year/summer/Monday etc.:

**H**

the ...



the top



the bottom



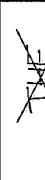
the piano



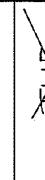
the trumpet



the radio



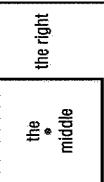
the guitar



the piano



the top



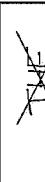
the bottom



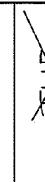
the piano



the trumpet



the radio



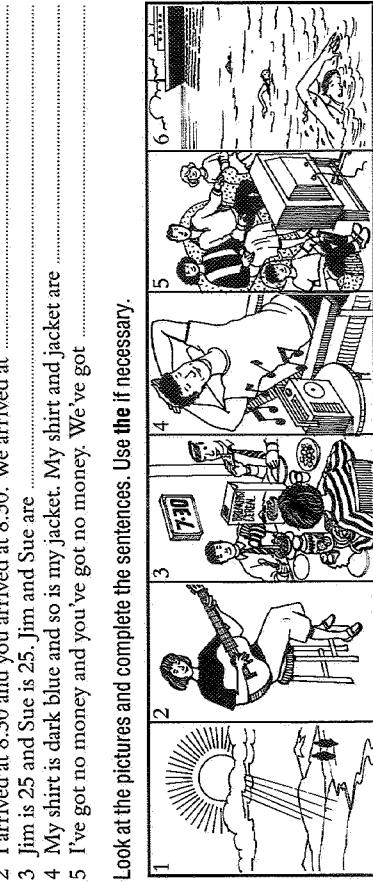
the guitar



the piano

**A**

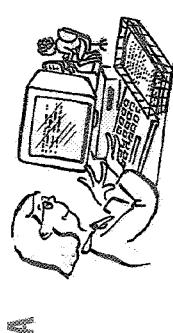
Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **the** if necessary.



**B**

Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.

- |         |        |        |       |        |      |     |            |
|---------|--------|--------|-------|--------|------|-----|------------|
| capital | dinner | police | lunch | middle | name | sky | television |
|---------|--------|--------|-------|--------|------|-----|------------|
1. The **sun** is shining.
  2. She's playing **guitar**.
  3. They're having **lunch**.
  4. He's listening to **radio**.
  5. They're watching **television**.
  6. They're swimming in **the sea**.
- C**
- 
- Complete these sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.
1. We had **dinner** at a restaurant last night.
  2. We stayed at a very nice hotel but I don't remember **the name**.
  3. **The sky** is very clear tonight. You can see all the stars.
  4. Did you see the film on **TV** last night?
  5. Somebody was trying to break into the shop so I called **the police**.
  6. Tokyo is **the capital** of Japan.
  7. 'What did you have for **lunch**?' 'A salad.'
  8. I woke up in **the morning**.

**go to work    go home    go to the cinema**

She's at work.

We say:

(go) **to work**, (be) **at work**, start work, finish work:

- Goodbye! I'm **going to work** now. (*not* 'to the work')
- I **finish work** at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) **to school**, (be) **at school**, start school, leave school etc.:What did you learn at school today? (*not* 'at the school')

Some children don't like school.

(go) **to university/college**, (be) **at university/college**:Helen wants to **go to university** when she leaves school.

What did you study at college?

(go) **to hospital**, (be) **in hospital**:

Jack was in an accident. He had to go to hospital.

(go) **to prison**, (be) **in prison**:Why is he **in prison**? What did he do?(go) **to church**, (be) **in/at church**:David usually **goes to church** on Sundays.(go) **to bed**, (be) **in bed**:I'm tired. I'm **going to bed**. (*not* 'to the bed')Where's Jill? 'She's **in bed**'.(go) **home**, (be) **at home** etc.:I'm tired. I'm **going home**. (*not* 'to home')Are you going out tonight or are you **staying at home**?

They're going to school.

He's in bed.

We say:

(go) **to work**, (be) **at work**, start work, finish work:

- Goodbye! I'm **going to work** now. (*not* 'to the work')
- I **finish work** at 5 o'clock every day.

(go) **to school**, (be) **at school**, start school, leave school etc.:What did you learn at school today? (*not* 'at the school')

Some children don't like school.

(go) **to university/college**, (be) **at university/college**:Helen wants to **go to university** when she leaves school.

What did you study at college?

(go) **to hospital**, (be) **in hospital**:

Jack was in an accident. He had to go to hospital.

(go) **to prison**, (be) **in prison**:Why is he **in prison**? What did he do?(go) **to church**, (be) **in/at church**:David usually **goes to church** on Sundays.(go) **to bed**, (be) **in bed**:I'm tired. I'm **going to bed**. (*not* 'to the bed')Where's Jill? 'She's **in bed**'.(go) **home**, (be) **at home** etc.:I'm tired. I'm **going home**. (*not* 'to home')Are you going out tonight or are you **staying at home**?

We say:

(go) **the cinema / the theatre / the bank / the post office**:

- I never go to **the theatre** but I often go to **the cinema**.
- Are you going to **the bank**? 'No, **the post office**'.

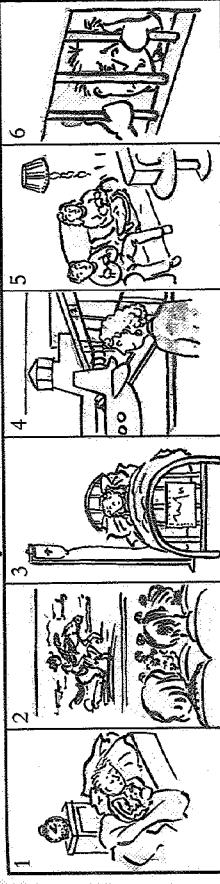
(go) **the doctor, the dentist**:

- You're not well. Why don't you go to **the doctor**?
- I'm going to **the dentist** tomorrow.

**also the station / the airport / the city centre** (⇒ Unit 68)

Would you like to go to university?

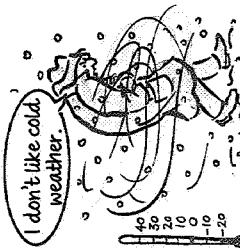
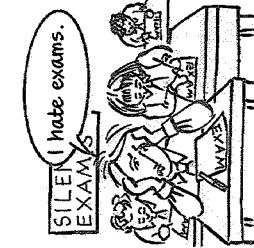
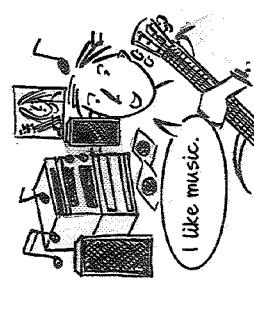
- 15 Would you like to go to theatre this evening?

**THE**(at) **home** ⇒ **unit 10****EXERCISES**Where are these people? Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.1 He's in **bed**.  
2 They're at **the station**.3 She's in **the shop**.  
4 She's at **the post office**.5 They're at **the church**.  
6 He's in **the bed**.Complete the sentences. Choose from the list. Use **the** if necessary.**bank**   **bed**   **church**   **home**   **post office**   **school**   **station**

- 1 I need some money. I must go to **the bank**.
- 2 David usually goes to **church** on Sundays.
- 3 In Britain, children go to **school** from the age of five.
- 4 There were a lot of people at **the station** waiting for the train.
- 5 I phoned you last night but you weren't at **the station**.
- 6 I'm going to **the station** now. Goodnight!
- 7 I'm going to **the station** to get some stamps.

Complete the sentences. Sometimes you need **the**.1 If you want to catch a plane, you **go to the airport**.2 If you want to see a film, you go to **the cinema**.3 If you are tired and you want to sleep, you **go to bed**.4 If you rob a bank and the police catch you, you **go to prison**.5 If you have a problem with your teeth, you **go to the dentist**.6 If you want to study after you leave school, you **go to the university/college**.7 If you are injured in an accident, you **go to the hospital**.Put in **the** where necessary. Write **OK** if the sentence is complete.

- 1 We went **(to cinema)** last night.
- 2 I finish work at 5 o'clock every day.
- 3 Mary wasn't feeling well this morning so she went to **doctor**.
- 4 I wasn't feeling well this morning so I stayed in **bed**.
- 5 Why is Angela always late for work?
- 6 'Where are the children?' 'They're at **school**'.
- 7 We've got no money in **bank**.
- 8 When I was younger, I went to church every Sunday.
- 9 What time do you usually get home from **work**?
- 10 Do you live far from city centre?
- 11 'Where shall we meet?' 'At **station**'.
- 12 Jim is ill. He's in **hospital**.
- 13 Margaret takes her children to school every day.
- 14 Would you like to go to university?
- 15 Would you like to go to theatre this evening?

**I like music I hate exams**

71.1

What do you think about these things?

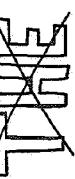
dogs	big cities	motor racing	TV quiz shows	exams	parties
museums	tea	basketball	computer games	loud music	hard work
1	I like ...	I don't like ...	I love ...	I hate ...	I don't mind ... (= it's OK)
2	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
3	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
4	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
5	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
6	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
7	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....
8	.....	.....	.....	.....	.....

Choose seven of these things and write sentences beginning:

- 1 I like ...
- 2 I don't like ...
- 3 I love ...
- 4 I hate ...
- 5 I don't mind ... (= it's OK)

Do not use **the** for general ideas:

- I like **music**, especially **classical music**.  
(not 'the music ... the classical music')
- We don't eat **meat** very often. (not 'the meat')
- Life is not possible without **water**. (not "The life ... the water")
- I hate **exams**. (not 'the exams')
- Do you know a shop that sells **foreign newspapers**?
- I'm not very good at writing **letters**.

Do not use **the** for games and sports:

- My favourite sports are **tennis** and **skiing**. (not 'the tennis ... the skiing')
- Do not use **the** for languages or academic subjects (**history/geography/physics/biology etc.**):
- Do you think **English** is difficult? (not 'the English')
- Tom's brother is studying **physics** and **chemistry**.

**B flowers or the flowers?**

Compare:

• <b>Flowers</b> are beautiful. (= flowers <i>in general</i> )	• This is a lovely garden. <b>The flowers</b> are beautiful. (= the flowers <i>in this garden</i> )
• I don't like <b>cold weather</b> . (= cold weather <i>in general</i> )	• 'The <b>weather</b> isn't very good today. (= the weather <i>today</i> )
• We don't eat <b>fish</b> very often. (= fish <i>in general</i> )	• We had a very nice meal last night. <b>The fish</b> was very good. (= the fish <i>we ate last night</i> )
• Are you interested in <b>history</b> ? (= history <i>in general</i> )	• Are you interested in <b>the history</b> of your country?

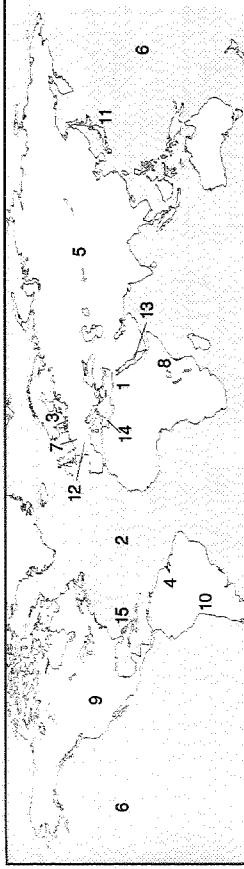
- 1 My favourite sport is **tennis** / **the tennis**. tennis is right
- 2 I like this hotel. Rooms / The rooms are very nice. The rooms is right
- 3 Everybody needs friends / **the friends**.
- 4 Jane doesn't go to parties / **the parties** very often.
- 5 I went shopping this morning. Shops / The shops were very busy.
- 6 'Where's **milk** / the milk?' 'It's in the fridge.'
- 7 I don't like **milk** / the milk. I never drink it.
- 8 'Do you do any sports?' 'Yes, I play **football** / the football.'
- 9 These days a lot of people use computers / **the computers**.
- 10 We went for a swim in the river. Water / The water was very cold.
- 11 I don't like swimming in **cold water** / the cold water.
- 12 Excuse me, can you pass **salt** / the salt, please?
- 13 I like this town. I like **people** / the people here.
- 14 Vegetables / **The vegetables** are good for you.
- 15 'Where are children / **the children**?' 'They're in the garden.'
- 16 I can't sing this song. I don't know **words** / the words.
- 17 I enjoy taking photographs / **the photographs**. It's my hobby.
- 18 I must show you **photographs** / the photographs that I took when I was on **holiday**.
- 19 English / **The English** is used a lot in **international business** / the international business.
- 20 Money / **The money** doesn't always bring **happiness** / the happiness.

# the ... (names of places)

## EXERCISES

2.1

These are geography questions. Choose your answer from the box. Sometimes you need **The**.



**A** Places (continents, countries, states, islands, towns etc.):

- France is a very large country. (*not* 'the France')
- Cairo is the capital of Egypt.
- THE • Corsica is an island in the Mediterranean.
- Peru is in South America.

But we use **the** in names with 'republic'/'states'/'kingdom':

**the Republic of Ireland (or the Irish Republic)**

**the United States of America (the USA)**

**the United Kingdom (the UK)**

**B** the -s (plural names)

We use **the** + plural names of countries/islands/mountains:

**THE** • the Netherlands   **the** Canary Islands   **the** Philippines   **the** Andes

**C** Seas, rivers etc.

We use **the** + names of oceans/seas/rivers/canals:

**THE** • the Atlantic (Ocean)   **the** Mediterranean (Sea)   **the** Amazon   **the** Black Sea  
**THE** • the (River) Nile   **the** Suez Canal

**D** Places in towns (streets, buildings etc.)

In general we do *not* use **the** + names of streets, squares etc.:

- Kevin lives in Newton Street.
- THE • Where is Highfield Road, please?
- Times Square is in New York.

We do *not* use **the** + name of place (or person) + airport/station/university/castle etc.:

**THE** • Kennedy Airport   **Victoria** Station   **Cambridge** University  
**THE** • Westminster Abbey   **Edinburgh** Castle   **London** Zoo

But usually we use **the** + names of hotels, restaurants, pubs, cinemas, theatres, museums:

**THE** • the Hilton (Hotel)   **the** Star of India (restaurant)  
**THE** • the Science Museum   **the** Odeon (cinema)  
**THE** • the National Theatre   **the** Tate Gallery (art gallery)

**E** the ... of ...

We use **the** + names with ... **of** ... :

**THE** • the Republic of Ireland   **the** Bank of England  
**THE** • the Great Wall of China   **the** Tower of London

We say **the north / the south / the east / the west / the middle (of ...)**:

- I've been to the north of Italy but not to the south.

1	Cairo	..... is the capital of Egypt.
2	<b>the</b> Atlantic	..... is between Africa and America.
3	.....	is a country in northern Europe.
4	.....	is a river in South America.
5	.....	is the largest continent in the world.
6	.....	is the largest ocean.
7	.....	is a country in East Africa.
8	.....	is between Canada and Mexico.
9	.....	are mountains in South America.
10	.....	is a river in Europe.
11	.....	is the capital of Japan.
12	.....	are mountains in central Europe.
13	.....	is between Saudi Arabia and Africa.
14	.....	is an island in the Mediterranean.
15	.....	are a group of islands near Florida.

2.2

Put in **the** where necessary. If the sentence is already correct, write **OK**.

1 Kevin lives in Newton Street. **OK**

2 We went to see a play **(at National Theatre)**. **at the National Theatre**.

3 Have you ever been to China? **.....**

4 Have you ever been to Philippines? **.....**

5 Have you ever been to south of France? **.....**

6 Can you tell me where Regal Cinema is? **.....**

7 Can you tell me where Merrion Street is? **.....**

8 Can you tell me where Museum of Modern Art is? **.....**

9 Europe is bigger than Australia. **.....**

10 Belgium is smaller than Netherlands. **.....**

11 Which river is longer – Mississippi or Nile? **.....**

12 Did you go to National Gallery when you were in London? **.....**

13 'Where did you stay?' 'At Park Hotel in Hudson Road.' **.....**

14 How far is it from Trafalgar Square to Victoria Station **(in London)**? **.....**

15 Rocky Mountains are in North America. **.....**

16 Texas is famous for oil and cowboys. **.....**

17 Panama Canal joins Atlantic Ocean and Pacific Ocean. **.....**

18 I hope to go to United States next year. **.....**

19 Mary comes from a small town in west of Ireland. **.....**

20 Alan studied physics at Manchester University. **.....**

## EXERCISES

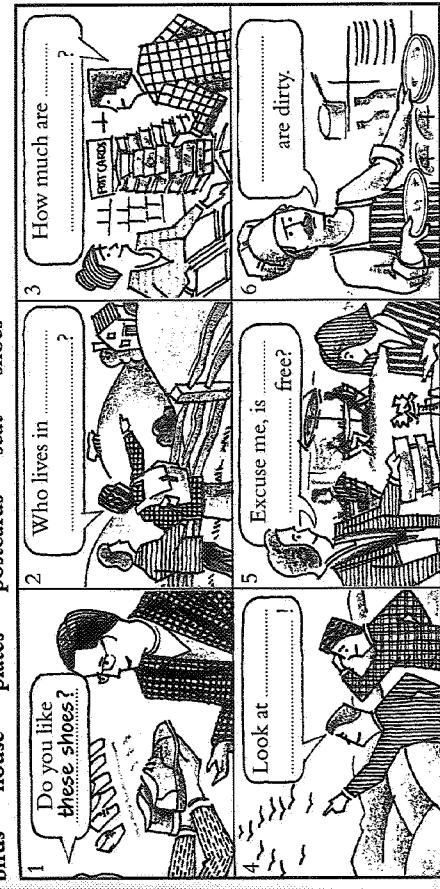
Complete the sentences. Use **this/that/these/those** + these words:

**A**

<b>this (singular)</b> Do you like this picture?	<b>these (plural)</b> These flowers are for you.
---	---

**B**

<b>this</b> 	<b>that picture</b> (= this picture here)
<b>these</b> 	<b>those flowers</b> (= these flowers here)



We use **this/that/those** with a noun (this picture / that girl etc.) or without a noun:

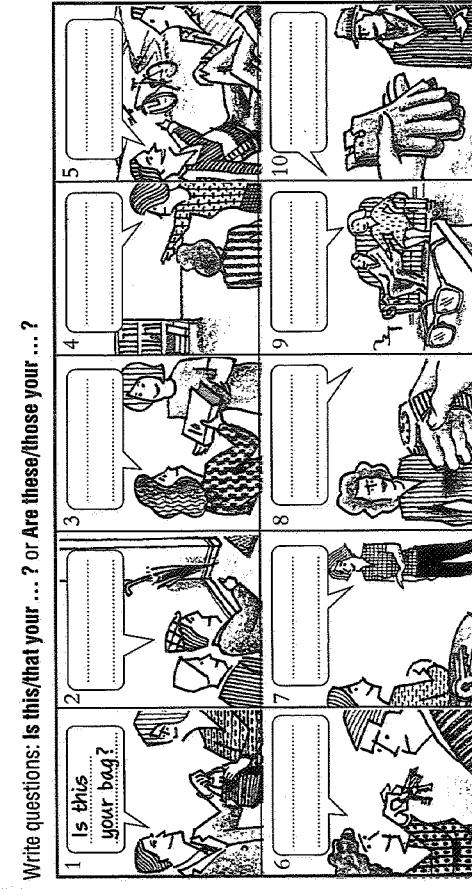
- This hotel is expensive but it's very nice.  
    with a noun
- Who's that girl? 'I don't know.'
- Do you like **these shoes**? I bought them last week.
- **Those apples** look nice. Can I have one?  
    without a noun
- This is a nice hotel but it's very expensive.
- Excuse me, is **this** your bag? 'Oh yes, thank you.'
- Who's that? (= Who is that person?)
- Which shoes do you like most? **These** or **those**?

**G** **that** = something that *has happened*:

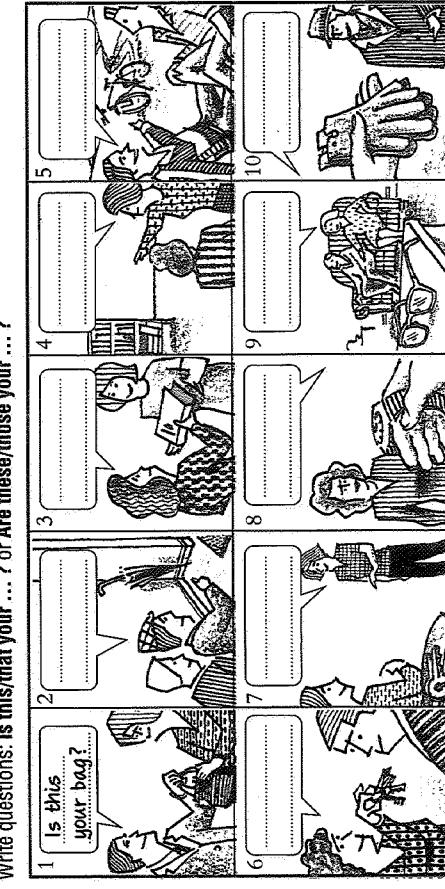
- I'm sorry I forgot to phone you.' 'That's all right.'
  - That was a really nice meal. Thank you very much.
- that** = what somebody *has just said*:
- You're a teacher, aren't you? 'Yes, that's right'
  - Martin has got a new job.' 'Has he? I didn't know that.'
  - I'm going on holiday next week.' 'Oh, **that's** nice.'

**D** We use **this is ...** and **is that ...?** on the telephone:

- Hello, this is David. (this = the speaker)
- Is that Sarah?
- We use **this is ...** to introduce people:
- A: Brian, this is Chris.  
B: Hello, Chris – pleased to meet you.  
C: Hello.



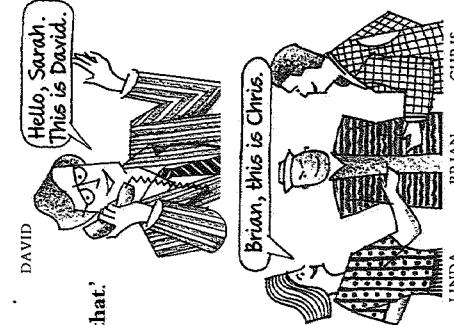
Write questions: **Is this/that your ...?** or **Are these/those your ...?**



Complete the sentences with **this is** or **that's** or **that**:

- 1 A: I'm sorry I'm late.  
B: **That's** all right.
- 2 A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.  
B: Oh, **that's** a pity. Why not?
- 3 (on the telephone)  
Sue: Hello, Ann. **This** is Sue.
- Ann: Oh, hello, Sue. How are you?
- 4 A: You're lazy.  
B: **That's** not true!
- 5 A: Jill plays the piano very well.  
B: Really? I didn't know **that**.
- 6 **Mark meets Paul's sister (Ann):**  
Paul: **Mark,** **that's** my sister, Ann.  
Mark: Hello, Ann.
- 7 A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.  
B: **OK.** Forget it!
- 8 A: You're a friend of John's, aren't you?  
B: Yes, **that's** right.

3.3



3.3

Complete the sentences with **this is** or **that's** or **that**:

- 1 A: I'm sorry I'm late.  
B: **That's** all right.
- 2 A: I can't come to the party tomorrow.  
B: Oh, **that's** a pity. Why not?
- 3 (on the telephone)  
Sue: Hello, Ann. **This** is Sue.
- Ann: Oh, hello, Sue. How are you?
- 4 A: You're lazy.  
B: **That's** not true!
- 5 A: Jill plays the piano very well.  
B: Really? I didn't know **that**.
- 6 **Mark meets Paul's sister (Ann):**  
Paul: **Mark,** **that's** my sister, Ann.  
Mark: Hello, Ann.
- 7 A: I'm sorry I was angry yesterday.  
B: **OK.** Forget it!
- 8 A: You're a friend of John's, aren't you?  
B: Yes, **that's** right.

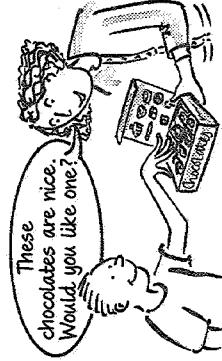
**EXERCISES**

**UNIT**

**74**

# one/ones

A one (= a ...)



These chocolates are nice.  
Would you like **one**?  
= Would you like **a chocolate**?

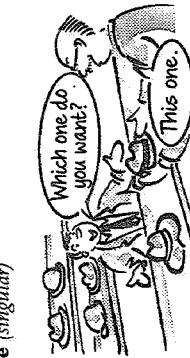
**one** = a/an ... (a chocolate / an apple etc.)

• I need a **pen**. Have you got **one**? (**one** = a pen)

• A: Is there a **bank** near here?  
B: Yes, there's **one** at the end of this street. (**one** = a bank)

one and ones

one (singular)



Which **one**? = Which **hat**?  
**one** = hat/cap/girl etc.

this one / that one

• Which car is yours? This **one** or  
that **one**? (= this car or that car)  
**the one** ...

A: Which hotel did you stay at?  
B: **The one** opposite the station.

the ... one

• I don't like the black **coat** but I like the  
**brown one**.  
• Don't buy that **camera**. Buy **the other**  
**one**.

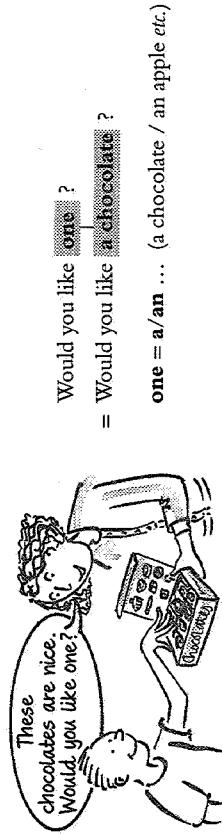
a/an ... one

• This **cup** is dirty. Can I have a **clean**  
**one**?  
• That biscuit was nice. I'm going to have  
**another one**.

some ... ones

• These **cups** are dirty. Can we have some  
**clean ones**?  
• My **shoes** are very old. I'm going to buy  
**some new ones**.

B



Which **ones**? = Which **flowers**?  
**ones** = flowers/cars/hats etc.

these/those (usually without 'ones'):

• Which flowers do you want? **These** or  
**those**? (not usually 'these ones/those ones')

**the ones** ...

• A: Which **keys** are yours?  
B: **The ones** on the table.

the ... ones

• I don't like the red **shoes** but I like the  
**green ones**.  
• Don't buy those **apples**. Buy **the other**  
**ones**.

some ... ones

• These **cups** are dirty. Can we have some  
**clean ones**?  
• My **shoes** are very old. I'm going to buy  
**some new ones**.

1 A: Can you lend me a pen?	B: I'm sorry, I <b>haven't got one</b> ....
2 A: Would you like to have a car?	B: No, I don't ....
3 A: Have you got a bicycle?	B: No, but ....
4 A: Can you lend me an umbrella?	B: I'm sorry but ....
5 A: Would you like a cup of coffee?	B: No, thank you.
6 A: Is there a chemist near here?	B: Yes,

Use the words in the list.

better big clean different new old

Complete the sentences. Use a/an ... one. Use the words in the list.

- 1 This cup is dirty. Can I have **a... clean one**?
- 2 I'm going to sell my car and buy **a... better**.
- 3 That's not a very good photograph but this is **a... better**.
- 4 I want today's newspaper. This is **a... cleaner**.
- 5 This box is too small. I need **a... bigger**.
- 6 Why do we always go to the same restaurant? Let's go to **a... different**.

Use the information in the box to complete these conversations. Use one/ones.

- 1 A: We stayed at a hotel.  
B: **Which one**?  
A: **The one** **opposite the station**....
- 2 A: Those shoes are nice.  
B: **Which ones**?  
A: **The ones** **near the hotel**....
- 3 A: That's a nice house.  
B: **With** **which ones**?  
A: **The ones** **near the station**....
- 4 A: I like that coat.  
B: **With** **which ones**?  
A: **The ones** **near the station**....

- 5 A: I like those pictures.  
B: **With** **which ones**?  
A: **The ones** **near the station**....
- 6 A: Are those your books?  
B: **With** **which ones**?  
A: **The ones** **near the station**....
- 7 A: Do you know that girl?  
B: **With** **which one**?  
A: **The one** **near the station**....
- 8 A: Those flowers are beautiful.  
B: **With** **which ones**?  
A: **The ones** **near the station**....
- 9 A: Who's that man?  
B: **With** **which one**?  
A: **The one** **near the station**....

**some and any****EXERCISES****B1** Put in **some** or **any**.

- 1 I bought **some** cheese but I didn't buy **any** bread.  
 2 I'm going to the post office. I need ..... stamps.  
 3 There aren't ..... shops in this part of town.  
 4 George and Alice haven't got ..... children.  
 5 Have you got ..... brothers or sisters?  
 6 There are ..... beautiful flowers in the garden.  
 7 Do you know ..... good hotels in London?  
 8 'Would you like ..... tea?' 'Yes, please.'  
 9 When we were on holiday, we visited ..... very interesting places.  
 10 Don't buy ..... rice. We don't need .....  
 11 I went out to buy ..... milk but they didn't have ..... in the shop.  
 12 I'm thirsty. Can I have ..... water, please?

**A**

**some**

**any**

*I haven't got any money.*

**Use some in negative sentences:**

- I'm **not** going to buy **any** clothes.
- There **isn't** **any** orange juice in the fridge.
- We **didn't** do **any** exercises.

**Use some in positive sentences:**

- I'm going to buy **some** clothes.
- There's **some** ice in the fridge.
- We did **some** exercises.

**B** **any** and **some** in questionsIn most questions (but not all) we use **any**:

- Is there **any** ice in the fridge?
- Has he got **any** friends?
- Do you need **any** help?

We normally use **some** (*not any*) when we offer things (**Would you like ... ?**):

- A: Would you like **some** coffee?  
B: Yes, please.
- A: Can I have **some** soup, please?  
B: Yes. Help yourself.
- A: Can you lend me **some** money?  
B: Sure. How much do you need?

**C** **some** and **any** without a noun

- I didn't take any photographs but Ann took **some**. (= some photographs)
- You can have **some** coffee but I don't want **any**. (= any coffee)
- I've just made **some** coffee. Would you like **some**? (= some coffee)
- 'Where's your luggage?' 'I haven't got **any**'. (= any luggage)
- 'Are there **any** biscuits?' 'Yes, there are **some** in the kitchen.' (= some biscuits)

**D** **something / somebody (or someone)**

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| • She said <b>something</b> .             | anything / anybody (or anyone)                |
| • I saw <b>somebody</b> (or someone).     | • She didn't say <b>anything</b> .            |
| • Would you like <b>something</b> to eat? | • I didn't see <b>anybody</b> (or anyone).    |
| • Quick! <b>Somebody</b> 's coming.       | • Are you doing <b>anything</b> this evening? |
|   | • Where's Ann? Has <b>anybody</b> seen her?   |

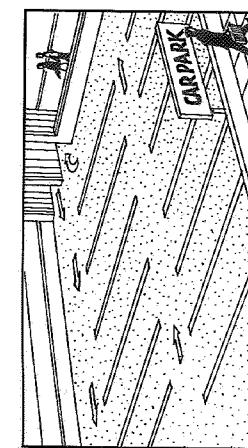
- 1 I want to wash my hair. Is there **any** shampoo? ....?  
 2 This evening I'm going to write .....?  
 3 I haven't got my camera, so I can't take .....?  
 4 Do you speak ..... foreign .....?  
 5 Yesterday evening I went to a restaurant with ..... of mine. ....?  
 6 Can I have ..... in my coffee, please?  
 7 The radio isn't working. There aren't ..... fresh ..... in it.  
 8 It's hot in this office. I'm going out for .....?  
 9 'Would you like ..... ?' 'No, thank you. I've had enough to eat.' ....?  
 10 I can do this job alone. I don't need ..... .

**B2** Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any** + one of these words:**B3** Complete the sentences. Use **some** or **any**.

- 1 Ann didn't take any photographs but I **took some**. (I/take)  
 2 'Where's your luggage?' 'I **haven't got any**'. (I/not/have)  
 3 'Do you need any money?' 'No, thank you.' ..... (I/have)  
 4 'Can you lend me some money?' 'I'm sorry but .....' (I/not/have)  
 5 The tomatoes in the shop didn't look very good, so ..... (I/not/buy)  
 6 There were some nice oranges in the shop, so ..... (I/buy)

**B4** Put in **something/somebody/anything/anybody**.

- 1 She said **something** to me but I didn't understand it.  
 2 'What's wrong?' 'There's ..... in my eye.'  
 3 Do you know ..... about politics?  
 4 I went to the shop but I didn't buy .....  
 5 ..... has broken the window. I don't know who.  
 6 There isn't ..... in the bag. It's empty.  
 7 I'm looking for my keys. Has ..... seen them?  
 8 Would you like ..... to drink?  
 9 I didn't eat ..... because I wasn't hungry.  
 10 This is a secret. Please don't tell .....

**not + any      no      none**

A  
The car park is empty.

There aren't any cars } in the car park.  
There are no cars  
How many cars are there in the car park?  
None.

**not (n't) + any**

- There aren't **any** cars in the car park.
- Sally and Steve haven't got **any** children.
- You can have **some** coffee but I don't want **any**.

**no ... = not + any or not + a:**

- There are **no** cars in the car park. (= there aren't **any** cars)
- We've got **no** coffee. (= we haven't got **any** coffee)
- It's a nice house but there's **no** garden. (= there isn't a garden)
- We use **no** ... especially after **have** (got) and **there is/are**.

**negative verb + any = positive verb + no:**

- They haven't got **any** children. or They've got **no** children.  
(not 'They haven't got **no** children')
- There isn't **any** sugar in your coffee. or There's **no** sugar in your coffee.

**B    no and none****Use no + noun (no money / no children etc.):**

- We've got **no** money.
- Everything was OK. There were **no** problems.

**Use none alone (without a noun):**

- How much money have you got?    **'None.'** (= no money)
- Were there any problems?    **'No, none.'** (= no problems)

**C    none and no-one****none = 0 (zero)**

- None is an answer for **How much?** / **How many?** (*things or people*):
- **'How much money have you got?    "None,"** (= no money)
- **'How many people did you meet?    "None."** (= no people)

**No-one = nobody (⇒ Unit 77)****No-one is an answer for **Who?**:**

- **'Who did you meet?    "No-one."** (or **Nobody**.)

**EXERCISES****76.1** Write these sentences again with **no**.

1. We haven't got any money.
2. There aren't any shops near here.
3. Carol hasn't got any free time.
4. There isn't a light in this room.

**76.2** Write these sentences again with **any**.

5. We've got no money.
6. There's no tea in the pot.
7. There are no buses today.
8. Tom has got no brothers or sisters.

**76.3** Put in **no** or **any**.

1. There's **no** sugar in your coffee.
  2. My brother is married but he hasn't got ..... children.
  3. Sue doesn't speak ..... foreign languages.
  4. I'm afraid there's ..... coffee. Would you like some tea?
  5. 'Look at those birds!' 'Birds? Where? I can't see ..... birds.'
  6. 'Do you know where Jane is?' 'No, I've got ..... idea.'
- Put in no, any or none.**
7. There aren't ..... pictures on the wall.
  8. The weather was cold but there was ..... wind.
  9. I wanted to buy some oranges but they didn't have ..... in the shop.
  10. Everything was correct. There were ..... mistakes.
  11. 'How much luggage have you got?' ..... ,
  12. 'How much luggage have you got?' 'I haven't got .....

**76.4** Complete the sentences. Use **any** or **no** + one of these words:

- |                    |                   |                  |                  |                |              |
|--------------------|-------------------|------------------|------------------|----------------|--------------|
| <b>answer</b>      | <b>difference</b> | <b>friends</b>   | <b>furniture</b> | <b>heating</b> | <b>money</b> |
| <b>photographs</b> | <b>film</b>       | <b>questions</b> |                  |                |              |
| <b>problems</b>    |                   |                  |                  |                |              |

1. Everything was OK. There were ..... problems.
2. They want to go on holiday but they've got .....
3. I'm not going to answer .....
4. He's always alone. He's got .....
5. There is ..... between these two machines. They're exactly the same.
6. There wasn't ..... in the room. It was completely empty.
7. I tried to phone you yesterday but there was ..... . There's ..... in the camera.
8. The house is cold because there isn't ..... . There's ..... in the camera.
9. I can't take .....

**76.5** Write short answers (one or two words) to these questions. Use **none** where necessary.

1. How many letters did you write yesterday?    **"Two."** OR **A lot.** OR **None.**
2. How many sisters have you got?    **"Two."** OR **A lot.** OR **None.**
3. How much coffee did you drink yesterday?    **"None."**
4. How many photographs have you taken today?    **"None."**
5. How many legs has a snake got?    **"None."**

# not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing

## EXERCISES

### UNIT 77

#### not + anybody/anyone/anything nobody/no-one/nothing

#### 77.1 Write these sentences again with nobody/no-one or nothing.

<b>A</b>	<b>not + anybody/anyone nobody/no-one (for people)</b>	<b>nothing (for things)</b>
77.2		
	• There isn't { <b>anybody</b> } in the room. anyone	• There isn't <b>anything</b> in the bag. (for things)

- There is { **nobody** } in the room.  
    no-one
- There is { **no-one** } in the room.  
    (-body and -one are the same)

- A: Who is in the room?  
B: Nobody. / No-one.  
anybody = anyone    nobody = no-one  
(-body and -one are the same)

- B not + anybody/anyone  
I don't know anybody (or anyone) here.  
**nobody** = not + anybody  
**no-one** = not + anyone  
I'm lonely, I've got nobody to talk to.  
(= I haven't got anybody)  
The house is empty. There is no-one in it.  
(= There isn't anyone in it.)

- not + anything**  
I can't remember anything.  
**nothing** = not + anything  
She said nothing.  
(= She didn't say anything.)  
There's nothing to eat.  
(= There isn't anything to eat.)

- C You can use **nobody/no-one/nothing** at the beginning of a sentence or alone (to answer a question):
- The house is empty. **Nobody** lives there.  
(not 'Anybody lives there')
  - Who did you speak to? '**No-one**'.
  - **Nothing**.  
(not 'Anything happened')  
(not 'What did you say?')

- D Remember:  
negative verb + **anybody/anyone/anything**  
positive verb + **nobody/no-one/nothing**
- He doesn't know anything. (not 'He doesn't know nothing')
  - Don't tell anybody. (not 'Don't tell nobody')
  - There is **nothing** to do in this town. (not 'There isn't nothing')

#### 77.2 Write these sentences again with anybody/anyone or anything.

<b>A</b>	<b>There's nothing in the bag...</b>
77.1	<b>1 There isn't anything in the bag.</b> 2 There isn't anybody in the office. 3 I haven't got anything to do. 4 There isn't anything on TV. 5 There wasn't anyone at home. 6 We didn't find anything.
77.2	<b>There is something in the bag...</b>
	1 There's something in the bag. 2 There was nobody on the bus. 3 I've got nothing to read. 4 I've got no-one to help me. 5 She heard nothing. 6 We've got nothing for dinner.

#### 77.3 Answer these questions with nobody/no-one or nothing.

- A: What's in the bag?  
B: Nothing.

- 1a What did you say? **Nothing**.  
1b I didn't say anything.  
2a Who saw you? **Nobody**.  
2b Nobody saw me.  
3a What do you want?  
3b I don't want anything.  
4a Who did you meet?  
4b I met nobody.

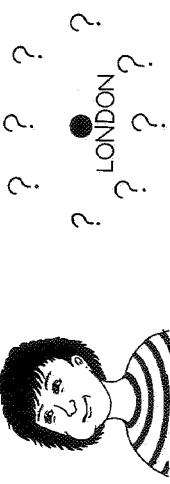
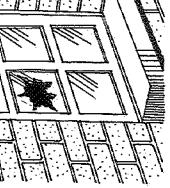
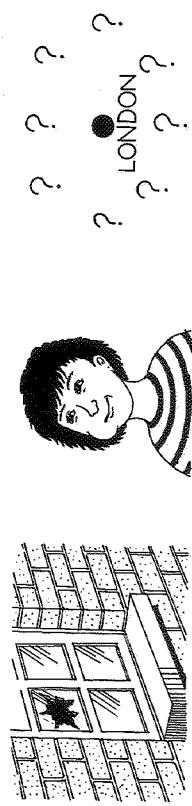
#### Now answer the same questions with full sentences.

- Use **nobody/no-one/nothing** or **anybody/anyone/anything**.

- 5a Who knows the answer?  
5b I don't know the answer.  
6a What did you buy?  
6b I bought nothing.  
7a What happened?  
7b I didn't happen anything.  
8a Who was late?  
8b I was late.

#### 77.4 Complete the sentences. Use **nobody/no-one/nothing/anybody/anyone/anything**.

- 1 That house is empty. **Nobody** lives there.  
2 Jack has a bad memory. He can't remember **anything**.  
3 Be quiet! Don't say **anything**.  
4 I didn't know about the meeting.  
5 'What did you have to eat?' **Nothing**. I wasn't hungry.  
6 I didn't eat **anything**. I wasn't hungry.  
7 Jenny was sitting alone. She wasn't with **anybody**.  
8 I'm afraid I can't help you. There's **nothing** I can do.  
9 I don't know **anything** about car engines.  
10 The museum is free. It doesn't cost **anything** to go in.  
11 I heard a knock on the door but when I opened it there was **nothing**.  
12 She spoke very fast. I didn't understand **anything**.  
13 'What are you doing this evening?' **Nothing**. Why?  
14 Helen has gone away. **Nobody** knows where she is. She didn't tell **anybody** where she was going.

**somebody/anything/nowhere etc.****EXERCISES**

**A**  
**Somebody (or someone)**  
has broken the window.

**somebody / someone = a person but we don't know who**

**people (-body or -one)**

She has got something in her mouth.

**somewhere = in / to a place but we don't know where**

Tom lives somewhere near London.

**something = a thing but we don't know what**

There is something (or someone) in the garden.

Is there anybody (or anyone) in the garden?

There isn't anybody (or anyone) in the garden.

There is nobody (or no-one) in the garden.

**anything**

She said something but I didn't understand her.

Are you doing anything at the weekend?

I was angry but I didn't say anything.

What did you say? 'Nothing.'

**nobody or no-one**

I don't like this town. There is nowhere to go.

There is nowhere to go in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

**B**  
**things (-thing)**

**something**

They live somewhere in the south of England.

Did you go anywhere interesting for your holidays?

I'm staying here. I'm not going anywhere.

I don't like this town. There is nowhere to go.

**anything**

Did you meet anybody interesting at the party?

We always go to the same place. Let's go somewhere different.

What's that letter? 'It's nothing important.'

**nothing**

**C**  
**places (-where)**

**nowhere**

Did you meet anybody interesting at the party?

We always go to the same place. Let's go somewhere different.

What's that letter? 'It's nothing important.'

**anywhere**

I'm hungry. I want something to eat. (= something that I can eat)

He hasn't got anybody to talk to. (= anybody that he can talk to)

There is nowhere to go in this town. (= nowhere where people can go)

**nowhere**

**D**  
**something/anybody etc. + adjective (big / cheap / interesting etc.)**

Would you like ... ?

Yes, please – a glass of orange juice.

1 We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go...

2 There isn't any food in the house. We haven't got ...

3 I'm bored. I've got ...

4 Why are you standing? 'Because there isn't ... ?

5 Would you like ... ?

6 All the hotels were full. There was ...

7 I want ... . I'm going to buy a magazine.

8 Children need ...

**Put in somebody (or someone) / something / somewhere.**

1 She said something...  
2 I've lost .....  
3 They went .....  
4 I'm going to phone .....

What did she say?  
What have you lost?  
Where did they go?  
Who are you going to phone?

**Put in nobody (or no-one) / nothing / nowhere.**

1a What did you say?  
1b I didn't say anything.  
2a Where are you going?  
2b I'm not .....  
3a What do you want?  
4a Who are you looking for?

Nothing.....  
.....  
.....  
.....  
.....

**Now answer the same questions with full sentences. Use not + anybody / anything / anywhere.**

1a I didn't say anything.  
1b I'm not .....  
2a I want to tell you.  
2b I want to .....  
3a I can't hear .....  
4a I'm waiting for .....  
5a I don't know .....  
6a Please listen carefully. There's .....  
7a Did ..... see the accident? 'No,  
8a We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat .....  
9a 'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know.  
10a Do you know ..... in London?' 'Yes, a few people,  
11a What's in that cupboard?' ' ..... It's empty.'  
12a I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them .....  
13a I don't like cold weather. I want to live ..... warm.  
14a Is there ..... interesting on television tonight?  
15a Have you ever met ..... famous?

**Put in somebody / anything / nowhere etc.**

1 It's dark. I can't see anything .....  
2 Tom lives somewhere near London. about computers?  
3 Do you know .....  
4 'Listen!' 'What? I can't hear .....  
5 'What are you doing here?' 'I'm waiting for .....  
6 Please listen carefully. There's .....  
7 'Did ..... see the accident?' 'No,  
8 We weren't hungry, so we didn't eat .....  
9 'What's going to happen?' 'I don't know.  
10 'Do you know ..... in London?' 'Yes, a few people,  
11 'What's in that cupboard?' ' ..... It's empty.'  
12 I'm looking for my glasses. I can't find them .....  
13 I don't like cold weather. I want to live ..... warm.  
14 Is there ..... interesting on television tonight?  
15 Have you ever met ..... famous?

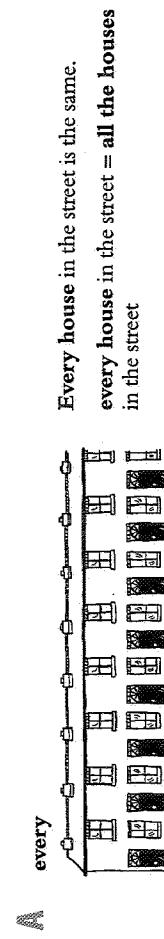
**Complete the sentences. Choose from Box A and Box B.**

<b>A</b>	something	anything	nothing	nowhere
	somewhere	anywhere	nowhere	

You can use these words *more than once*.

<b>B</b>	do	drink	eat	go
	play	read	sit	stay

- We don't go out very much because there's nowhere to go...
- There isn't any food in the house. We haven't got ...
- I'm bored. I've got ...
- Why are you standing? 'Because there isn't ... ?
- Would you like ... ?
- All the hotels were full. There was ...
- I want ... . I'm going to buy a magazine.
- Children need ...

**every and all****EXERCISES**1 Complete the sentences. Use **every** + one of these words:**day room student time word**We use **every** + singular noun (**every house / every country etc.**):

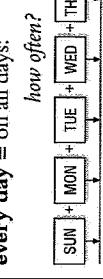
- Alice has been to **every country** in Europe.
- **Every summer** we have a holiday by the sea.
- She looks different **every time** I see her.

Use a **singular verb** after **every** ... :

- **Every house** in the street **is** the same. (*not* 'are the same')
- Every country **has** a national flag. (*not* 'have')

Compare **every** and **all**:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| • Every student in the class passed the exam. | • All the students in the class passed the exam. |
| • Every country has a national flag.          | • All countries <b>have</b> a national flag.     |

**B****every day and all day****every day** = on all days:

A: How often do you read a newspaper?

B: **Every day.**• Bill watches TV for about two hours **every evening**. (= on all evenings)also **every morning/night/summer etc.**

- The weather was bad yesterday. It rained **all day**.
- I was tired after work yesterday, so I watched TV **all evening**. (= the complete evening)
- **also all morning/night/summer etc.**

**C****everybody** (*or everyone*) / **everything** / **everywhere**

<b>everybody</b> ( <i>or everyone</i> )	• <b>Everybody</b> ( <i>or Everyone</i> ) needs friends. (= all people need friends)
<b>everything</b> ( <i>things</i> )	• Have you got <b>everything</b> you need? (= all the things you need)
<b>everywhere</b> ( <i>places</i> )	• I've lost my watch. I've looked <b>everywhere</b> for it.
	(= I've looked in all places)

Use a **singular verb** after **everybody/everyone/everything**:

- **Everybody** has problems. (*not* 'Everybody have')

2 Complete the sentences. Use **every** + one of these words:**day room student time word**

- 1 Every **student** in the class passed the exam.
- 2 My job is very boring. .... is the same.

- 3 Kate is a very good tennis player. When we play, she wins .... in the hotel has a private bathroom.

- 4 .... 'Did you understand what she said?' 'Most of it but not .... .

Complete the sentences with **every day or all day**.

- 1 Yesterday it rained **all day**.
- 2 I buy a newspaper ..... but sometimes I don't read it.

- 3 I'm not going out tomorrow. I'll be at home .... .

- 4 I usually drink about four cups of coffee .... .

- 5 Paula was ill yesterday, so she stayed in bed .... .

- 6 Last year we went to the seaside for a week and it rained .... .

- 7 I'm tired now because I've been working hard .... .

Put in **every** or **all**.

- 1 Bill watches TV for about two hours **every** evening.
- 2 Barbara gets up at 6.30 .... morning.
- 3 The weather was nice yesterday, so we sat in the garden .... afternoon.
- 4 I'm going away on Monday. I'll be away .... week.
- 5 'How often do you go skiing?' '..... year. Usually in March.'
- 6 A: Were you at home at 10 o'clock yesterday?
- B: Yes, I was at home .... morning. I went out after lunch.
- 7 My sister likes cars. She buys a new one .... year.
- 8 I saw Jack at the party. He wasn't very friendly. He didn't speak to me .... evening.
- 9 We go away on holiday for two or three weeks .... summer.

Put in **everybody/everything/everywhere**.

- 1 **Everybody** .... needs friends.
- 2 Chris knows .... about computers.
- 3 I like the people here. .... is very friendly.
- 4 This is a nice hotel. It's comfortable and .... is very clean.
- 5 Kevin never uses his car. He goes .... by motor-bike.
- 6 Let's have dinner. ....
- 7 Sue's house is full of books. There are books .... you say is true.
- 8 You are right. ....

3

Put in a verb (one word).

- 1 Everybody .... has problems.
- 2 Are you ready yet? Everybody .... gone out.
- 3 The house is empty. Everyone .... him.
- 4 George is very popular. Everybody .... him.
- 5 This town is completely different. Everything .... changed.
- 6 I arrived home very late. I came in quietly because everyone .... asleep.
- 7 Everybody .... mistakes!

Complete the sentences. Use the word in brackets (**some/most etc.**). Sometimes you need **of (some of / most of etc.)**.

A Compare:

children / money / books etc. (in general):	<b>the</b> children / <b>the</b> money / <b>these</b> books etc.:
• Children like playing. (= children in general)	• Where are <b>the</b> children? (= our children)
• Money isn't everything. (= money in general)	• I want to buy a car but I haven't got <b>the</b> money. (= the money for a car)
• I enjoy reading <b>books</b> .	• Have you read <b>these books</b> ?
• Everybody needs friends.	• I often go out with <b>my friends</b> .

B **most / most of ... , some / some of ... etc.**

**most / some etc. + noun:**

all	most	some
most	most	most
some	any	any
any	none	no



all

most

some

- Most children like playing. (= children in general)
- I don't want **any** **money**.
- Some books are better than others.
- He's got **no friends**.
- All cities have the same problems. (= cities in general)

Do not use **of** in these sentences:

- **Most people** drive too fast. (*not* 'Most of people')
- **Some birds** can't fly. (*not* 'Some of birds')

**most / some of etc. + the / this / my ... etc.**

all	(of)	the ...
most	some	this / that ...
any	any	these / those ...
none	none	my / your ... etc.



any

no / none / not + any

- Most of the children at this school are under 11 years old.
- I don't want **any of** this **money**.
- Some of these books are very old.
- None of my friends live near me.

We say **all the ... / all my ... etc.** (usually without **of**):

- **All the students** in our class passed the exam.
- Silvia has lived in London **all her life**.

C **all of it / most of them / none of us etc.**

all	it
most	them
some	us
any	you
none	

- You can have **some of this cake** but not **all of it**.
- A: Do you know those people?  
B: **Most of them**, but not **all of them**.
- **Some of us** are going out tonight. Why don't you come with us?
- I've got a lot of books but I haven't read **any of them**.
- How many of these books have you read? '**None of them**'

1 **Most** ..... children like playing. (most)

2 **Some of** .... this money is yours. (some)

3 ..... people never stop talking. (some)

4 ..... the shops in the city centre close at 6.30. (most)

5 You can change your money in ..... banks. (most)

6 I don't like ..... the pictures in the living room. (any)

7 He's lost ..... his money. (all)

8 ..... my friends are married. (none)

9 Do you know ..... the people in this photograph? (any)

10 ..... birds can fly. (most)

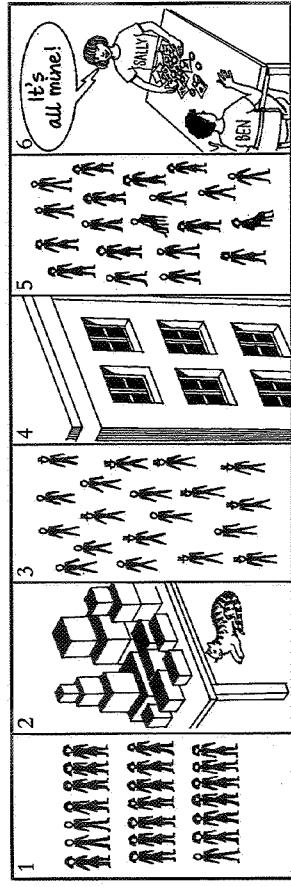
11 I enjoyed ..... the film but I didn't like the ending. (most)

12 ..... sports are very dangerous. (some)

13 We can't find anywhere to stay ..... the hotels are full. (all)

14 You must have ..... this cheese. It's delicious. (some)

15 The weather was bad when we were on holiday. It rained ..... the time. (most)



D 1 Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **all / most / some / none + of them / of it**.

Most of them: .....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

- 1 How many of the people are women?
- 2 How many of the boxes are on the table?
- 3 How many of the men are wearing hats?
- 4 How many of the windows are open?
- 5 How many of the people are standing?
- 6 How much of the money is Ben's?

E Flight or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong. Write **OK** if the sentence is correct.

1 **Most of children** like playing. **Most children** .....

2 All the students failed the exam. **OK** .....

3 Some of people work too hard. .....

4 Some of questions in the exam were very easy.

5 I haven't seen any of those people before.

6 All of insects have six legs.

7 Have you read all these books?

8 Most of students in our class are very nice.

9 Most of my friends are going to the party.

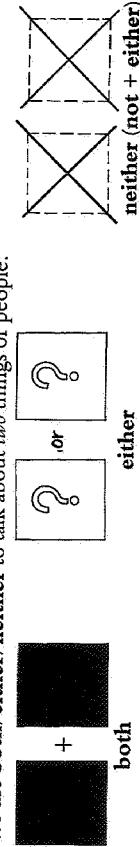
10 I'm very tired this morning – I was awake most of night. .....

**both    either    neither**

**EXERCISES**

Put in **both/either/neither**. Use of where necessary.

- 1 Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked ..... cities very much.
- 2 There were two pictures on the wall. I didn't like **either of** them.
- 3 It was a good football match. .... team played well.
- 4 It wasn't a good football match. .... team played well.
- 5 'Is your friend English or American?' ' ..... . She's Australian.'
- 6 We went away for two days but the weather wasn't good. It rained on ..... days.
- 7 A: I bought two newspapers. Which one do you want?  
B: ..... . It doesn't matter which one.
- 8 I invited Diana and Mike to the party but ..... them came.
- 9 'Do you go to work by car or by bus?' ' ..... . I always walk.'
- 10 'Which jacket do you prefer, this one or that one?' 'I don't like ..... them.'
- 11 'Do you work or are you a student?' ' ..... . I've got a job and I study too.'
- 12 Paula and I didn't know the time because ..... us had a watch.
- 13 Ann has got two sisters and a brother. ..... sisters are married.
- 14 Ann has got two sisters and a brother. I've met her brother but I haven't met ..... her sisters.



• Rosemary has two children. **Both** = the two children)

• Would you like tea or coffee? You can have **either**. (= tea or coffee)

• Do you want to go to the cinema or the theatre?

B: **Neither**. I want to stay at home. (**Neither** = *not* the cinema or the theatre)

Compare **either and neither**:

- 'Would you like tea or coffee?' { 'Either. I don't mind.' (= tea or coffee)  
'I don't want **either**'. (*not* 'I don't want neither')  
'Neither.' (= *not* tea or coffee)

**B** **both/either/neither + noun**

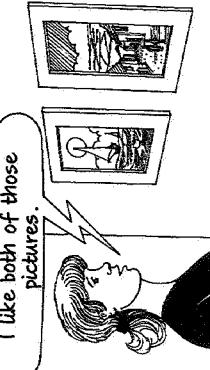
<b>both</b> + plural:	<b>both windows/books/children etc.</b>	
<b>either</b> + singular:	<b>either</b>	<b>neither</b>
<b>neither</b>	<b>window/book/child etc.</b>	

• Last year I went to Paris and Rome. I liked **both** cities very much.

• First I worked in an office, and later in a shop. **Neither** job was very interesting.

• There are two ways from here to the station. You can go **either way**.

**C** **both of ... / either of ... / neither of ...**



- Neither of my parents is English.  
• I haven't read either of these books.

You can say **both (of) the ... / both (of) those ... / both (of) my ... etc. (with or without of)**:

• I like **both of those pictures**. or **Both of those pictures**.

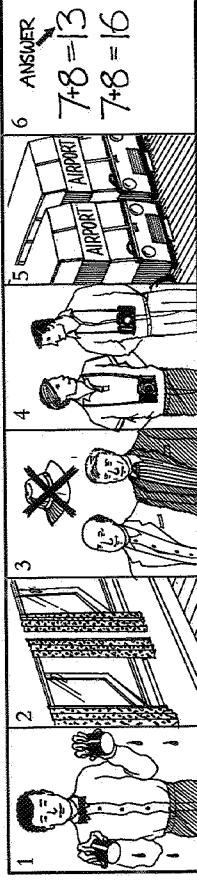
• **Both of Ann's sisters** are married. or **Both Ann's sisters** are married.

**D** **both of them / neither of us etc.**

<b>both</b>	<b>them</b>	• Ann has got two sisters. <b>Both of them</b> are married.
<b>either</b>	<b>us</b>	• Tom and I didn't eat anything. <b>Neither of us</b> was hungry.
<b>neither</b>	<b>you</b>	• Who are those two people? I don't know <b>either of them</b> .

61.1

Complete the sentences for the pictures. Use **Both ... and Neither ...**



- 1 **Both cups are** empty.

- 2 ..... are open.

- 3 ..... wearing a hat. 4 ..... to the airport.

- 5 ..... cameras. 6 ..... right.

61.2 A man and a woman answered some questions. Their answers were the same. Write sentences with **Both/Neither of them ...**

1	No
2	Yes
3	No
4	No
5	Yes
6	Yes
7	No
8	Yes
9	No

- 1 Are you married?

- 2 How old are you?

- 3 Are you a student?

- 4 Have you got a car?

- 5 Where do you live?

- 6 Do you like cooking?

- 7 Can you play the piano?

- 8 Do you read newspapers?

- 9 Are you interested in sport?

- No

- Yes

- No

- Yes

- No

- Yes

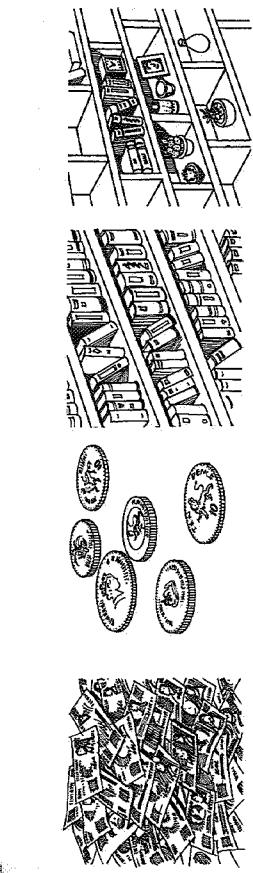
- No

- Yes

- No

# a lot      much      many

## EXERCISES



2.1

Put in **much** or **many**.

- 1 Did you buy **much** food?  
 2 There aren't **many** hotels in this town.  
 3 We haven't got **much** petrol.  
 4 Were there **many** people on the train?
- 5 Did **many** students fail the examination?  
 6 Paula hasn't got **much** money.  
 7 I wasn't very hungry. I didn't eat **much**.  
 8 I haven't seen George for **many** years.

Put in **How much** or **How many**.

- 9 **How many** people are coming to the party?  
 10 **How much** milk do you want in your coffee?  
 11 **How much** bread did you buy?  
 12 **How many** players are there in a football team?

Complete the sentences. Use **much** or **many** with one of these words:**books    countries    luggage    people    time    times**

- 1 I don't read very much. I haven't got **many** **books**.  
 2 Quick! We must hurry. We haven't got **much** **time**.  
 3 Do you travel a lot? Have you been to **many** **countries**?  
 4 Tina hasn't lived here very long, so she doesn't know **many** **people**.  
 5 'Have you got **much** **luggage**?' 'No, only this bag.'

We use **a lot of + all types of noun**:

- much food / much money etc.:**  
 • Did you buy **much** food?  
 • We haven't got **much** luggage.  
 • How **much** **money** do you want?  
 • A: Have you got **any** **money**?  
 B: I've got **some** but **not much**.
- many books / many people etc.:**  
 • Did you buy **many** **books**?  
 • We don't know **many** **people**.  
 • How **many** **photographs** did you take?  
 • A: Did you take **any** **photographs**?  
 B: I took **some** but **not many**.

We use **a lot of** + **all types of noun**:

- We bought **a lot of** **books**.  
 • Did they ask you a lot of questions?

Note that we say:

- There is a lot of **food / money / water ...** (**singular verb**)  
 • There are a lot of **trees / shop / people ...** (**plural verb**)  
 • A lot of **people speak English**. (**not 'speaks'**)

B We use **much** in questions and negative sentences, but **not usually** in positive sentences:

- Do you drink **much coffee / a lot of coffee**?  
 • I don't drink **much coffee / a lot of coffee**.  
 • I drink **a lot of coffee**. (**'not 'I drink much coffee.'**)  
 • Do you drink **much coffee**? 'Yes, **a lot**.' (**'not 'much'**)  
 but  
 • Have you got **many friends / a lot of friends**?  
 • We haven't got **many friends / a lot of friends**.  
 • We've got **many friends / a lot of friends**.

C We use **much** and **a lot** without a noun

- Diane spoke to me but she didn't say **much**.  
 • 'Do you watch TV **much**?' 'No, **not much**.' (= **not often**)  
 • We like films, so we go to the cinema **a lot**. (**'not 'much'** – See section B)  
 • I don't like him **very much**.

2.2 Complete the sentences. Use **much** or **many** with one of these words:**books****countries****luggage****people****time****times****traffic****books****fun****interesting things****traffic**

- 1 I like reading. I have **a lot of** **books**.  
 2 We enjoyed our visit to the museum. We saw **many** **interesting things**.  
 3 This road is very dangerous. There are **many** **accidents**.  
 4 We enjoyed our holiday. We had **much** **fun**.  
 5 It took me a long time to drive here. There was **much** **traffic**.

In some of these sentences **much** is not natural. Change the sentences or write **OK**.

- 1 Do you drink **much coffee**?  
 2 I drink **much tea**.  
 3 It was a cold winter. We had **much snow**.  
 4 There wasn't **much snow** last winter.  
 5 It costs **much** **money** to travel around the world.  
 6 We had a cheap holiday. It didn't cost **much**.  
 7 Do you know **much** about computers?  
 8 'Have you got any **luggage**?' 'Yes, **much**'.

2.3 Complete the sentences with **a lot of** + one of these:**books****fun****interesting things****traffic****books****fun****interesting things****traffic**

2.4

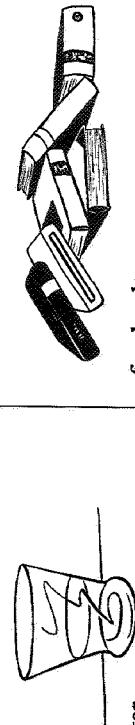
2.5

Write sentences about these people. Use **much** and **a lot**.

- 1 Jim loves films. (go to the cinema)  
 2 Linda thinks TV is boring. (watch TV)  
 3 Tina is a good tennis player. (play tennis)  
 4 Martin doesn't like driving. (use his car)  
 5 Paul spends most of the time at home. (go out)  
 6 Sue has been all over the world. (travel)

He goes to the cinema **a lot**.  
 She doesn't watch TV **much**.She ...  
 He ...

## (a) little (a) few

**A**

a little water

(a) little + uncountable noun:

(a) little water    (a) little money

(a) little time    (a) little soup

a few books

(a) few + plural noun:

(a) few books    (a) few questions

(a) few people    (a) few days

**B** a little = some but not much:

- ⦿ She didn't eat anything but she drank a little water.
- ⦿ I speak a little Spanish. (= some Spanish but not much)

A: Can you speak Spanish?  
B: A little.✗ **little** (*without a*) = nearly no ... or nearly nothing.

- ⦿ There was little food in the fridge. It was nearly empty.

You can say **very little**:

- ⦿ Dan is very thin because he eats very little. (= nearly nothing)

**C** little and a little:a little is a **positive** idea:

- ⦿ They have a little money, so they're not poor. (= they have some money)

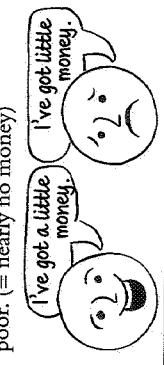
✗ **little** is a **negative** idea:

- ⦿ They have little money. They are very poor. (= nearly no money)

I've got a few friends.

I've got little money.

I've got few friends.

**E1** Answer the questions with a **little** or a **few**.

- 1 'Have you got any money?' 'Yes, a **little**.'
- 2 'Have you got any envelopes?' 'Yes, ...., please.'
- 3 'Do you want sugar in your coffee?' 'Yes, ...., please.'
- 4 'Did you take any photographs when you were on holiday?' 'Yes, .....'
- 5 'Does your friend speak English?' 'Yes, .....'
- 6 'Are there any factories in this town?' 'Yes, .....'

**E2** Put in a **little** or a **few** + one of these words:

air chairs days friends letters milk Russian times

- 1 Last night I wrote **a few letters** to my family and friends.
- 2 Can I have **a few** .... ago.
- 3 'When did Julia go away?' '....'
- 4 'Do you speak any foreign languages?' 'I can speak ....'
- 5 'Are you going out alone?' 'No, I'm going with ....'
- 6 'Have you ever been to Rome?' 'Yes, ....'
- 7 There wasn't much furniture in the room – just a table and .... fresh ....
- 8 I'm going out for a walk. I need .... fresh ....

**E3** Complete the sentences. Use **very little** or **very few** + one of these words:

coffee hotels mistakes people rain time work

- 1 Your English is very good. You make **very few mistakes**.
- 2 I drink .... I don't like it.
- 3 The weather here is very dry in summer. There is ....
- 4 It's difficult to find a place to stay in this town. There are ....
- 5 We must hurry. We've got .... go out.
- 6 The town is very quiet at night. ....
- 7 Some people in the office are very lazy. They do ....

**E4** Put in **little** / **a little** / **few** / **a few**.

- 1 There was **little** food in the fridge. It was nearly empty. .... minutes ago, time to think about it.
- 2 'When did Sarah go out?' .... traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
- 3 I can't decide now. I need ....
- 4 There was .... traffic, so we arrived earlier than we expected.
- 5 The bus service isn't very good at night – there are .... buses after 9 o'clock.
- 6 'Would you like some soup?' 'Yes, ...., please.'
- 7 I'd like to practise my English more but I have .... opportunity.

**E5** Right or wrong? Connect the sentences where necessary. Write OK if the sentence is correct. for **a few days**.

- 1 We're going away **(for a few days)** next week.
- 2 Everybody needs little luck.
- 3 I can't talk to you now – I've got few things to do.
- 4 I eat very little meat – I don't like it very much.
- 5 Excuse me, can I ask you few questions?
- 6 There were little people on the bus – it was nearly empty.

**old/nice/interesting etc. (adjectives)****EXERCISES**

**A** adjective + noun (nice day / blue eyes etc.)

Laura has got **brown** eyes.  
There's a very old bridge in this village.  
Do you like **Italian** food?  
I don't speak any **foreign** languages.  
There are some **beautiful** yellow flowers in the garden.

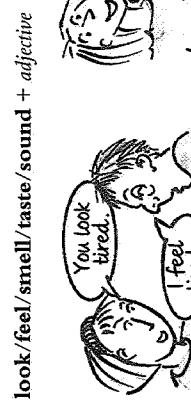
The adjective is *before* the noun:

- They live in a **modern** house. (*not* 'a house modern')
- Have you met any **famous** people? (*not* 'people famous')

The ending of an adjective is always the same:  
**a different place** different places (*not* 'differents')

**B** be (am/is/was etc.) + adjective

- The weather is nice today.
- These flowers are very **beautiful**.
- Are you **cold**? Shall I close the window?
- I'm **hungry**. Can I have something to eat?
- The film wasn't very **good**. It was **boring**.
- Please be quiet. I'm reading.



- You look tired.
- George told me about his new job. It sounds very interesting.
- Don't cook that meat. It doesn't smell good.

Compare:

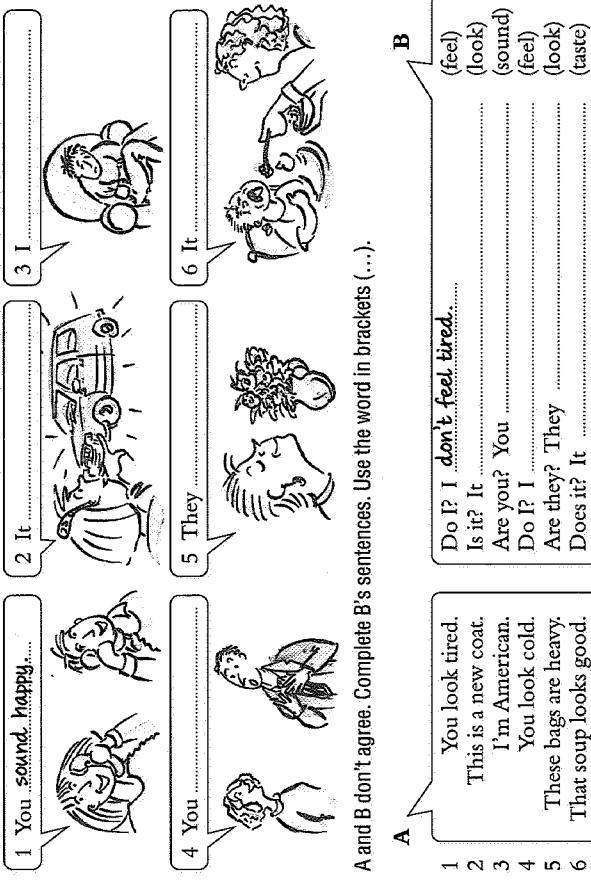
He	is	tired.
He feels looks	are look sound	American.

It	is	good.
It smells tastes	smells tastes	

**A** Write sentences for the pictures. Choose from Box A and Box B.

**A** feel(s)  
look(s)  
smell(s)

+ **B** happy  
horrible  
ill  
new  
nice  
surprised

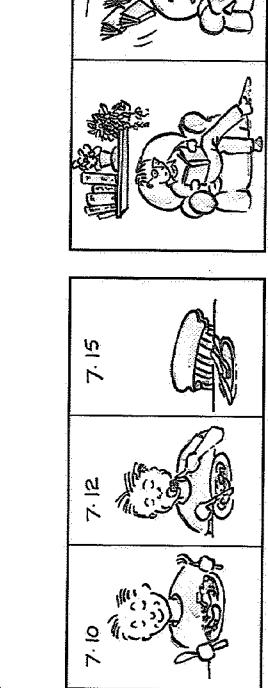


**A** and **B** don't agree. Complete **B**'s sentences. Use the word in brackets (...).

**B** Do I? I **don't** feel tired.  
Is it? It **...**  
Are you? You **...**  
Do I? I **...**  
Are they? They **...**  
Does it? It **...**

1	You look tired.
2	This is a new coat.
3	I'm American.
4	You look cold.
5	These bags are heavy.
6	That soup looks good.

get + adjective (get hungry/tired etc.) ⇒

**quickly/badly/suddenly etc. (adverbs)****EXERCISES**

**Quickly** and **suddenly** are adverbs.

**adjective + -ly → adverb:**

<b>adjective</b>	<b>quick</b>	<b>bad</b>	<b>sudden</b>	<b>careful</b>	<b>heavy</b>	<b>etc.</b>
<b>adverb</b>	<b>quickly</b>	<b>badly</b>	<b>suddenly</b>	<b>carefully</b>	<b>heavily</b>	

**Spelling** ( $\Rightarrow$  Appendix 5): **easy** → **easily**   **heavy** → **heavily**

**B** Adverbs tell you *how* something happens or *how* somebody does something:

- The train stopped **suddenly**.
- I **opened** the door **slowly**.
- Please **listen** **carefully**.
- I **understand** you **perfectly**.

Compare:

<b>adjective</b> ( $\Rightarrow$ Unit 84)	<b>adverb</b>
• Sue is <b>very quiet</b> .	• Sue <b>speaks very quietly</b> . ( <i>not</i> 'speaks very quiet')
• Be <b>careful!</b>	• Listen <b>carefully!</b> ( <i>not</i> 'listen careful!')
• It was a <b>bad game</b> .	• Our team <b>played badly</b> . ( <i>not</i> 'played bad!')
• I feel <b>nervous</b> . (= I am nervous)	• I <b>waited nervously</b> .



It's raining **heavily**.

**C**

**hard** **fast** **late** **early** These words are adjectives and adverbs:

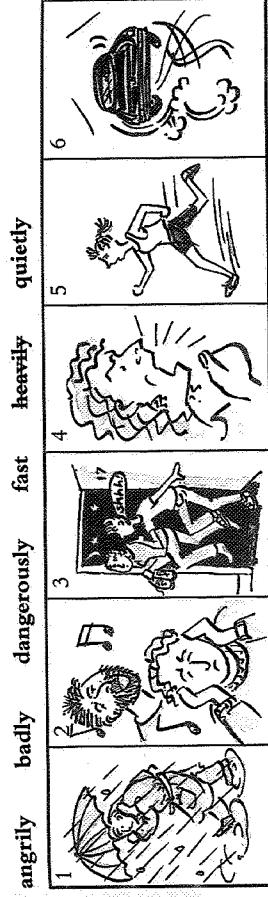
<b>Sue's job is very hard.</b>	<b>Sue works very hard.</b> ( <i>not</i> 'hardly')
• Ben is a <b>fast runner</b> .	• Ben can <b>run fast</b> .
• The bus was <b>late/early</b> .	• I <b>went to bed late/early</b> .

**D** **good** (*adjective*) → **well** (*adverb*)

<b>Your English is very good.</b>	<b>You speak English very well.</b> ( <i>not</i> 'very good')
• It was a <b>good game</b> .	• Our team <b>played well</b> .

- But **well** is also an *adjective* (*=* not ill, in good health):
- 'How are you?' 'I'm **very well**, thank you. And you?'
- 6 Did you have a ..... holiday? Was the weather ..... ?

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with one of these adverbs:



Suddenly the shelf fell down.

- 1 It's raining **heavily**.  
 2 He sings very .....  
 3 They came in .....  
 4 She shouted at me .....  
 5 She can run very .....  
 6 He was driving .....  
 Choose a verb (Box A) + an adverb (Box B) to complete the sentences.

**A** come know sleep win work

**B** **carefully** **carefully** **carefully** **carefully** **carefully** **well**

1 I'm going to tell you something very important, so please **listen carefully** ....

- 2 Ann! I need your help. .... At the end of the day they're always tired.
- 3 They ..... last night.
- 4 I'm tired this morning. I didn't ..... before you answer the question.
- 5 You're a much better tennis player than me. When we play, you always ..... before you answer the question.
- 6 ..... I've met Alice a few times but I don't ..... her very ..... things very .....  
 7 Our teacher isn't very good. Sometimes he doesn't ..... things very .....  
 8 Which is right?

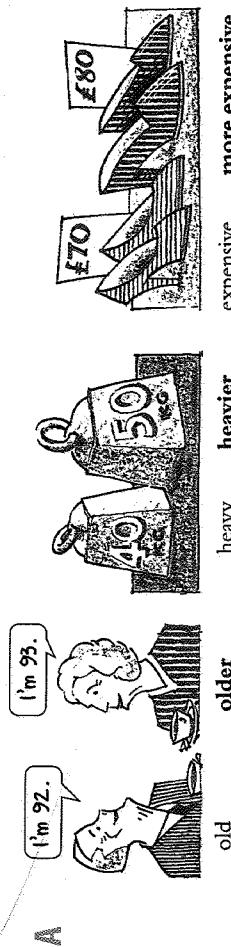
1 Don't eat so ..... quickly. It's not good for you. **quickly** is right

- 2 Why are you angry/angrily? I haven't done anything. **angrily** is right
- 3 Can you speak slow/slowly, please?
- 4 Come on, Dave! Why are you always so .....? **slow**/slowly?
- 5 Bill is a very careful/carefully driver.
- 6 Jane is studying hard/hardly for her examinations.
- 7 'Where's Diane?' 'She was here but she left sudden/suddenly.'
- 8 Please be quiet/quietly. I'm studying.
- 9 Some companies pay their workers very bad/badly.
- 10 Those oranges look nice/nicely. Can I have one?

**E5.4**

Put in **good** or **well**.

- 1 Your English is very **good**. You speak English very **well**.  
 2 Jackie did very ..... in her exams.  
 3 The party was very ..... I enjoyed it very much.  
 4 Martin has a difficult job but he does it .....  
 5 How are your parents? Are they .....?  
 6 Did you have a ..... holiday? Was the weather ..... ?

**old/older**    **expensive/more expensive**

**Older / heavier / more expensive** are comparative forms.  
The comparative is -er (older) or more ... (more expensive).

**B**    **(older/heavier etc.)**

Short words (1 syllable) → -er:

old → older	slow → slower	cheap → cheaper
nice → nicer	late → later	big → bigger
		hot → hotter
		thin → thinner
Words ending in -y → -ier:		
easy → easier	heavy → heavier	early → earlier

- Rome is **old** but Athens is **older**. (*not 'more old'*)
- Is it **cheaper** to go by car or by train? (*not 'more cheap'*)
- Helen wants a **bigger** car.
- This coat is OK but I think the other one is **nicer**.
- Don't write a letter. It's **easier** to phone. (*not 'more easy'*)

**far → further:**

- 'How far is it to the station? A mile?'    'No, it's **further**. About two miles.'

**more ...**

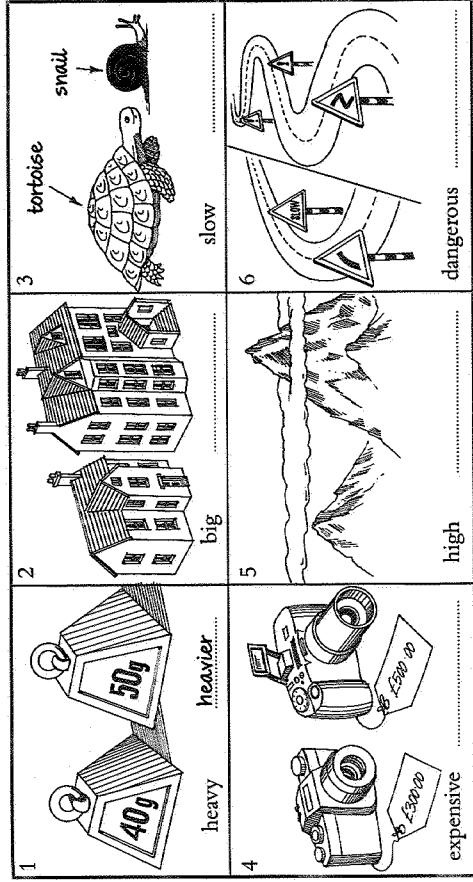
Long words (2/3/4 syllables) → <b>more</b> ... :	polite → <b>more polite</b>
careful → <b>more careful</b>	interesting → <b>more interesting</b>
expensive → <b>more expensive</b>	

- You must be **more careful**.
- I don't like my job. I want to do something **more interesting**.
- Is it **more expensive** to go by car or by train?

**D**    **good/well → better**    **bad → worse**

- The weather wasn't very **good** yesterday but it's **better** today.
- 'Do you feel **better** today?'    'No, I feel **worse**'
- Which is **worse** – a headache or a toothache?

Look at the pictures and write the comparative (**older** / **more interesting** etc.).



**E** Write the comparative.

- 1 old **older**...
- 2 strong **stronger**...
- 3 happy **happier**...
- 4 modern **more modern**...
- 5 important **more important**...

**F** Write the opposite.

- 1 younger **older**...
- 2 colder **warmer**...
- 3 cheaper **more expensive**...

**G** Complete the sentences. Use a comparative.

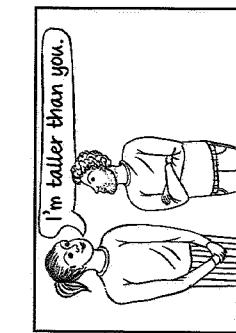
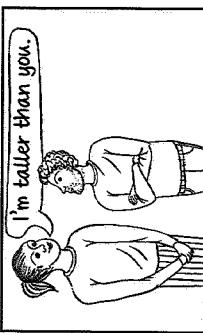
- 1 Helen's car isn't very big. She wants a **bigger** one.
- 2 My job isn't very interesting. I want to do something **more interesting**.
- 3 You're not very tall. Your brother is **taller**.
- 4 David doesn't work very hard. I work **more**.
- 5 My chair isn't very comfortable. Yours is **more comfortable**.
- 6 Your plan isn't very good. My plan is **better**.
- 7 These flowers aren't very nice. The blue ones are **nicer**.
- 8 My bag isn't very heavy. Your bag is **lighter**.
- 9 I'm not very interested in art. I'm **less interested**.
- 10 It isn't very warm today. It was **more** yesterday.
- 11 These tomatoes don't taste very good. The other ones tasted **sweeter**.
- 12 Britain isn't very big. France is **larger**.
- 13 London isn't very beautiful. Paris is **more beautiful**.
- 14 This knife isn't very sharp. Have you got a **sharper** one?
- 15 People today aren't very polite. In the past they were **more polite**.

**older than ...**

87.1

**EXERCISES**

Write sentences about Liz and Ben. Use than.

**A**

She's taller than him.

We use than after comparatives (older than ... / more expensive than ... etc.):

• Athens is older than Rome.

• Are oranges more expensive than bananas?

• It's easier to phone than to write a letter.

• How are you today? 'Not bad. Better than yesterday.'

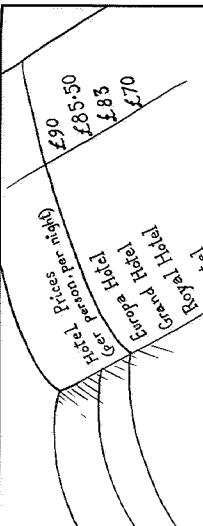
• The restaurant is more crowded than usual.

B We say: than me / than him / than her / than us / than them. You can say:

• I can run faster than him. or I can run faster than he can.

• You are a better singer than me, or You are a better singer than I am.

• I got up earlier than her. or I got up earlier than she did.



The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.

C more/less than ...

• A: How much did your shoes cost? £30?

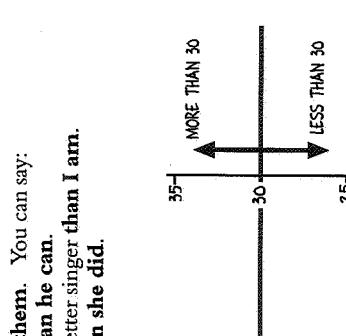
B: No, more than that. (= more than £30)

• The film was very short – less than an hour.

• They've got more money than they need.

• You go out more than me.

D a bit older / much older etc.



87.2

Complete the sentences. Use than.

- 1 Liz is older than Ben.  
2 Ben is a better swimmer than Liz.  
3 Liz is ..... Ben .....  
4 Liz starts ..... Ben.  
5 Ben .....  
6 Ben has got .....  
7 Liz is a ..... Ben .....  
8 Ben .....  
9 Ben .....  
10 Liz ..... Ben.  
11 Liz .....  
12 Ben .....

Complete the sentences. Use than.

- 1 He isn't very tall. You're taller than him. (OR ... than he is.)  
2 She isn't very old. You're .....  
3 I don't work very hard. You work .....  
4 He doesn't watch TV very much. You .....  
5 I'm not a very good cook. You .....  
6 We don't know many people. You .....  
7 They haven't got much money. You .....  
8 I can't run very fast. You can .....  
9 She hasn't been here very long. You .....  
10 They didn't get up very early. You .....  
11 He wasn't very surprised. You .....

87.3

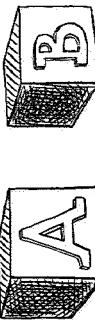
Complete the sentences with a bit or much + a comparative (older/better etc.).

- 1 Jill is 25. Gary is 24½.  
Jill is a bit older than Gary....  
2 Jack's mother is 54. His father is 69.  
Jack's mother .....  
3 My camera cost £100. Yours cost £96.  
My camera .....  
4 Yesterday I felt terrible. Today I feel OK.  
I feel .....  
5 Today the temperature is 12 degrees. Yesterday it was ten degrees.  
It's .....  
6 Ann is an excellent tennis player. I'm not very good.  
Ann .....



Box C is much bigger than Box D.

- Canada is much bigger than France.  
• Jill is a bit older than Gary – she's 25 and he's 24½.  
• The hotel was much more expensive than I expected.  
• You go out much more than me.



Box A is a bit bigger than Box B.

<b>a bit</b>	bigger	than ...
<b>older</b>	older	than ...
<b>better</b>	better	than ...
<b>much</b>	more difficult	than ...
	more expensive	than ...

## EXERCISES

UNIT  
88

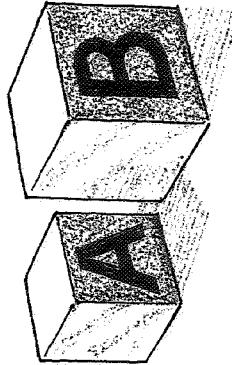
### not as ... as

**A**



She's old but she's **not as old as he is.**

Box A isn't **as big as Box B.**



Rome is **not as old as Athens.** (= Athens is **older**)

The Grand Hotel isn't **as expensive as the Europa.** (= the Europa is **more expensive**)

I don't play tennis **as often as you.** (= you play **more often**)

The weather is better than it was yesterday. It isn't **as cold as it was yesterday.**

**B** **not as much as ... / not as many as ...**

- I haven't got **as much money as you.** (= you've got **more money**)
- I don't know **as many people as you.** (= you know **more people**)
- I don't go out **as much as you.** (= you go out **more**)

**C** Compare **not as ... as** and **than:**

Rome is **not as old as Athens.**  
Athens is **older than Rome.** (*not 'older as Rome'*)

Tennis isn't **as popular as football.**  
Football is **more popular than tennis.**

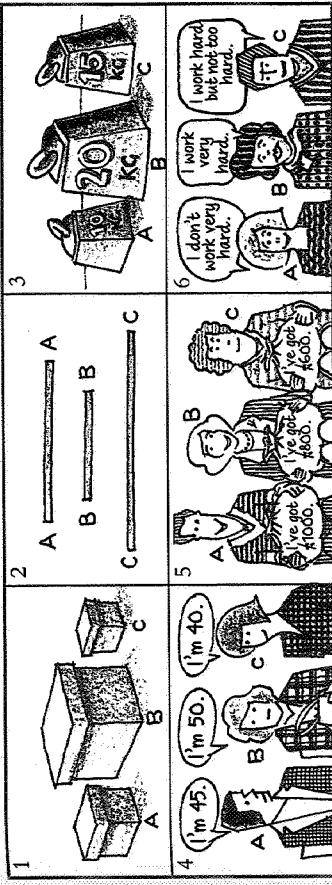
I don't go out **as much as you.**  
You go out **more than me.**

- D** We say: **as me / as him / as her etc.** You can say:
- She's not **as old as him.** or She's not as old **as he is.**
  - You don't work as hard **as me.** or You don't work as hard **as I do.**

**E** We say **the same as ... :**

- The weather today is the **same as** yesterday.
- My hair is the **same colour as** yours.
- I arrived at the **same time** as Tim.

Look at the pictures and write sentences about A, B and C.



1 A is **bigger than C but not as big as B.**

2 A is ..... B but not ..... C.

3 C is ..... A but ..... B.

4 A is ..... but ..... C.

5 B has got ..... A but ..... C.

6 C works ..... A but ..... B.

**Write sentences with as ... as ...**

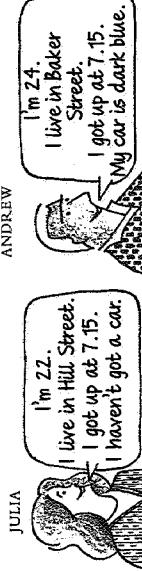
- 1 Athens is older than Rome.
- 2 My room is bigger than yours.
- 3 You got up earlier than me.
- 4 We played better than them.
- 5 I've been here longer than you.
- 6 She's more nervous than him.

**Put in as or than.**

- 1 Athens is older **than** Rome.
- 2 I don't watch TV as much **as** you.
- 3 You eat more **than** me.
- 4 I feel better **than** I felt yesterday.
- 5 I've been here longer **than** you.
- 6 He **is** more nervous than him.

**Use the information to complete the sentences about Julia, Andrew and Caroline. Use the same age / the same street etc.**

**ANDREW**



Andrew is **the same age as Caroline.**

- 1 (age) Julia lives ..... Andrew's .....
- 2 (street) Julia got up ..... Andrew's .....
- 3 (time) Julia got up ..... Andrew's .....
- 4 (colour)

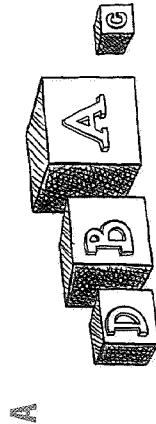
**CAROLINE**



Caroline is **the same age as Julia.**

- 1 (age) Julia lives ..... Andrew's .....
- 2 (street) Julia got up ..... Andrew's .....
- 3 (time) Julia got up ..... Andrew's .....
- 4 (colour)

# the oldest the most expensive



Box A is bigger than Box B.

Box A is bigger than all the other boxes.

HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON	
	(per person per night)
Europe Hotel	£95
Grand Hotel	£85; 50
Royal	£85
Astoria	£70
Palace	£65
Grosvenor	£60
Bennells	£58
Carlton	£55
Star	£50
Station	£55

The Europa Hotel is more expensive than the Grand.  
The Europa Hotel is more expensive than all the other hotels in the town.  
The Europa Hotel is the most expensive hotel in the town.

**Bigger / older / more expensive etc.** are comparative forms (⇒ Unit 86).  
**Biggest / oldest / most expensive etc.** are superlative forms.

The superlative form is -est (oldest) or most ... (most expensive):

**Short words (old/cheap/nice etc.) → the -est:**

old → the oldest      cheap → the cheapest      nice → the nicest  
but      good → the best      bad → the worst

Spelling (⇒ Appendix 5): big → the biggest      hot → the hottest

**Words ending in -y (easy/heavy etc.) → the -est:**

easy → the easiest      heavy → the heaviest      pretty → the prettiest

**Long words (careful/expensive/interesting etc.) → the most ... :**  
careful → the most careful      interesting → the most interesting

- C** We say: **the oldest ... / the most expensive ... etc.** (with **the**):  
 ☺ The church is very old. It's **the oldest** building in the town.  
 (= it is older than all the other buildings)  
 ☺ What is **the longest** river in the world?  
 ☺ Money is important but it isn't **the most important** thing in life.  
 ☺ Excuse me, where is **the nearest** bank?

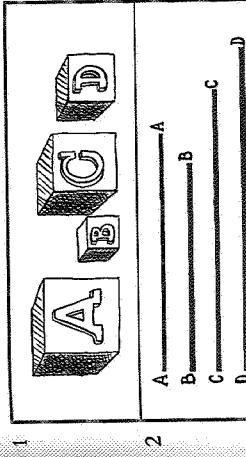
- D** You can use **the oldest / the best / the most expensive etc.** without a noun:  
 ☺ Ken is a good player but he isn't **the best** in the team.  
 (the **best** = the best player)

- superlative + I've ever ... / you've ever ... etc.  
 ☺ The film was very bad. I think it's **the worst** film I've ever seen.  
 ☺ What is **the most unusual** thing you've ever done?

- E** present perfect + ever ⇒ **older / more expensive** ⇒ **oldest / most expensive**

Write sentences with comparatives (older etc.) and superlatives (the oldest etc.).

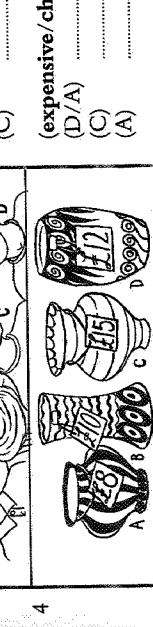
HOTEL PRICES IN KINTON	
	(per person per night)
Europe Hotel	£95
Grand Hotel	£85; 50
Royal	£85
Astoria	£70
Palace	£65
Grosvenor	£60
Bennells	£58
Carlton	£55
Star	£50
Station	£55



Box A is bigger than Box B.  
Box A is bigger than all the other boxes.

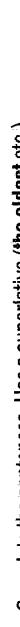
Box A is the biggest box.

The Europa Hotel is the most expensive hotel in the town.



Vase A is taller than vase B.  
Vase A is taller than all the other vases.

Vase A is the tallest vase.



Vase A is taller than vase B.

Vase A is taller than all the other vases.

Vase A is the tallest vase.



Vase A is taller than vase B.

Vase A is taller than all the other vases.

Vase A is the tallest vase.



Vase A is taller than vase B.

Vase A is taller than all the other vases.

Vase A is the tallest vase.

Complete the sentences. Use a superlative (the oldest etc.).

- 1 This building is very old. It's **the oldest building** in the town.  
 2 It was a very happy day. It was **the happiest day** of my life.  
 3 I've ever seen. **I've ever seen** in the country.  
 4 It's a very good film. It's **the best**. I've ever made.  
 5 She's a very popular singer. She's **the best**. I've ever met.  
 6 It's a very pretty village. It's **the prettiest** of the year.  
 7 It was a very cold day. It was **the coldest**. I've ever met.  
 8 He's a very boring person. He's **the most boring**.

Write sentences with a superlative (the longest etc.).

- |         |          |         |          |
|---------|----------|---------|----------|
| Sydney  | Brazil   | country | planet   |
| Everest | Jupiter  | city    | state    |
| Alaska  | the Nile | river   | mountain |
- the USA      the solar system  
 Africa      South America  
 the world      Australia

- 1 **Sydney** is **the largest city in Australia**.  
 2 **Everest** ...  
 3 ...  
 4 ...  
 5 ...  
 6 ...

## EXERCISES

### UNIT 90

### 90

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **enough** + one of these words:



**A**  
She can't buy a sandwich.  
She hasn't got **enough** money.

**B** **enough** + noun (enough money / enough people etc.)

• Is there **enough** sugar in your coffee? 'Yes, thank you.'

• We wanted to play football but we didn't have **enough** players.

• Why don't you buy a car? You've got **enough** money. (*not* 'money enough')

**enough without a noun:**

• I've got some money but not **enough** to buy a car.  
(= I need more money to buy a car)

• Would you like some more to eat? 'No, thanks. I've had **enough**'

• You're always at home. You don't go out **enough**.

**C** **adjective** + **enough** (good enough / tall enough etc.)

• Shall we sit outside? 'No, it isn't warm **enough**.' (*not* 'enough warm')

• Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?

• Don't buy that coat. It's nice but it isn't **long enough**. (= it's too short)

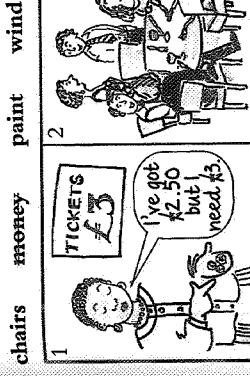
**D** Remember:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| <b>enough</b> + <b>noun</b> <b>but</b> <b>adjective</b> + <b>enough</b>                | <b>tall enough</b><br><b>good enough</b><br><b>old enough</b> |
| <b>enough</b> <b>money</b><br><b>enough</b> <b>time</b><br><b>enough</b> <b>people</b> |   |

We say:

<b>enough for</b> (somebody/something)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• This pullover isn't <b>big enough</b> for me.</li> <li>• I haven't got <b>enough</b> money <b>for</b> a car.</li> </ul>
<b>enough to (do something)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• I haven't got <b>enough</b> money <b>to buy</b> a car. (<i>not</i> 'for buy a car')</li> <li>• Is your English <b>good enough to have</b> a conversation? (<i>not</i> 'for have')</li> </ul>
<b>enough for (somebody/something) to (do something)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There aren't <b>enough chairs for everybody</b> to sit down.</li> </ul>

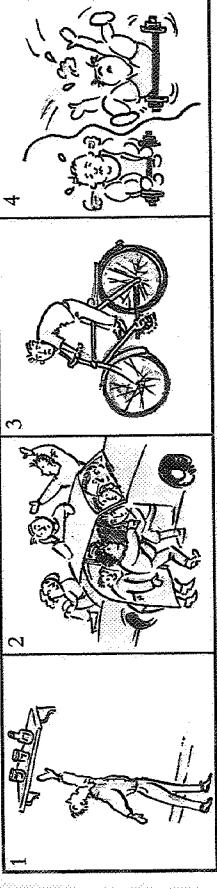
Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use one of these adjectives + **enough**:



- 1 She hasn't got **enough** money.  
2 There aren't **enough** chairs.

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use one of these adjectives + **enough**:

- big**   **long**   **strong**   **tall**



- 1 He .... **isn't tall enough**.  
2 The car ....

3 His legs aren't **strong enough**.  
4 He ....

to answer all the questions in the exam?

..... for a large family.

Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with one of these words:

- big**   **fruit**   **eat**   **framed**   **old**   **practise**   **sugar**   **time**   **tired**

- 1 Is there **enough** sugar in your coffee? 'Yes, thank you.'

2 Can you hear the radio? Is it **loud enough** for you?

3 He can leave school if he wants – he's **old enough**.

4 Did you have **enough** time?

5 This house isn't **big enough**.

6 Tina is very thin. She doesn't **eat enough**.

7 You don't eat **enough fruit**.

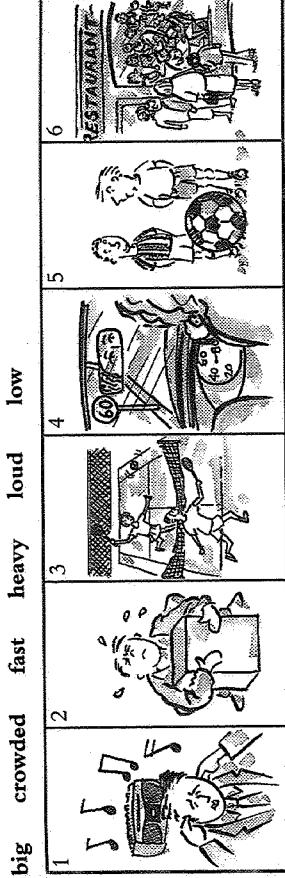
8 It's late but I don't want to go to bed now. I'm not **tired enough**.

9 Lisa isn't a very good tennis player because she doesn't **practise enough**.

Complete the sentences. Use **enough** with the words in brackets (...).

- |   |                |
|---|----------------|
| 1 We haven't got <b>enough</b> money <b>to buy</b> ... a car. | (money / buy)  |
| 2 This knife isn't ...  | (sharp / cut)  |
| 3 The water wasn't ...  | (warm / have)  |
| 4 Have we got ...   | (bread / make) |
| 5 We played well but not ...                                  | (well / win)   |
| 6 I don't have ...  | (time / read)  |

## EXERCISES

91.1 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **too** + one of these words:**B** **too ... for** (somebody/something)

- Can you turn the radio down?
- It's **too loud** (= louder than I want)
- I can't work. I'm **too tired**.
- I think you work **too hard**.

**C** **too much / too many** = more than you want, more than is good:

- I don't like the weather here. There is **too much rain**. (= more rain than is good)
- Let's go to another restaurant. There are **too many people** here.
- Emily studies all the time. I think she studies **too much**.
- Traffic is a problem in this town. There are **too many cars**.

**D** Compare **too** and **not enough**:

• The hat is <b>too big</b> for him.	• The hat isn't <b>big enough</b> for him. (= it's <b>too small</b> )
• The radio is <b>too loud</b> .	• The radio isn't <b>loud enough</b> . Can you turn it up, please?
• There's <b>too much sugar</b> in my coffee. (= more sugar than I want)	• There's <b>not enough sugar</b> in my coffee. (= I need more sugar)
• I don't feel very well. I ate <b>too much</b> .	• You're very thin. You <b>don't eat enough</b> .

We say:

<b>too ... for</b> (somebody/something)	• These shoes are <b>too big</b> for me. • It's a small house – <b>too small</b> for a large family.
<b>too ... to</b> (do something)	• I'm <b>too tired to go out</b> . ( <i>not 'for go out'</i> ) • It's <b>too cold to sit outside</b> .
<b>too ... for</b> (somebody/something) <b>to</b> (do something)	• She speaks <b>too fast</b> for me to understand.
	1 (I'm not going out / cold) 2 (I'm not going to bed / early) 3 (they're not getting married / young) 4 (nobody goes out at night / dangerous) 5 (don't phone Ann now / late) 6 (I didn't say anything / surprised)

91.2 Put in **too** / **too much** / **too many** / **enough**.

- 1 The radio is **too loud**.  
2 The box is .....  
3 The net is .....
- 4 She's driving .....  
5 The ball is .....  
6 The restaurant is .....

91.3 Complete the sentences. Use **too** or **enough** with the words in brackets (...).

- 1 You're always at home. You don't go out **enough**.  
2 I don't like the weather here. There's **too much** rain.  
3 I can't wait for them. I haven't got ..... time.  
4 There was nowhere to sit on the beach. There were ..... people.  
5 You're always tired. I think you work ..... hard.  
6 'Did you have ..... to eat?' 'Yes, thank you.'  
7 You drink ..... coffee. It's not good for you.  
8 You don't eat ..... vegetables. You should eat more.  
9 I don't like the weather here. It's ..... cold.  
10 Our team didn't play well. We made ..... mistakes.  
11 'Would you like some milk in your tea?' 'Yes, but not .....'.

91.4 Complete the sentences. Use **too** (+ adjective) + **to** (do something).

- 1 It's **too cold to go out**.  
It's .....  
2 They're .....  
It's .....  
3 It's .....  
I was .....

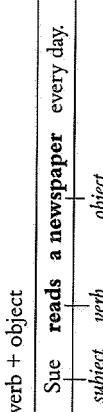
# EXERCISES

## He speaks English very well. (word order 1)

### UNIT 92

### UNIT 92

**A**



The **verb** (**reads**) and the **object** (**a newspaper**) are usually together. We say:

• Sue **reads a newspaper** every day.  
(*not 'Sue reads every day a newspaper.'*)



SUE (SUBJECT) A NEWSPAPER (OBJECT)

**verb + object**

**He speaks English** very well. (*not 'He speaks very well English.'*)

I like **Italian food** very much. (*not 'I like very much ...'*)

Did you **watch television** all evening? (*not 'Did you watch all evening ... ?'*)

We invited **a lot of people** to the party. (*not 'We invited to the party ...'*)

Paul often wears **a black hat**. (*not 'Paul wears often ...'*)

I **opened the door** quietly.

Why do you always make **the same mistake**?

I'm going to **borrow some money** from the bank.

**B**

place and time

We went **to a party last night**.

place time

**Place (to a party)** is usually before **time (last night)**. We say:

• We went **to a party last night**. (*not 'We went last night to a party.'*)

place

**(where?)**

Liz walks **to work** (*when? how long? how often?*)

every day. (*not '... every day to work*)

**this evening?** (*not '... this evening at home?*)

I usually go **to bed** (*not '... early to bed'*)

We arrived **at the airport** (*at 7 o'clock*)

They've lived **in the same house** for 20 years.

Jim's father has been **in hospital** since June.

Right or wrong? Correct the sentences that are wrong.

- 1 Did you watch **all evening television**? **Did you watch television all evening?**  
OK

- 2 Sue reads a newspaper **every day**.  
3 I like very much this picture.  
4 Tom started last week his new job.  
5 I want to speak English fluently.  
6 Jane bought for her friend a present.  
7 I drink every day three cups of coffee.  
8 Don't eat your dinner too quickly!  
9 I borrowed from my brother fifty pounds.

Put the words in order.

- 1 (the door / opened / I / quietly)  
2 (two letters / I / this morning / wrote)  
3 (passed / Paul / easily / the exam)  
4 (Ann / very well / French / doesn't speak)  
5 (a lot of work / did / I / yesterday)  
6 (London / do you know / well?)  
7 (we / enjoyed / very much / the party)  
8 (the problem / carefully / I / explained)  
9 (we / at the airport / some friends / met)  
10 (did you buy / in England / that jacket?)  
11 (every day / do / the same thing / we)  
12 (football / don't like / very much / I)

Put the words in order.

- 1 (to work / every day / walks / Liz)  
2 (at the hotel / I / early / arrived)  
3 (goes / every year / to Italy / Julia)  
4 (we / since 1988 / here / have lived)  
5 (in London / Sue / in 1960 / was born)  
6 (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work)  
7 (to the bank / yesterday afternoon / went / Ann)  
8 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)

Put the words in order.

- 1 **Liz walks to work every day...**  
I ...  
Julia ...  
We ...  
Sue ...  
Paul ...  
Ann ...  
8 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
- 1 (to work / every day / walks / Liz)  
2 (at the hotel / I / early / arrived)  
3 (goes / every year / to Italy / Julia)  
4 (we / since 1988 / here / have lived)  
5 (in London / Sue / in 1960 / was born)  
6 (didn't go / yesterday / Paul / to work)  
7 (to the bank / yesterday afternoon / went / Ann)  
8 (I / in bed / this morning / my breakfast / had)
- 9 (in October / Barbara / to university / is going)  
Barbara ...  
10 (I / a beautiful bird / this morning / in the garden / saw)  
I ...  
11 (many times / have been / my parents / to the United States)  
My ...  
12 (my umbrella / I / last night / left / in the restaurant)  
I ...  
13 (to the cinema / tomorrow evening / are you going?)  
Are ...  
14 (the children / I / took / this morning / to school)  
I ...

# always/usually/often etc. (word order 2)

## EXERCISES

Look at Paul's answers to the questions and write sentences with **often/never etc.**



<b>verb 1</b>	<b>verb 2</b>
will	go
can	find
do	remember
etc.	etc.
have	gone
has	been

**A**

always      often      ever      rarely      also      already      all  
usually      sometimes      never      seldom      just      still      both

These words (**always/never etc.**) are often with the verb in the middle of a sentence:

- ⦿ My brother **never speaks** to me.  
⦿ She's **always** late.
- ⦿ Do you **often go** to restaurants?
- ⦿ I **sometimes eat** too much. (or **Sometimes I eat** too much.)
- ⦿ I don't want to go to the cinema. I've **already seen** the film.
- ⦿ I've got three sisters. They're **all married**.

**B** always/never etc. go before the verb:

- ⦿ I **always go** to work by car. (*not 'I go always'*)
- ⦿ Ann **often plays** tennis. (*not 'Ann plays often tennis'*)
- ⦿ You **sometimes look** unhappy.
- ⦿ They **usually have** dinner at 7 o'clock.
- ⦿ We **rarely (or seldom) watch** television.
- ⦿ Richard is a good footballer. He **also plays** tennis and volleyball.
- ⦿ ('He plays also tennis')
- ⦿ I've got three sisters. They **all live** in London.

but always/never etc. go after am/is/are/was/were:

- ⦿ I **am never ill**. (*not 'I never am ill'*)
- ⦿ They **are usually** at home in the evenings.
- ⦿ It **is often** very cold here in winter.
- ⦿ When I was a child, I **was always** late for school.
- ⦿ 'Where's Linda?' 'She's **still** in bed.'
- ⦿ I've got two brothers. They're **both** doctors.

**C** always/never etc. go between two verbs (have ... been / can ... find etc.):

- ⦿ I **will always remember** you.
- ⦿ It **doesn't often rain** here.
- ⦿ Do you usually **go** to work by car?
- ⦿ I can never **find** my keys.
- ⦿ Have you ever **been** to Rome?
- ⦿ A: Where's Linda?  
B: She's **just gone** out. (she's = she has)
- ⦿ A: Where are your friends?  
B: They've **all gone** to the cinema.

verb 1	verb 2
will	go
can	find
do	remember
etc.	etc.
have	gone
has	been

**D**

Write sentences with the words in brackets (...).

- 1 My brother speaks to me. (never) **My brother never speaks to me.**  
2 Susan is polite. (always) Susan .....  
3 I finish work at 5 o'clock. (usually) I .....  
4 Jill has started a new job. (just) Jill .....  
5 I go to bed before midnight. (rarely) .....  
6 The bus isn't late. (usually) .....  
7 I don't eat fish. (often) .....  
8 I will forget what you said. (never) .....  
9 Have you lost your passport? (ever) .....  
10 Do you work in the same place? (still) .....  
11 They stay in the same hotel. (always) .....  
12 Diane doesn't work on Saturdays. (usually) .....  
13 Is Tim here? (already) .....  
14 What do you have for breakfast? (usually) .....  
15 I can remember his name. (never) .....

**E**

Write sentences with **also**. Use the words in brackets (...).

- 1 Do you play football? (tennis)  
2 Do you speak Italian? (French)  
3 Are you tired? (hungry)  
4 Have you been to England? (Ireland)  
5 Did you buy any clothes? (some books)

**F**

Write sentences with **both** and **all**:

- ⦿ I live in London. I play football. I'm a student. I've got a car.
- ⦿ They **both live** in London. They ..... football. ..... students. ..... cars.

<b>verb 1</b>	<b>verb 2</b>
will	go
can	find
do	remember
etc.	etc.
have	gone
has	been

**G**

**Paul** often plays tennis.

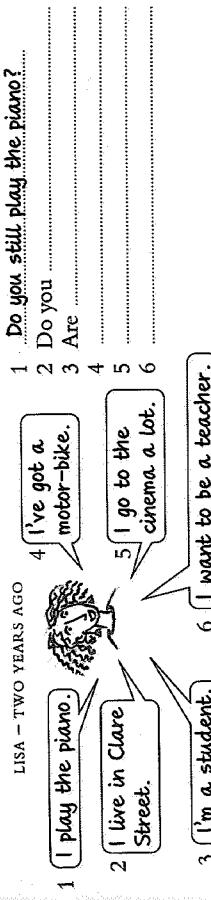
**He** .....  
**He** .....  
**Yes, often.**  
**Yes, never.**  
**Sometimes.**  
**Yes, often.**  
**Yes, usually.**

**PAUL**

**They** ..... married.  
**They** ..... England.

**still    yet    already****EXERCISES**

94.1 You meet Lisa. The last time you saw her was two years ago. You ask her some questions with **still**.



An hour ago it was raining.



It is still raining now.

**still** = something is the same as before:

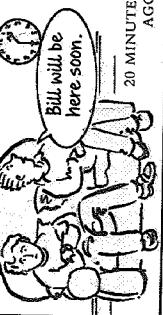
- I had a lot to eat but I'm still hungry. (= I was hungry before and I'm hungry now)
- Did you sell your car? 'No, I've still got it.'
- Do you still live in Barcelona? 'No, I live in Madrid now.'

**yet**



Twenty minutes ago they were waiting for Bill.

**yet** = until now:

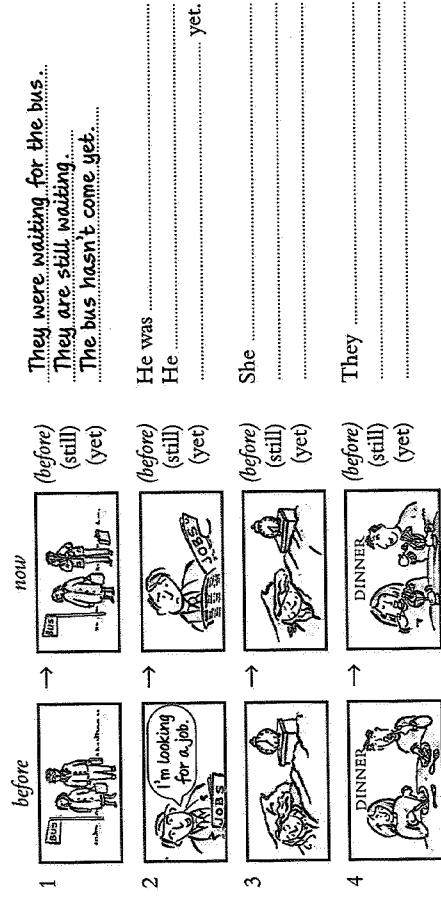


We use **yet** in negative sentences (He hasn't come yet.) and in questions (Has he come yet?).  
**Yet** is usually at the end of a sentence:

- A: Where's Diane?  
B: She isn't here yet. (= she will be here but until now she hasn't come)
  - A: What are you doing this evening?  
B: I don't know yet. (= I will know later but I don't know at the moment)
  - A: Are you ready to go yet?  
B: Not yet. Wait a moment. (= I will be ready but I'm not ready at the moment)
  - A: Have you finished with the newspaper yet?  
B: No, I'm still reading it.
- Compare **yet** and **still**:
- She hasn't gone yet. = She's still here. (not 'She is yet here')
  - I haven't finished eating yet. = I'm still eating.
- C**
- already** = earlier than expected:
- 'What time is John arriving?' 'He's already here.' (= earlier than we expected)
  - 'I'm going to tell you what happened.' 'That's not necessary. I already know.'
  - Ann doesn't want to go to the cinema. She has already seen the film.

already/yet + present perfect ⇒ word order (still/already) ⇒

94.2 Write three sentences for each situation. Look at the example carefully.



Write questions with **yet**.

- 1 You and Sue are going out together. You are waiting for her to get ready. Perhaps she is ready now. You ask her: **Are you ready yet?**
- 2 You are waiting for Ann to arrive. She wasn't there ten minutes ago. Perhaps she is here now. You ask somebody: **Ann ... yet?**
- 3 Mary did an exam and is waiting for the results. Perhaps she has her results now. You ask her: **You ... yet?**
- 4 A few days ago you spoke to Tom. He wasn't sure where to go on holiday. Perhaps he has decided now. You ask him: **You ... yet?**

94.3 Complete the sentences. Use **already**.

- 1 What time is John arriving? Does Ann want to see the film? I must see Julia before she goes.
- 2 I'm too late. She ... one.
- 3 No thanks. I ...
- 4 Do you need a pen? Shall I pay the bill?
- 5 Shall I tell Paul about the meeting? I told him.

# Give me that book! Give it to me!

## EXERCISES

	give	lend	pass	send	show
--	------	------	------	------	------

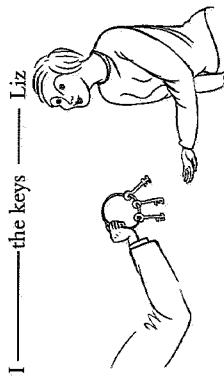
After these verbs (**give/lend etc.**), there are two possible structures:

(give) **something to somebody**:

- I gave the keys to Liz.

(give) **somebody something**:

- I gave Liz the keys.



	Give	me	something	to somebody
Tom	gave	me	that book.	It's mine.
I	lent	his mother	some flowers.	
		John	some money.	
		him?		
How much money did you lend				
I	sent	you	a postcard.	Did you receive it?
Linda	showed	us	her holiday photos.	
Can you pass		me	the salt, please?	

You can also say **'buy/get something'**:

• I bought some flowers **for** my mother.

• Can you get me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper **for** me)

Compare:

• I gave the keys to Liz.

I gave **Liz** the keys. (*but not 'I gave to Liz the keys.'*)

• That's my book. Can you give **it to me**?

Can you give me that book? (*but not 'give to me that book'*)

We prefer the first structure (**give something to somebody**) when the **thing** is **it or them**:

• I gave **it to her**. (*not 'I gave her it'*)

• Here are the keys. Give **them to your father**. (*not 'Give your father them'*)

D

	Give	me	something	to somebody
Tom	gave	me	that book.	It's mine.
I	lent	his mother	some flowers.	
		John	some money.	
		him?		
How much money did you lend				
I	sent	you	a postcard.	Did you receive it?
Linda	showed	us	her holiday photos.	
Can you pass		me	the salt, please?	

You can also say **'buy/get something'**:

• I bought some flowers **for** my mother.

• Can you get me a newspaper when you go out? (= get a newspaper **for** me)

D

• I gave the keys to Liz.

I gave **Liz** the keys. (*but not 'I gave to Liz the keys.'*)

• That's my book. Can you give **it to me**?

Can you give me that book? (*but not 'give to me that book'*)

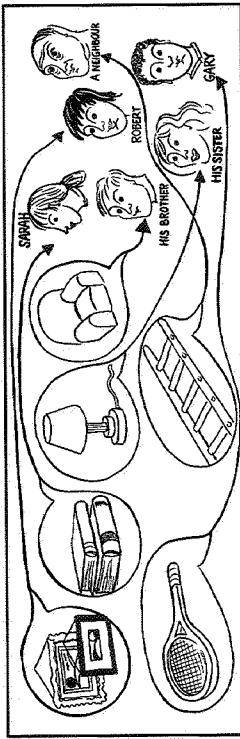
We prefer the first structure (**give something to somebody**) when the **thing** is **it or them**:

• I gave **it to her**. (*not 'I gave her it'*)

• Here are the keys. Give **them to your father**. (*not 'Give your father them'*)

7 This is Ann's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?

7 I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.



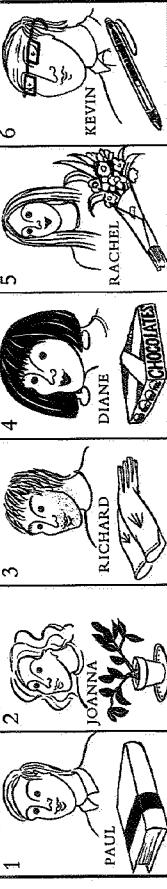
Mark had some things that he didn't want. He gave them to different people.

Write sentences beginning **He gave ...**

- 1 What did Mark do with the armchair?
- 2 What did he do with the tennis racket?
- 3 What happened to the books?
- 4 What about the lamp?
- 5 What did he do with the pictures?
- 6 And the ladder?

You wanted to give presents to your friends. You decided to give them the things in the pictures.

Write a sentence for each person.



- 1 I gave Paul a book.
- 2 I gave ...
- 3 I ...

- 1 (you want the salt)
- 2 (you need an umbrella)
- 3 (you want my address)
- 4 (you need ten pounds)
- 5 (you want some information)
- 6 (you want to see the letter)
- 7 (you want some stamps)

Which is right?

- 1 I gave to Liz the keys. / I gave Liz the keys. **I gave Liz the keys is right**
- 2 I'll lend to you some money if you want. / I'll lend you some money if you want.
- 3 Did you send the letter me? / Did you send the letter to me?
- 4 I want to buy for you a present. / I want to buy you a present.
- 5 Can you pass to me the sugar, please? / Can you pass me the sugar, please?

We prefer the first structure (**give something to somebody**) when the **thing** is **it or them**:

• I gave **it to her**. (*not 'I gave her it'*)

• Here are the keys. Give **them to your father**. (*not 'Give your father them'*)

7 This is Ann's bag. Can you give it to her? / Can you give her it?

7 I showed to the policeman my identity card. / I showed the policeman my identity card.

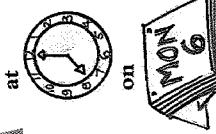
# at 8 o'clock      on Monday      in April

## EXERCISES

Write at/on/in.

§.1

- 1 **at** 8 o'clock
- 2 **at** 10.30
- 3 **at** midnight etc.
- 4 **on** Sunday(s) / Monday(s) etc.
- 5 **on** 25 April / 6 June etc.
- 6 **on** New Year's Day etc.



- 1 Goodbye! See you **on** Friday.
- 2 I don't work **on** Sundays.
- 3 The concert is **on** 22 November.

- 1 I'm going on holiday **in** October.
- 2 Emma left school **in** 1993.
- 3 The garden is lovely **in** spring.

April/June etc.	<b>in</b> 1985/1750 etc.
summer/spring etc.	

B We say:

at the weekend  
at night  
at Christmas / at Easter  
at the end of ...  
at the moment

but

on Monday morning / on Tuesday afternoon / on Friday evening / on Saturday night etc.  
I'm meeting Jill on Monday morning.  
Are you doing anything on Saturday evening?

G in the morning / in the afternoon / in the evening

- 1 I always feel good **in** the morning.
- 2 I can't sleep **at** night.
- 3 Where will you be at Christmas? (**but on** Christmas Day)
- 4 I'm going on holiday **at** the end of October.
- 5 Are you busy **at** the moment?

D We do *not* use at/on/in before:

this ... (this morning / this week etc.)	Are you going out <b>this</b> evening?
last ... (last August / last week etc.)	The garden was lovely <b>last</b> summer.
next ... (next Monday / next week etc.)	I'm going on holiday <b>next</b> Monday. ( <b>not on</b> next Monday)
every ... (every day / every week etc.)	

E in five minutes / in a few days / in six weeks / in two years etc.

- 1 Hurry! The train leaves **in** five minutes.  
(= it leaves five minutes from now)
- 2 Goodbye! I'll see you **in** a few days.  
(= a few days from now)

- 3 I always feel tired **at** the evening.
- 4 Will you be at home **at** this evening?
- 5 We went to France **last** summer.
- 6 Laura was born **in** 1975.
- 7 What are you doing **on** the weekend?
- 8 I phone Robert **every** Sunday.
- 9 Shall we play tennis **next** Sunday?
- 10 I can't go to the party **on** Sunday.
- 11 I'm going out. I'll be back **an** hour.
- 12 I don't often go out **at** night.

Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.

§.2

Write at/on/in.

- 1 Goodbye! See you **on** Friday.

- 2 Where were you **on** 28 February?

- 3 I got up **at** 8 o'clock this morning.

- 4 I like getting up early **in** the morning.

- 5 My sister got married **in** May.

- 6 Diane and I first met **in** 1979.

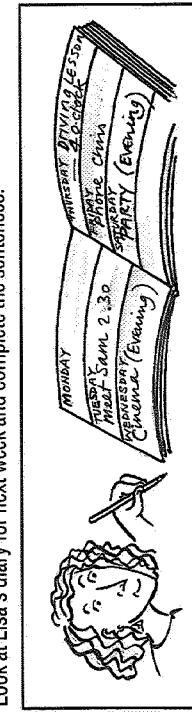
- 7 Did you go out **on** Tuesday?

- 8 Did you go out **in** Tuesday evening?

- 9 Do you often go out **on** the evening?

- 10 Let's meet **at** 7.30 tomorrow evening.

Look at Lisa's diary for next week and complete the sentences.



§.3

- 1 Lisa is going to the cinema **on** Wednesday evening.
- 2 She has to phone Chris .....
- 3 She isn't doing anything special .....
- 4 She's got a driving lesson .....
- 5 She's going to a party .....
- 6 She's meeting Sam .....

§.4

Write sentences with **in** ...

- 1 It's 17.25 now. The train leaves at 17.30.
- 2 It's Monday today. I'll phone you on Thursday.
- 3 Today is 14 June. My exam is on 28 June.
- 4 It's 3 o'clock now. Tom will be here at 3.30.

- The train leaves **in** five minutes...  
days.  
I'll .....  
My .....  
Tom .....

§.5

Write at/on/in if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.

1 I'm leaving **on** Friday.

2 I'm leaving **in** next Friday. (**no preposition**)

3 I always feel tired **at** the evening.

4 Will you be at home **at** this evening?

5 We went to France **last** summer.

6 Laura was born **in** 1975.

- 7 What are you doing **on** the weekend?
- 8 I phone Robert **every** Sunday.
- 9 Shall we play tennis **next** Sunday?
- 10 I can't go to the party **on** Sunday.
- 11 I'm going out. I'll be back **an** hour.
- 12 I don't often go out **at** night.

# from ... to      until      since      for

## EXERCISES

Read the information about these people and complete the sentences. Use **from** ... **to** / **until** / **since**.



GERRY

• We lived in Canada from 1982 to 1990.  
• I work from Monday to Friday.  
You can also say **from ... until ...**:  
• We lived in Canada from 1982 until 1990.

**until + the end of a period**

- until Friday      until December      until 3 o'clock      until I come back
- They're going away tomorrow. They'll be away until Friday.
- I went to bed early but I wasn't tired. I read a book until 3 o'clock.
- Wait here until I come back.

You can also say **till** (= **until**):

• Wait here till I come back.

Compare:

- **How long** will you be away?      'Until Monday.'
- **When** are you coming back?      'On Monday.'

**C since + a time in the past (to now)**

**since Monday      since 1968      since 2.30      since I arrived**

We use **since** after the **present perfect** (have been / have done etc.):

- John is in hospital. He has been in hospital since Monday. (= from Monday to now)
- Mr and Mrs Kelly have been married since 1968. (from 1968 to now)
- It has been raining since I arrived.

Compare:

- We lived in Canada from 1982 to 1990.
- We lived in Canada until 1990.

Now we live in France. We came to France in 1990.

We have lived in France since 1990. (= from 1990 until now)

We use **for (not since) + a period of time** (three days / ten years etc.):

- John has been in hospital for three days. (not 'since three days')

**D for + a period of time**

**for three days      for ten years      for ten minutes      for a long time**

- George stayed with us for three days.
- I'm going away for a few weeks.
- I'm going away for the weekend.
- They've been married for ten years.



• I work in a restaurant now.  
I worked in a hotel before.

**I started work in the restaurant in 1993.**

- I live in Switzerland now.  
I lived in France before.

- I came to Switzerland in 1991.
- I started work in the restaurant in 1993.



• I live in England now.  
I lived in Canada before.

- I came to England in 1990.
- I started work in the restaurant in 1993.



• I live in Switzerland now.  
I lived in France before.

- I came to Switzerland in 1991.
- I started work in the restaurant in 1993.

Now write sentences with **for**.

- |                                   |                          |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 (Alex / Canada / 1982 - 1990)   | 10 (Alex / Canada)       | Alex lived in Canada for 1990. |
| 2 (Alex / Canada / → 1990)        | 11 (Alex / England)      | Alex has lived in England      |
| 3 (Alex / England / 1990 →)       | 12 (Alice / Switzerland) | Alice lived in Switzerland     |
| 4 (Alice / France / → 1991)       | 13 (Carol / a hotel)     | Carol has lived in a hotel     |
| 5 (Alice / Switzerland / 1991 →)  | 14 (Carol / restaurant)  | Carol worked in a restaurant   |
| 6 (Carol / a hotel / 1990 - 1993) | 15 (Gerry / a teacher)   | Gerry was a teacher            |
| 7 (Carol / a restaurant / 1993 →) | 16 (Gerry / a salesman)  | Gerry has been a salesman      |

Put in **until/since/for**.

- 1 Mr and Mrs Kelly have been married since 1968.
- 2 I was tired this morning. I stayed in bed until 10 o'clock.
- 3 We waited for Sue half an hour but she didn't come.
- 4 'Have you just arrived?' 'No, I've been here since midnight.'
- 5 'How long did you stay at the party last night?' '..... half past seven.'
- 6 David and I are good friends. We have known each other for ten years.
- 7 I'm tired. I'm going to lie down for a few minutes.
- 8 Don't open the door of the train ..... the train stops.
- 9 This is my house. I've lived here ..... I was seven years old.
- 10 Jack has gone away. He'll be away ..... Wednesday.
- 11 Next week I'm going to Paris for three days.
- 12 I usually finish work at 5.30, but sometimes I work ..... six.
- 13 'How long have you known Ann?' '..... we were at school together.'
- 14 Where have you been? I've been waiting for you ..... twenty minutes.

**before · after · during · while****EXERCISES**

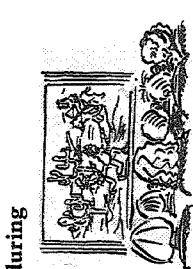
Complete the sentences. Choose from the boxes.

<b>before</b>	<b>during</b>	<b>after</b>
while	while	while

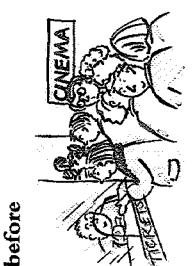
they went to Australia  
you are waitingthe concert  
the course  
the endlunch  
the night

after the film

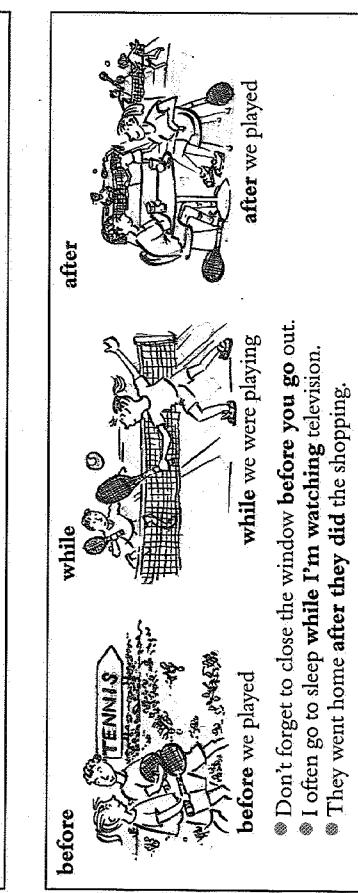
- Everybody is nervous **before exams**.
- I went to sleep **during the film**.
- We were tired **after our visit to the museum**.



during the film



before the film

**A**

- Don't forget to close the window **before you go out**.
- I often go to sleep **while I'm watching television**.
- They went home **after they did the shopping**.

**B****C**

during, while and for

We use **during + noun** (during the film). We use **while + verb** (while I'm watching):

- We didn't speak **during the meal**.
- We didn't speak **while we were eating**. (not 'during we were eating')

but

- We played tennis **for two hours**. (not 'during two hours')

I lived in London **for a year**. (not 'during a year')Use for ('not 'during') + a period of time (**three days / two hours / a year etc.**):

- I always have breakfast **before going to work**. (= before I go to work)
- After **doing the shopping**, they **went home**.

Do not say 'before to go', 'after to do' etc.:

- **Before eating** the apple, I washed it carefully. (not 'before to eat')
- I started work **after reading** the newspaper. (not 'after to read')

past continuous (I was -ing) ⇒ past continuous (I was -ing) before/after/while/when ⇒

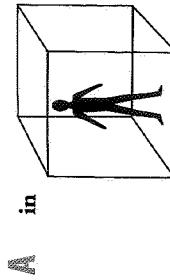
for ⇒ for ⇒ prepositions + -ing ⇒

**§1****§2****§3****§4**

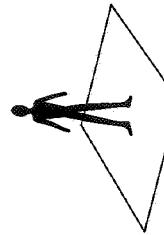
- Put in **during/while/for**.
- 1 Everybody was nervous **before the exam**.
  - 2 I usually work four hours in the morning, and another two hours **after**.
  - 3 The film was very boring. We left **while**.
  - 4 Ann went to evening classes to learn German. She learnt a lot **during**.
  - 5 My aunt and uncle lived in London **for** many years.
  - 6 A: Somebody broke a window **while** I was asleep all the time.  
B: No, I was asleep all the time.
  - 7 Would you like to sit down **while** we're going to a restaurant?
  - 8 'Are you going home **after**?' 'No, we're going to a restaurant.'
- Complete the sentences. Use **-ing** (doing etc.).
- 1 After **doing** the shopping, they went home.
  - 2 I fell sick after **eating** too much chocolate.
  - 3 I'm going to ask you a question. Think carefully before **answering** it.
  - 4 I fell awful when I got up this morning. I felt better after **taking** a shower.
  - 5 After **finishing** my work, I left the office and went home.
  - 6 Before **leaving** to a foreign country, it's a good idea to learn a few words of the language.
- Write sentences with **before + -ing** and **after + -ing**.
- 1 They did the shopping. Then they went home.
  - 2 John left school. Then he worked in a bookshop for two years.
  - 3 I read a few pages of my book. Then I went to sleep.
  - 4 We walked for three hours. We were very tired.
  - 5 Let's have a cup of coffee. Then we'll go out.

## EXERCISES

## in at on (places 1)

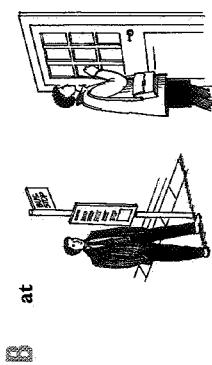


in a garden  
in a town  
in the city centre  
in France



in a room  
in a shop  
in a car  
in the water

- 'Where's David?' 'In the kitchen.' / In the garden. / In London.'
- What's in that **box** / in that **bag** / in that **cupboard**?
- Angela works in a **shop** / in a **bank** / in a **factory**.
- I had a swim in the **river** / in the **sea**.
- Milan is in the **north of Italy**.
- I live in a **town** but I want to live in the **country**.

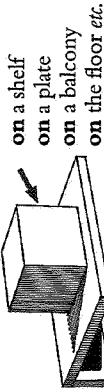


- at the bus stop
- at the door
- at the traffic lights
- There's somebody at the bus stop / at the door.
- The car is waiting at the traffic lights.
- Julia is working **at her desk**.

**at the top / at the bottom / at the end (of ...):**

- Write your name **at the top of the page**.
- My house is **at the end of the street**.

## on

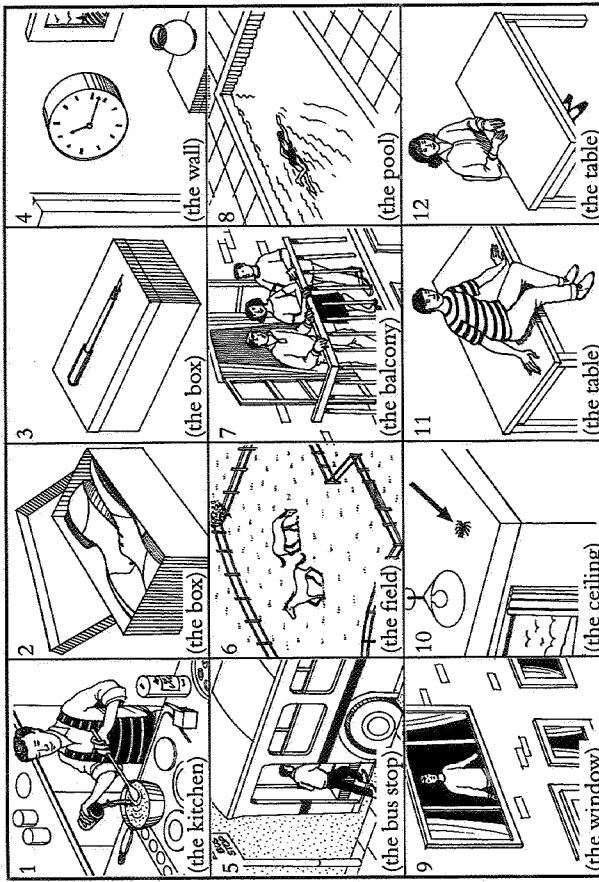


on a shelf  
on a plate  
on a balcony  
on the floor etc.

- There are some books **on the shelf** and some pictures **on the wall**.
- There are a lot of apples **on those trees**.
- Don't sit **on the grass**. It's wet.
- There is a stamp **on the envelope**.

- also on a horse / on a bicycle / on a motor-bike:**
- Who is that man **on the motor-bike**?

Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **in/at/on** + the words in brackets (...).



- 1 Where is he? **In the kitchen.**  
2 Where are the shoes? **At the bus stop.**  
3 Where is the pen? **On the ceiling.**  
4 Where is the clock? **On the wall.**  
5 Where is the bus? **At the bus stop.**  
6 Where are the horses? **At the top of the page.**
- 7 Where are they standing? **At the top (of the page).**  
8 Where is she swimming? **At the bottom (of the page).**  
9 Where is he standing? **At the door.**  
10 Where is the spider? **On the ceiling.**  
11 Where is he sitting? **At the table.**  
12 Where is she sitting? **At the bottom (of the page).**

Put in **in/at/on**.

- 1 Don't sit **on** the grass. It's wet.
- 2 What have you got **in** your bag?
- 3 Look! There's a man **on** the roof. What's he doing?
- 4 There are a lot of fish **in** this river.
- 5 Our house is number 45 – the number is **on** the door.
- 6 Is the cinema near here? 'Yes, turn left **at** the traffic lights.'
- 7 I usually do my shopping **in** the city centre.
- 8 My sister lives **in** Brussels.
- 9 There's a small park **at** the top of the hill.
- 10 I think I heard the doorbell. There's somebody **at** the door.
- 11 Munich is a large city **in** the south of Germany.
- 12 There are a few shops **at** the end of the street.
- 13 It's difficult to carry a lot of things **on** a bicycle.
- 14 I looked at the list of names. My name was **at** the bottom of the list.
- 15 There is a mirror **on** the wall **in** the living room.

at/on/in (time) =>

at

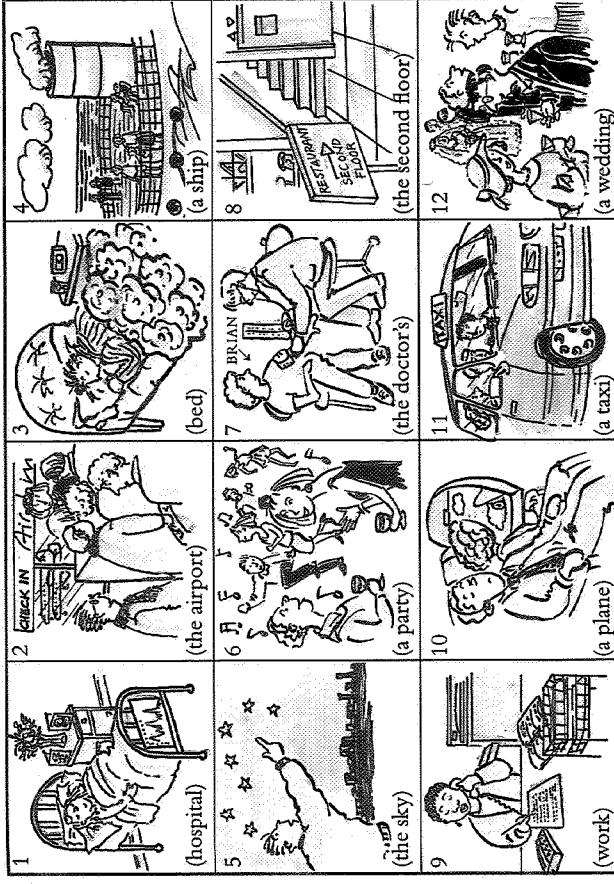
in

at

## EXERCISES

## in at on (places 2)

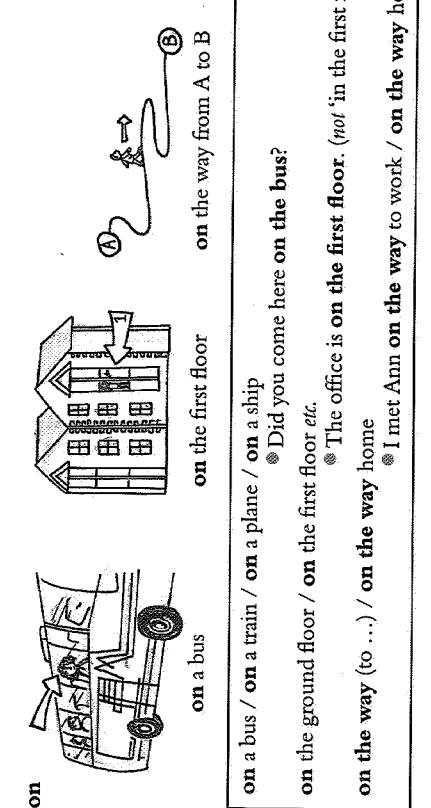
Look at the pictures and answer the questions. Use **in/at/on** + the words in brackets (...).



A in	
in bed	• 'Where's Kate?' 'She's <b>in bed</b> '.
in hospital / in prison	• David's father is ill. He's <b>in hospital</b> .
in a street	• I live <b>in a small street</b> near the station.
in the sky	• I like to look at the stars <b>in the sky</b> at night.
in the world	• What's the largest city <b>in the world</b> ?
in a newspaper / in a book	• I read about the accident <b>in the newspaper</b> .
in a photograph / in a picture	• You look sad <b>in this photograph</b> .
in a car / in a taxi	• Did you come here <b>in your car</b> ?
in the middle (of ...)	• There's a big tree <b>in the middle</b> of the garden.

B at	
at home	• Will you be <b>at home</b> this evening?
at work / at school	• Where's Kate? 'She's <b>at work</b> '.
at university / at college	• Helen is studying law <b>at university</b> .
at the station / at the airport	• Do you want me to meet you <b>at the station</b> ?
at Jane's (house) / at my sister's (house) / etc.	• 'Where were you yesterday?' 'At my sister's.'
at a concert / at a party / at a football match etc.	• I saw Tom <b>at the doctor's</b> .
on the way (to ...) / on the way home	• There weren't many people <b>at the party</b> .

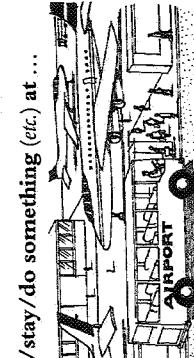
C on	
on a bus / on a train / on a plane / on a ship	• Did you come here <b>on the bus</b> ?
on the ground floor / on the first floor etc.	• Are you hungry after your journey? 'No, I had a meal <b>on the train</b> '.
on the way (to ...) / on the way home	• The office is <b>on the first floor</b> . ( <i>not 'in the first floor'</i> )
on a bus	• I met Ann <b>on the way to work / on the way home</b> .



- 100.1 Put in **in/at/on**.
- Where is she? **In Hospital**. Where is Brian? **At university**.
  - Where are they? **At the restaurant**. Where is she? **On the second floor**.
  - Where is he? **At the station**. Where is he? **On the first floor**.
  - Where are they? **At the concert**. Where are they? **At the airport**.
  - Who is that man **at** this photograph? Do you know him? Who is that man **in** the photo? Do you know him?
  - Where are they? **At the station**. Where are they? **At the station**.
  - Where are your children? Are they **at** school? Where are your children? Are they **in** school?
  - George is coming by train. I'm going to meet him **at** the station. Charlie is **on** the train.
  - How many pages are there **in** this book?
  - 'Are you hungry after your journey?' 'No, I had a meal **on** the train.'
  - I'm sorry I'm late. My car broke down **on** the way here.
  - 'Is Tom here?' 'No, he's **in** his brother's.
  - Don't believe everything you see **on** the newspaper!
  - I walked to work but I came home **on** the bus.

## to in ' at (places 3)

## EXERCISES

<b>A</b> <b>to</b> <i>go/come/return/walk (etc.) to ...</i> 	<b>in/at</b> ( $\Rightarrow$ Units 99–100) <b>be/stay/do something (etc.) in ...</b>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• We're <b>going to</b> London next week.</li> <li>• I want to <b>go to</b> Italy.</li> <li>• We walked from my house to the city centre.</li> <li>• What time do you <b>go to bed?</b></li> <li>• I like reading <b>in bed</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>go/come/walk (etc.) to ...</b> 	<b>be/stay/do something (etc.) at ...</b>  <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The bus is <b>at the airport</b>.</li> <li>• Ann wasn't at work yesterday.</li> <li>• I met her at a party.</li> <li>• Ann stayed <b>at her brother's house</b>.</li> </ul>

**B**

**home**  
*go/come/walk (etc.) home (without 'to'):*

- I'm tired. I'm **going home**. (*not 'to home'*)
- Did you **walk home**?

**be/stay/do something (etc.) at home:**

- I'm staying **at home** this evening.
- Where's Ann? 'At **home**'.

**C**

## arrive and get

**arrive in a country or town (arrive in Paris etc.):**

- They **arrived in** England last week. (*not 'arrived to England'*)

**arrive at other places (arrive at the station / arrive at work etc.):**

- What time did you **arrive at the hotel?** (*not 'arrive to the hotel'*)

**get to (a place):**

- What time did you **get to** the hotel?
- What time did you **get to** Paris?

**get home / arrive home (no preposition):**

- I was tired when I **got home**. Or I was tired when I **arrived home**.

- 1 I like reading **in** bed.  
 2 We're going **to** Italy next month.  
 3 Sue is on holiday **in** Italy at the moment.  
 4 I must go **to** the bank today.
- 5 I was tired, so I stayed **in** bed late.  
 6 What time do you usually **go to** bed?  
 7 Does this bus go **to** the centre?  
 8 Would you like to live **in** another country?

**Write to or at if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.**

- 1 Paula didn't **go to** work yesterday.  
 2 I'm tired. I'm going **to** home (*no preposition!*)  
 3 Ann is not very well. She has gone **to** the doctor.  
 4 Would you like to come **to** a party on Saturday?  
 5 'Is Liz **at** home?' 'No, she's gone **to** work.'  
 6 There were 20,000 people **at** the football match.  
 7 Why did you go **to** home early last night?  
 8 A boy jumped into the river and swam **to** the other side.  
 9 There were a lot of people waiting **at** the bus stop.  
 10 We had a good meal **at** a restaurant and then we went back **to** the hotel.

**Write to, at or in if necessary. Sometimes there is no preposition.**

- 1 I'm not going out this afternoon. I'm staying **at** home.  
 2 We're going **to** a concert tomorrow evening.  
 3 I went **to** New York last year.  
 4 How long did you stay **in** New York?  
 5 Next year we hope to go **to** Canada to visit some friends.  
 6 Shall we go **to** the cinema this evening?  
 7 Is there a restaurant **at** the station?  
 8 After the accident three people were taken **to** hospital.  
 9 How often do you go **to** the dentist?  
 10 'Is Diane here?' 'No, she's **at** Ann's.'

- 11 My house is **at** the end of the street on the left.  
 12 I went **to** Mary's house but she wasn't **at** home.  
 13 There were no taxis, so we had to walk **to** home.  
 14 'What did you study **at** university?' 'I didn't go **to** university.'

**Complete these sentences about yourself. Use to/in/at.**

- 1 At three o'clock this morning I was **in bed**.  
 2 Yesterday I went **to** ...

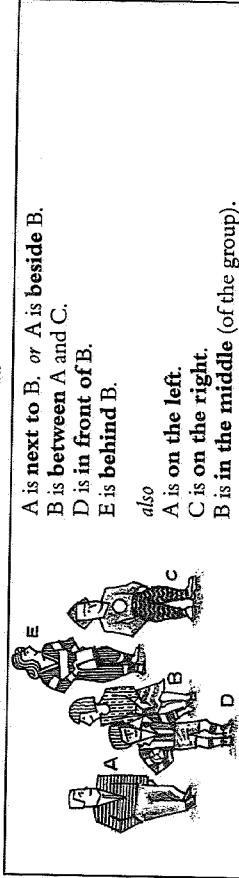
- 3 At 11 o'clock yesterday morning I was **at** ...  
 4 One day I'd like to go **to** ...

- 5 I don't like going **to** ...  
 6 At 9 o'clock yesterday evening I was **at** ...

# under      behind      opposite etc. (prepositions)

## EXERCISES

**A** next to (or beside) / between / in front of / behind



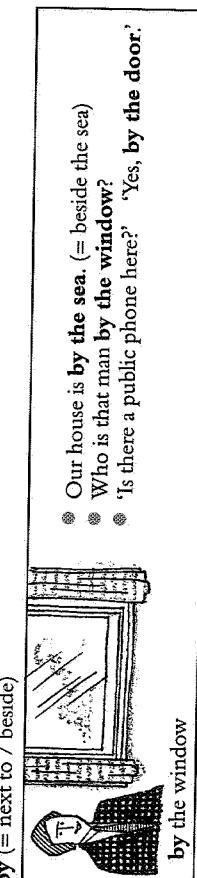
- A is next to B, or A is **beside** B.
  - B is **between** A and C.
  - D is **in front of** B.
  - E is **behind** B.
- also*
- A is **on the left**.
  - C is **on the right**.
  - B is **in the middle** (of the group).

**B** opposite / in front of



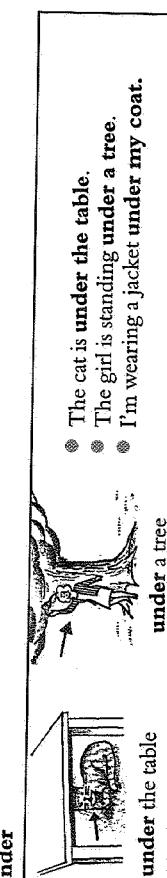
- A is **sitting in front of** B.
- A is **sitting opposite** C.
- C is **sitting opposite** A.

**C** by (= next to / beside)



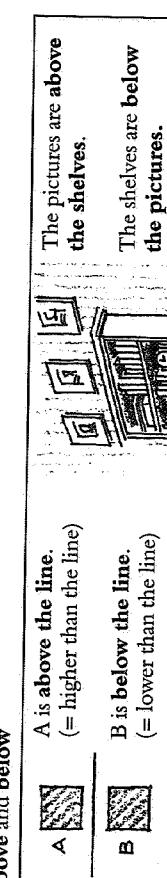
- Our house is **by the sea**. (= beside the sea)
  - Who is that man **by the window**?
  - 'Is there a public phone here?' 'Yes, **by the door**'
- by the window**

**D** under



- The cat is **under** the table.
  - The girl is **standing under** a tree.
  - I'm wearing a jacket **under** my coat.
- under a tree**

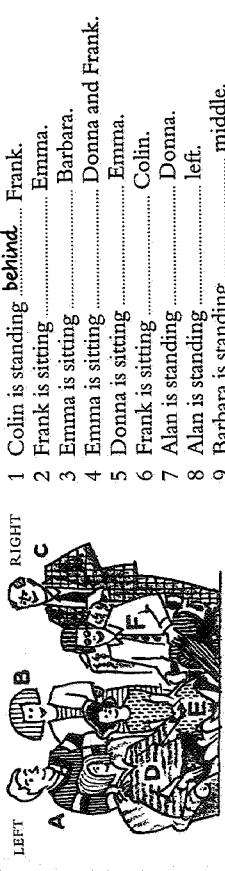
**E** above and below



- A** is **above** the line.  
(= higher than the line)
- B** is **below** the line.  
(= lower than the line)

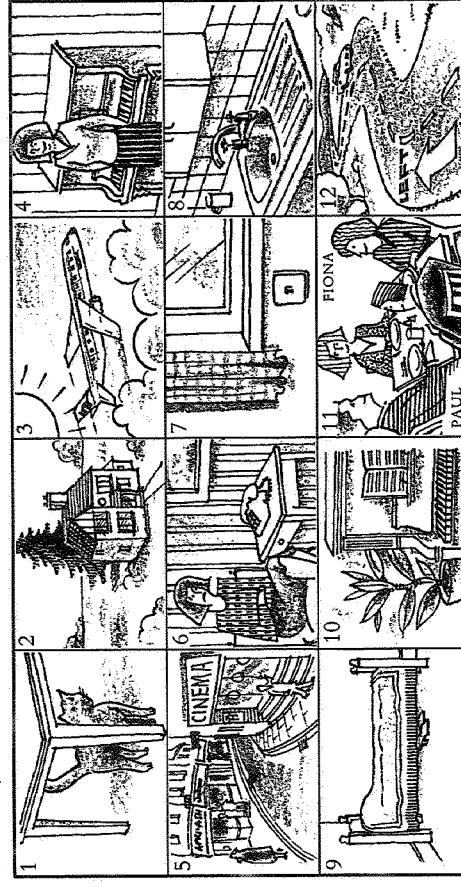
up / over / through etc. ⇒ **by** ⇒

Where are the people in the picture? Complete the sentences.



- A** = Alan    **B** = Barbara    **C** = Colin  
**D** = Donna    **E** = Emma    **F** = Frank  
**G** = George    **H** = Helen    **I** = Ian  
**J** = John

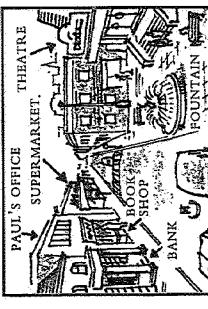
Look at the pictures and complete the sentences.



- 1 Colin is **standing behind** Frank.
- 2 Frank is **sitting** Emma.
- 3 Emma is **sitting** Barbara.
- 4 Emma is **sitting** Donna and Frank.
- 5 Donna is **sitting** Emma.
- 6 Frank is **sitting** Colin.
- 7 Alan is **standing** left.
- 8 Alan is **standing** middle.
- 9 Barbara is **standing** middle.
- 10 The switch is ..... the window.
- 11 The cupboard is ..... the sink.
- 12 There are some shoes ..... the bed.
- 13 The plant is ..... the piano.
- 14 Paul is sitting ..... Fiona.
- 15 In Britain we drive ..... the left.

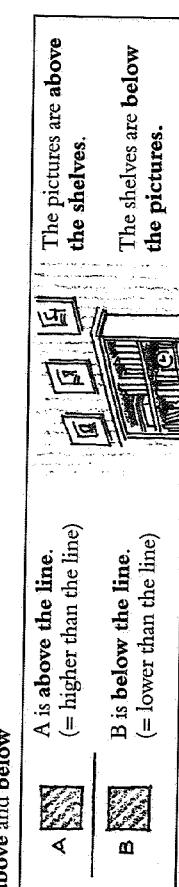
The bank is **next to** the bookshop. ....

- 1 (next to)
- 2 (in front of)
- 3 (opposite)
- 4 (next to)
- 5 (above)
- 6 (between)



12.3

Write sentences about the picture. Use the words in brackets (...).

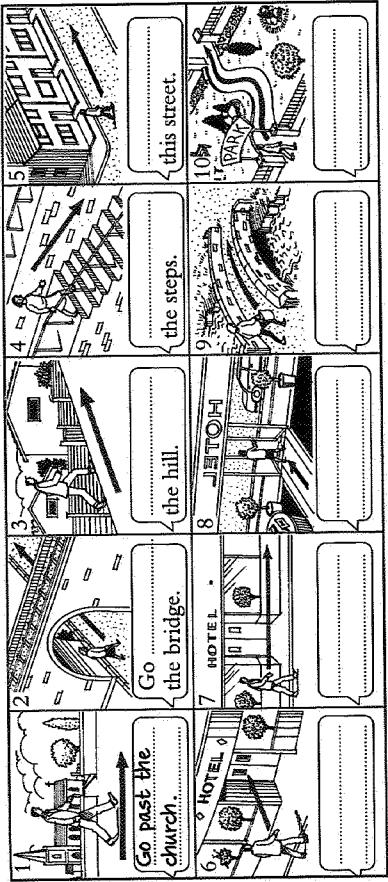


- The pictures are **above** the shelves.
- The shelves are **below** the pictures.

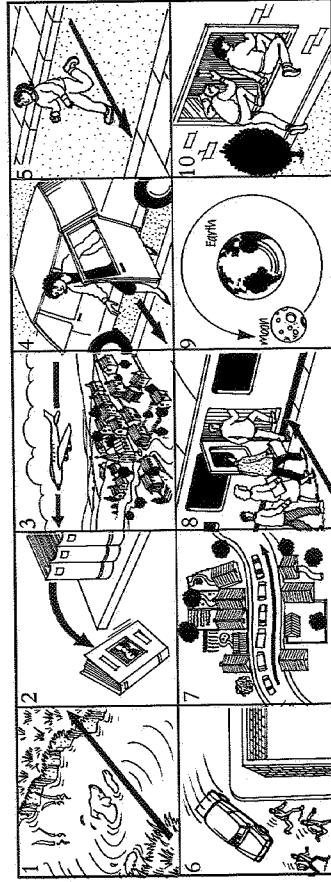
# up over through etc. (prepositions)

## EXERCISES

Somebody asks you the way to a place. You say which way to go. Look at the pictures and write sentences beginning **Go ...**



Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition.



- 1 Jane is going **to** France next week.  
 • We walked **from** the hotel **to** the station.  
 • A lot of English words come **from** Latin.  
 • We jumped **into** the water.  
 • A man came **out** of the house and got **into** a car.  
 • Why are you looking **out** of the window?  
 • I took the old batteries **out** of the radio.  
 • We say **put** something **in** ... (not usually 'into');  
 • I put the new batteries **in** the radio.  
**into (in)**  
**on**  
**off**  
**up**  
**down**  
**over**  
**under**  
**through**  
**round**  
**along**  
**across**
- 2 Go **past** the church.  
 Go **past** the bridge.  
 Go **past** the steps.  
 Go **up** the hill.  
 Go **down** the hill.  
 Go **out** of the window.  
 Go **out** of the room.  
 Go **across** the river.  
 Go **over** the mountains.  
 Go **over** the wall.  
 Go **under** the ladder.  
 Go **through** the village.  
 Go **round** the town.  
 Go **round** the corner.  
 Go **along** the road.  
 Go **across** the river.  
 Go **up** the stairs.  
 Go **down** the stairs.  
 Go **up** the hill.  
 Go **down** the hill.  
 Go **out** of the window.  
 Go **out** of the room.  
 Go **across** the river.  
 Go **over** the mountains.  
 Go **over** the wall.  
 Go **under** the ladder.  
 Go **through** the village.  
 Go **round** the town.  
 Go **round** the corner.  
 Go **along** the road.  
 Go **across** the river.

Put in a preposition (**over/from/into** etc.).

- 1 I looked **over** the window and watched the people in the street.  
 2 My house is very near here. It's just **across** the corner.  
 3 Do you know how to put a film **into** this camera?  
 4 How far is it **from** here **to** the airport?  
 5 We walked **past** the museum for an hour and saw a lot of interesting things.  
 6 You can put your coat **under** the back of the chair.  
 7 In tennis, you have to hit the ball **over** the net.  
 8 Silvia took a key **from** her bag and opened the door.

<b>to</b>  <p>Jane is going <b>to</b> France next week.      • We walked <b>from</b> the hotel <b>to</b> the station.      • A lot of English words come <b>from</b> Latin.      • We jumped <b>into</b> the water.      • A man came <b>out</b> of the house and got <b>into</b> a car.      • Why are you looking <b>out</b> of the window?      • I took the old batteries <b>out</b> of the radio.      • We say <b>put</b> something <b>in</b> ... (not usually 'into');      • I put the new batteries <b>in</b> the radio.  <b>into (in)</b>  <b>on</b>  <b>off</b>  <b>up</b>  <b>down</b>  <b>over</b>  <b>under</b>  <b>through</b>  <b>round</b>  <b>along</b>  <b>across</b></p>	<b>up</b>  <p>We walked <b>up</b> the hill to the house.      • Be careful! Don't fall <b>down</b> the stairs.</p>	<b>over</b>  <p>The plane flew <b>over</b> the mountains.      • I jumped <b>over</b> the wall into the garden.      • Some people say it is unlucky to walk <b>under</b> a ladder.</p>	<b>through</b>  <p>A bird flew into the room <b>through</b> a window.      • The old road goes <b>through</b> the village.      • The new road goes <b>round</b> the village.      • The bus stop is just <b>round</b> the corner.      • I walked <b>round</b> the town and took some photographs.</p>	<b>round</b>  <p>You can also use <b>around</b> (= round):      • We walked <b>around</b> the town.      • I was walking <b>along</b> the road with my dog.      • Let's go for a walk <b>along</b> the river.      • The dog swam <b>across</b> the river.</p>	<b>the town</b>  <p>round  <b>the town</b></p>	<b>the road</b>  <p>along  <b>the road</b></p>	<b>the river</b>  <p>across  <b>the river</b></p>	<b>the hospital</b>  <p>past  <b>the hospital</b></p>	<b>the cinema</b>  <p>past  <b>the cinema</b></p>	<b>the bridge</b>  <p>over  <b>the bridge</b></p>
<p>3 They walked <b>past</b> me without speaking.      • A: Excuse me, how do I get to the hospital?      B: Go along this road, <b>past</b> the cinema, <b>under</b> the bridge and the hospital is <b>on</b> the left.</p>										

# on at by with about (prepositions)

UNIT  
104

104

# on at by with about (prepositions)

UNIT  
104

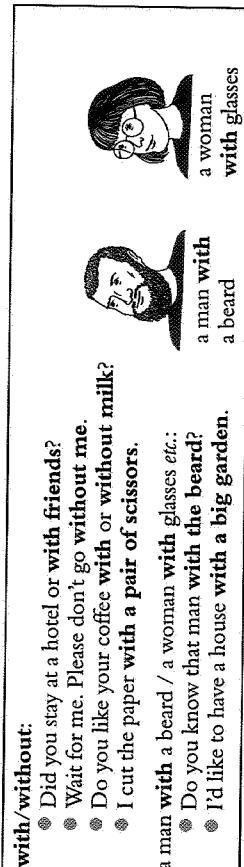
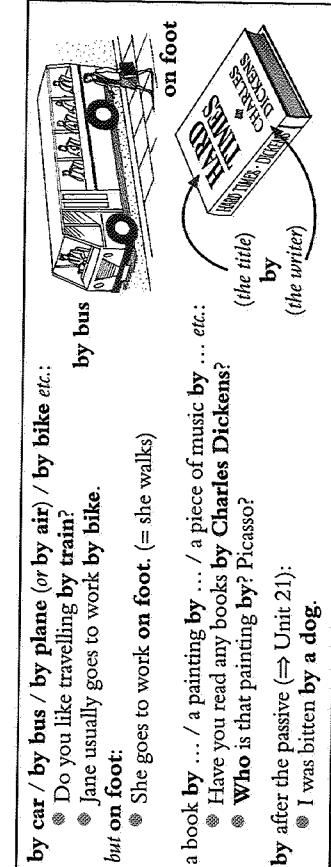
104

## EXERCISES

[B.1] Complete the sentences. Use **on** + one of these:  
**holiday**   **the phone**   **the radio**   **television**   **time**

- A**
- on **holiday**      ● Jane isn't at work this week. She's **on holiday**.
  - on **television**      ● We watched the news **on television**.
  - on **the radio**      ● We listened to the news **on the radio**.
  - on **the phone**      ● I spoke to Carol **on the phone** last night.
  - on **fire**      ● The house is **on fire**! Call the fire brigade.
  - on **time** (= not late)      ● 'Was the train late?' 'No, it was **on time**'.

- B**
- at (the age of) 21 / at 50 kilometres an hour / at 100 degrees etc.:
- Lisa got married at 21. (*or ... at the age of 21*.)
  - The car was travelling at 50 kilometres **an hour** when the accident happened.
  - Water boils at 100 degrees celsius.

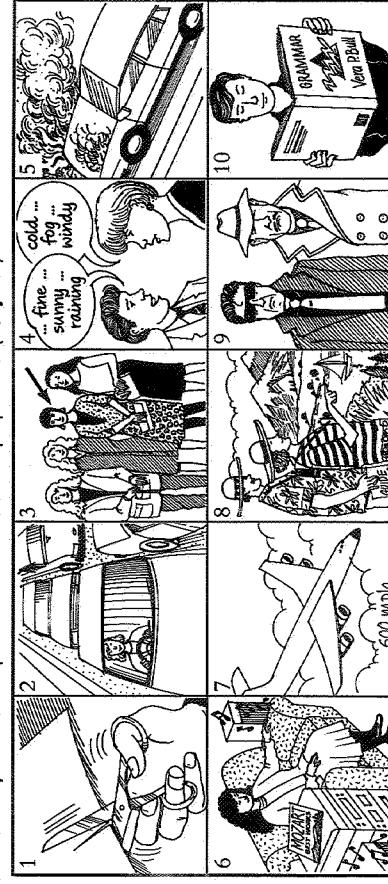


- E**
- talk/speak/think/hear/know about ... :
- Some people **talk about** their work all the time.
  - I don't **know** much about cars.
- a book / a question / a programme (etc.) **about** ... :
- Did you see the **programme about computers** on TV last night?

by ⇒ at/on ⇒ preposition + -ing ⇒

[B.2]

Look at the pictures. Complete the sentences with a preposition (at/by/etc.).



- 1 We listened to the news **on** the radio.
- 2 Please don't be late. Try to be here **on** time.
- 3 I won't be here next week. I'm going **on** holiday.
- 4 'Did you see Linda?' 'No, but I talked to her **on** the phone.'
- 5 'What's **on** this evening?' 'There's a film at 9 o'clock.'
- 6 She's listening to some music **on** Mozart.
- 7 The plane is flying **on** 600 miles an hour.
- 8 They're **on** holiday.
- 9 Do you know the man **wearing** sunglasses?
- 10 He's reading a book **about** grammar.

Vera P. Bull.

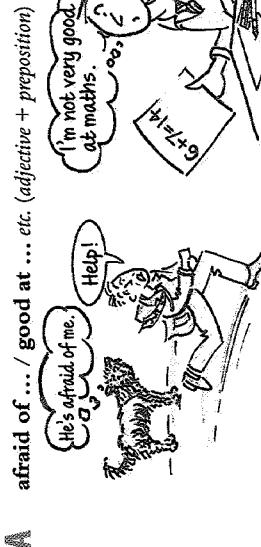
[C.3]

Complete the sentences with a preposition (at/by/with etc.).

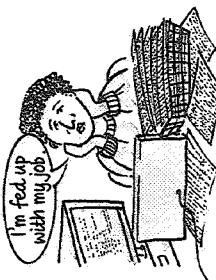
- 1 In tennis, you hit the ball **with** a racket.
- 2 It's cold today. Don't go out **in** a coat.
- 3 Hamlet, Othello and Macbeth are plays **by** William Shakespeare.
- 4 Do you know anything **about** computers?
- 5 My grandmother died **in** the age of 98.
- 6 How long does it take from New York to Los Angeles **by** plane?
- 7 I didn't go to the football match, but I watched it **on** television.
- 8 My house is the one **near** the red door on the right.
- 9 These trains are very fast. They can travel **at** very high speeds.
- 10 I don't use my car very often. I prefer to go **on** bike.
- 11 Can you give me some information **about** hotels in this town?
- 12 I was arrested **by** two policemen and taken to the police station.
- 13 The buses here are very good. They're nearly always **on** time.
- 14 What would you like to drink **with** your meal?
- 15 We travelled from Paris to Moscow **on** train.
- 16 One of the most famous paintings in the world is the Mona Lisa **by** Leonardo da Vinci.

[217]

## EXERCISES

**A afraid of ... / good at ... etc.**  
**preposition + -ing (good at -ing etc.)**


- A afraid of ... / good at ... etc. (adjective + preposition)**
- Are you **afraid of** dogs?
  - Why are you **angry with** me? What have I done?
  - Are you **angry about** something (= something that happened last night)?
  - Ann is very **different from** her sister.
  - I'm **fed up with** my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
  - The room was **full of people**.
  - Are you **good at** maths?
  - Tina is very **bad at** writing letters.
  - I'm not **interested in** sport.
  - Sue is **married to** a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
  - It was **kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much.
  - (be) **nice/kind to** (somebody)
  - David is very friendly. He's always **very nice to** me.
  - I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm **sorry about** that.
  - I'm **sorry for** (doing something)
  - I'm **sorry for** not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)



- angry with somebody**  
**angry about something**
- different from ...**
- fed up with ...**
- full of ...**
- good at ... / bad at ...**
- interested in ...**
- married to ...**
- nice/kind of somebody to ...**
- (be) **nice/kind to** (somebody)
- sorry about** (something)
- sorry for** (doing something)

- Why are you **angry with** me? What have I done?
- Are you **angry about** something (= something that happened last night)?
- Ann is very **different from** her sister.
- I'm **fed up with** my job. I want to do something different. (= I've had enough of my job)
- The room was **full of people**.
- Are you **good at** maths?
- Tina is very **bad at** writing letters.
- I'm not **interested in** sport.
- Sue is **married to** a dentist. (= her husband is a dentist)
- It was **kind of** you to help us. Thank you very much.
- David is very friendly. He's always **very nice to** me.
- I'm afraid I can't help you. I'm **sorry about** that.
- I'm **sorry for** (doing something)
- I'm **sorry for** not phoning you yesterday. (or I'm sorry I didn't phone you)

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (**in/in etc.**).



- 1 He's afraid **of** dogs.
- 2 She's interested **in** science.
- 3 She's married **to** a footballer.
- 4 She's very good **in** languages.
- 5 He's fed up **with** the weather.
- 6 'Can I help you?' 'Oh, that's very kind **to** you.'

Put in the right preposition (**off/in/with etc.**).

- 1 I'm not interested **in** sport.
- 2 I'm not very good **at** sport.
- 3 I like Sarah. She's always very kind **to** me.
- 4 I'm sorry **for** your broken window. It was an accident.
- 5 He's very brave. He isn't afraid **of** anything.
- 6 It was very nice **for** Julia to let us stay in her flat.
- 7 Life today is very different **from** life 50 years ago.
- 8 Are you interested **in** politics?
- 9 Some people are afraid **of** spiders.
- 10 Chris was angry **about** what happened.
- 11 These boxes are very heavy. They are full **of** books.
- 12 I'm sorry **for** getting angry **with** you yesterday.

Complete the sentences.

- 1 I'm not very **good** **at telling** stories. (good / tell)
- 2 I wanted to go to the cinema but Paula wasn't **up** in the morning. (interested / go)
- 3 Sue isn't very **up** in the morning. (good / get)
- 4 Let's go! I'm **fed up** / wait
- 5 I'm **fed up** in the middle of the night. (sorry / wake)

Complete the sentences. Use **without -ing**.

- 1 (Tom left / he didn't say goodbye)
- 2 (Sue walked past me / she didn't speak)
- 3 (Don't do anything / ask me first)
- 4 (I went out / I didn't lock the door)
- 5 (I'm ..... I'm ..... I'm ..... I'm ..... I'm .....)

**B preposition + -ing**

After a preposition (at/with/for etc.), a verb ends in **-ing**:

- I'm not very good **at telling** stories.  
 Are you fed up with **doing** the same thing every day?  
 I'm sorry for **not phoning** you yesterday.  
 Mark is thinking of **buying** a new car.  
 Tom left **without saying** goodbye. (= he didn't say goodbye)  
 After **doing** the shopping, they went home.
- Tom left without saying goodbye.**
- Sue walked .....  
 Don't .....  
 I .....  
 you up in the middle of the night. (sorry / wake)

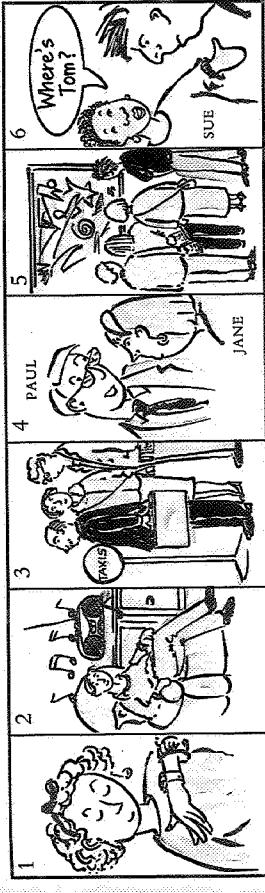
**Write sentences about yourself. Use the words in brackets (...).**

- 1 (interested) I'm **interested in** sport.  
 2 (afraid) I'm .....  
 3 (not very good) I'm not .....  
 4 (not interested) (fed up)

# listen to ... look at ... etc.

## (verb + preposition)

## EXERCISES

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences with a preposition (*to/for* etc.).

- A**
- ask (somebody) for ...      ◉ A man stopped me and asked me for money.
  - belong to ...      ◉ Does this book belong to you? (= Is this your book?)
  - happen to ...      ◉ I can't find my pen. What's happened to it?
  - listen to ...      ◉ Listen to this music. It's beautiful.
  - speak/talk to somebody about something      ◉ Did you talk to Paul about the problem?  
                                  ◉ (on the phone) Can I speak to Chris, please?
  - thank somebody for ...      ◉ Thank you very much for your help.
  - think about ... or think of ...      ◉ He never thinks about (or of) other people.  
                                  ◉ Mark is thinking of (or about) buying a new car.
  - wait for ...      ◉ Don't go yet. Wait for me.
  - write to somebody but (tele)phone somebody (no preposition)      ◉ I never get letters. Nobody writes to me.  
                                  ◉ I must phone my parents. (not 'phone to my parents')

- B**
- look at / look for / look after
- look at ...      ◉ She's looking at her watch.  
                          ◉ Look at these flowers! They're beautiful.  
                          ◉ Why are you looking at me like that?
  - look for ...      ◉ He's lost his key. He's looking for it.  
                          ◉ I'm looking for Sarah. Have you seen her?
  - look after ...      ◉ When Barbara is at work, a friend of hers looks after her children.  
                          ◉ Don't lose this book. Look after it. (= Keep it safe)

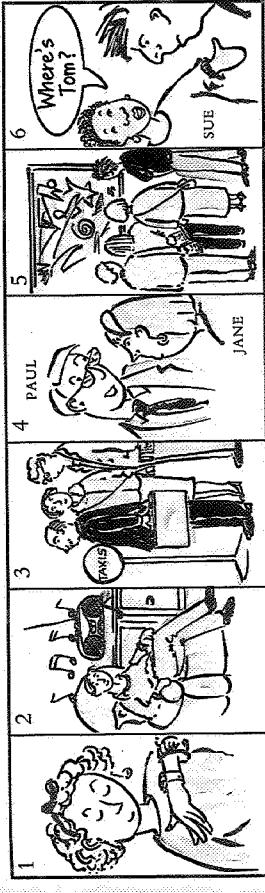
**C**

## depend

We say depend on ... :

- ◉ A: Do you like eating in restaurants?  
B: Sometimes. It depends on the restaurant. (not 'it depends of')
- You can say it depends what/where/how (etc.) with or without on:  
◉ A: Do you want to come out with us?  
B: It depends where you're going, or It depends on where ...  
For word order (It depends where you're going), see Unit 48.

wait ⇒ preposition + -ing ⇒



- 16.1**
- 1 She's looking at her watch.  
2 He's listening to the radio.  
3 They're waiting for a taxi.
  - 4 Paul is talking to Jane.  
5 They're looking for a picture.  
6 Sue is looking for Tom.
- 16.2**
- Complete the sentences with a preposition (*to/for/about* etc.) if necessary.
- 1 Thank you very much for your help.
  - 2 This is not my umbrella. It belongs to a friend of mine.
  - 3 (on the phone) Can I speak to Mr Davis, please?
  - 4 (on the phone) Thank you for phoning. Goodbye.
  - 5 What happened to Mary last night? Why didn't she come to the party?
  - 6 We're thinking about going to Australia next year.
  - 7 We asked the waiter for coffee but he brought us tea.
  - 8 'Do you like reading books?' 'It depends on the book.'
  - 9 John was talking but nobody was listening to what he was saying.
  - 10 We waited for Karen until 2 o'clock but she didn't come.
  - 11 'Are you writing a letter?' 'Yes, I'm writing to Diane.'
  - 12 Don't forget to phone for your mother this evening.
  - 13 He's alone all day. He never talks to anybody.
  - 14 'How much does it cost to stay at this hotel?' 'It depends on the type of room.'
  - 15 Catherine is thinking about changing her job.

Complete these sentences. Use *at/for/after*.

- 16.3**
- 1 I looked at the newspaper but I didn't read it carefully.
  - 2 When you are ill, you need somebody to look after you.
  - 3 Excuse me, I'm looking for Hill Street. Can you tell me where it is?
  - 4 Goodbye! Have a nice holiday and look after yourself.
  - 5 I'm going to take a photograph of you. Please look at the camera and smile.
  - 6 Barry is looking for a job. He wants to work in a hotel.

Answer these questions with **It depends** ...

- 16.4**
- 1 Do you want to go out with us?  
2 Do you like eating in restaurants?  
3 Do you enjoy watching TV?  
4 Can you do something for me?  
5 Are you going away this weekend?  
6 Can you lend me some money?

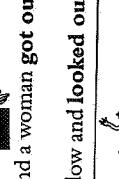
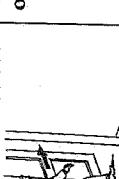
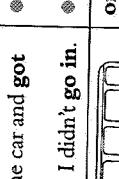
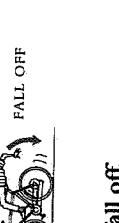
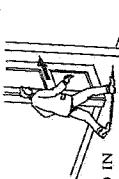
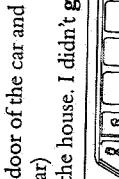
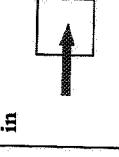
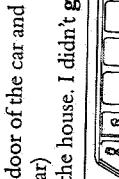
- 16.5**
- 1 It depends where you're going.  
2 It depends on the restaurant.  
3 It depends on the weather.  
4 It depends on the time of day.  
5 It depends on the place.  
6 It depends on the price.

# go in fall off run away etc.

## (phrasal verbs 1)

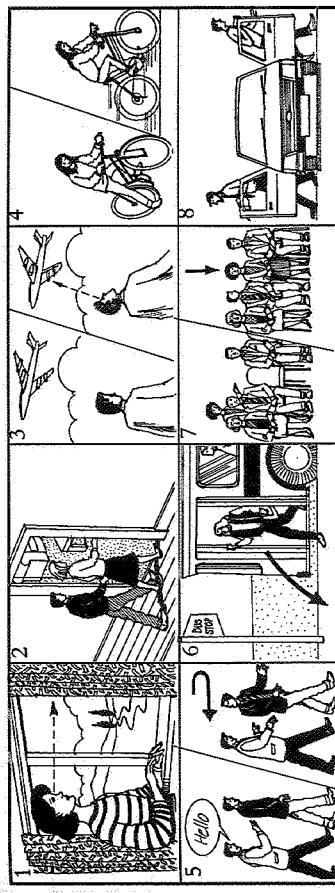
## EXERCISES

A phrasal verb is a verb (go/look/be etc.) + in/out/up/down etc.

<b>in</b>	 GO IN	 out	 LOOK OUT	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Ann opened the door of the car and <b>got in</b>. (= <b>into</b> the car)</li> <li>I waited outside the house. I didn't <b>go in</b>.</li> <li>The bus arrived and I <b>got on</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>up</b>	 STAND UP	 down	 FALL DOWN	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>He <b>stood up</b> and left the room.</li> <li>I usually <b>get up</b> early. (= get out of bed)</li> <li>We <b>looked up</b> at the stars.</li> <li>The thief <b>ran away</b>. (or ... <b>ran off</b>)</li> <li>Ann got into the car and <b>drove away</b>. (or ... <b>drove off</b>)</li> <li>Ann has <b>gone away</b> for a few days.</li> </ul>
<b>away or off</b>	 RUN AWAY	 back	 COME BACK	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>We went out for dinner and then <b>went back</b> to our hotel.</li> <li>Go away and don't <b>come back</b>!</li> <li>Ann is away. She'll <b>be back</b> on Monday.</li> </ul>
<b>over</b>	 CLIMB OVER	 TURN OVER	 LOOK ROUND	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Somebody shouted my name, so I <b>looked round</b> (or around).</li> <li>We went for a long walk. After six miles we <b>turned round</b> (or around) and went back.</li> <li>The wall wasn't very high, so we <b>climbed over</b>.</li> <li>Turn <b>over</b> and look at the next page.</li> </ul>

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the verbs in the list + in/out/up etc.

**got**    **got**    **looked**    **looked**    **rode**    **sat**    **turned**    **went**



1 I went to the window and **looked out**.

2 The door was open, so we **went** in.

3 He heard a noise behind her, so she **looked** back.

4 She got on her bike and **rode** away.

5 I said hello and he **turned** to me.

6 The bus stopped and she **went** on.

7 There was a free seat, so she **sat** down.

8 A car stopped and two men **got** out.

Complete the sentences. Use out/away/back etc.

1 What happened to the picture on the wall? 'It fell **down**.'

2 Please don't go **out**! Stay here with me.

3 She heard a noise behind her, so she **looked** back.

4 I'm going **away** now to do some shopping. I'll be back.

5 I'm feeling very tired. I'm going to lie **down** on the sofa.

6 When you have read this page, turn **over** and read the other side.

7 Jim is from Canada. He lives in London now but he wants to **go** back to Canada.

8 We haven't got a key to the house, so we can't **get** in.

9 I was very tired this morning. I couldn't **get** up on the 5th and coming

on the 24th.

Complete the sentences. Use a verb from the box + **on/off/up** etc. If necessary, put the verb into the correct form. All these phrasal verbs (**wake up** etc.) are in Appendix 6.

break	fall	give	slow	take
carry	get	hold	speak	wake

+ **on/off/up/down/over**

1 I went to sleep at 10 o'clock and **woke up** at eight o'clock the next morning.

2 'It's time to go,' **said** a minute. I'm not ready yet.' and finally stopped.

3 The train **came** to a stop.

4 I like flying but I'm always nervous when the plane **takes** off.

5 How was your exam? How did you **do** it?

6 It's difficult to hear you. Can you **say** that again?

7 This car isn't very good. It has **broken** down many times.

8 When babies try to walk, they sometimes **fall** over.

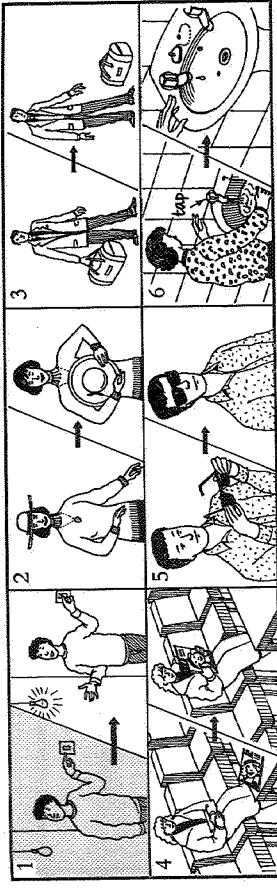
9 I told him to stop but he **ran** away.

10 I tried to find a job but I **failed**.

# put on your shoes (phrasal verbs 2)

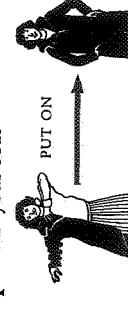
## EXERCISES

Look at the pictures. What did these people do?

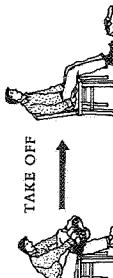


You can say:

**put on** your coat  
**or put your coat on**



**take off** your shoes  
**or take your shoes off**



**but it/them (pronouns) always go before on/off etc.:**

**put it on** (*not 'put on it'*)

**take them off** (*not 'take off them'*)

● I'm going to **take off** my shoes.  
(*or take my shoes off*)

● Your shoes are dirty. **Take them off.**

● It was cold, so I **put on** my coat.  
(*or I put my coat on*)

● Here's your coat. **Put it on.**

**but it/them (pronouns) always go before on/off etc.:**

**put it on** (*not 'put on it'*)

**take them off** (*not 'take off them'*)

● I'm going to **take off** my shoes.  
(*or take my shoes off*)

● Your shoes are dirty. **Take them off.**

● It was cold, so I **put on** my coat.  
(*or I put my coat on*)

● Here's your coat. **Put it on.**

**B Some more phrasal verbs + object:**

**turn on / turn off** (lights, machines, taps etc.):

● It was dark, so I **turned on** the light.  
(*or I turned the light on*)

● I don't want to watch this programme.  
You can **turn it off**.

**also switch on / switch off** (lights, machines etc.):

● I **switched on** the light and **switched off** the television.

**turn 3**

**ON**

**OFF**

**switch**

**pick up / put down:**

● Those are my keys on the floor. Can you **pick them up** for me?

● I stopped reading and **put my book down**.

(*or put down my book*)

**turn 4**

**ON**

**OFF**

**switch**

**bring back / take back / give back / put back:**

● You can take my umbrella but please **bring it back**.

● I **took** my new sweater **back** to the shop. It was too small for me.

● I've got Diane's keys. I must **give them back** to her.

● I read the letter and then **put it back** in the envelope.

**turn 5**

**TAKE**

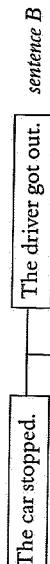
**PICK UP**

**PUT DOWN**

**BRING BACK**

**A and but or so because**

We use these words (*conjunctions*) to join two sentences. They make one longer sentence from two shorter sentences:



**B and/but/or**

*sentence A*      *sentence B*

We stayed at home **and** (we)\* watched television.  
My sister is married **and** (she)\* lives in London.  
He doesn't like her **but** she doesn't like him.  
I bought a newspaper **but** it's a nice house **or** Do you want to go out **or** are you too tired?

\* It is not necessary to repeat 'we' and 'she'.

Study these sentences. We use **and** between the last two things:

• I got home, had something to eat, sat down in an armchair **and** fell asleep.

• Ann is at work, Sue has gone shopping **and** Chris is playing football.

**C so (the result of something)**

*sentence A*      *sentence B*  
It was very hot, **so** I opened the window.  
The water wasn't clean, **so** we didn't go swimming.  
They like films, **so** they often go to the cinema.

**D because (the reason for something)**

*sentence A*      *sentence B*  
I opened the window **because** it was very hot.  
We didn't go swimming **because** the water wasn't clean.  
Lisa is hungry **because** she didn't have breakfast.

**E Because is also possible at the beginning:**

• **Because the water wasn't clean**, we didn't go swimming.

In these examples there is more than one conjunction:

- It was late **and** I was tired, **so** I went to bed.
- I always enjoy visiting London, **but** I wouldn't like to live there **because** it's too big.

**EXERCISES**

Write sentences. Choose from the boxes and use **and/but/or**.

I stayed at home.
I bought a newspaper.
I went to the window.
I wanted to phone you.
I jumped into the river.
I usually drive to work.
Do you want me to come with you?

1. **I stayed at home and watched television.**  
2. **I bought a newspaper but I didn't read it.**

3. I ...

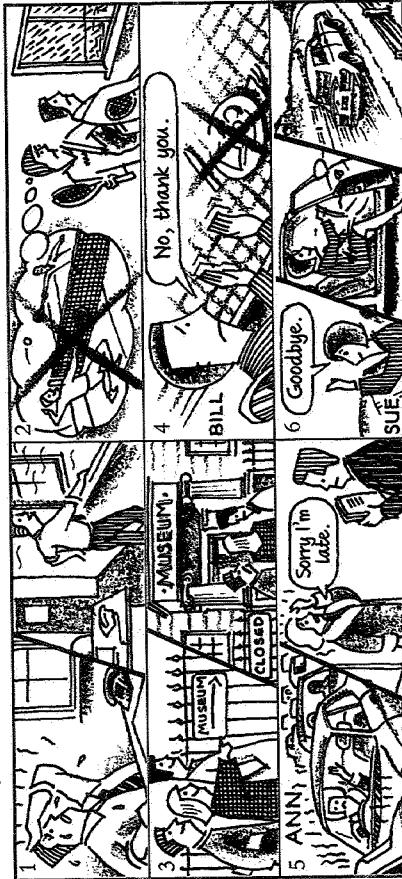
4. I ...

5. I ...

6. I ...

7. I ...

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use **and/but/so/because**.



1. It was very hot, **so** he opened the window.

2. They didn't play tennis **because** ...

3. They went to the museum **but** ...

4. Bill wasn't hungry, **so** ...

5. Ann was late **because** ...

6. Sue said ...

**109.3**

Write sentences about what you did yesterday. Use **and/but/etc.**

1. (and) In the evening I stayed at home **and** studied.  
2. (because) I went to bed **very early because I was tired.**  
3. (but)  
4. (and)  
5. (so)  
6. (because)

## EXERCISES

**110.1** Make sentences beginning with **when**. Choose from the boxes.

**A When I went out, it was raining.**

This sentence has two parts:

**part A** + **part B**  
**when I went out**      **it was raining**

You can begin with part A or part B:

• **When I went out**, it was raining.

• **It was raining** when I went out.

We write a comma (,) if part A (**When ...**) is before part B:

• **When you're tired, don't drive.**

• **Don't drive when you're tired.**

• **Ann was very happy when she passed her exam.**

• **When Ann passed her exam, she was very happy.**

We do the same in sentences with **before/while/after**:

• **Always look both ways before you cross the road.**

• **Before you cross the road, always look both ways.**

• **While I was waiting for the bus, it began to rain.**

• **It began to rain while I was waiting for the bus.**

• **He never played football again after he broke his leg.**

• **After he broke his leg, he never played football again.**



Next week Jill is going to New York. She has a friend, Barbara, who lives in New York but Barbara is also going away – to Mexico. So they won't meet in New York.

Barbara **will be** in Mexico **when** Jill **is** in New York.

The time is **future (next week)** but we say:

... **when** Jill **is** in New York. (*not* 'when Jill **will be**' )  
(*not* 'When I **will get home**')

I can't talk to you now. I'll talk to you later **when** I have more time.

We do the same after **before/while/after/until**:

• Please close the window **before** you **go out**. (*not* 'before you **will go**')

• Julia is going to live in our flat **while** we are away. (*not* 'while we **will be**')

• I'll stay here **until** you **come back**. (*not* 'until you **will come back**')

We do the same after **you go out**:

1. **Please close the window before you go out** ... ?

2. **What are you going to do when** ... ?

3. **When I have more time,** ...

4. **I'll wait for you while** ...

5. **When I start my new job,** ...

6. **Will you be here when** ... ?

**110.2** Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

Complete the sentences. Choose from the box.

I switched off the TV  
I always go to the same place  
there were no rooms  
it was raining  
there was no answer  
I like to watch TV

I went out  
I'm tired  
I phoned her  
+ I go on holiday  
the programme ended  
I arrived at the hotel

When +

When I went out, it was raining...

1. When I went out, it was raining...

2. ...

3. ...

4. ...

5. ...

6. ...

1. They looked both ways **before** they crossed the road...

2. They were very surprised ...

3. After they got married, ...

4. The letter arrived ...

5. Where did they live ...?

6. While they were asleep, ...

7. When I told them the news, ...

110.3 Which is right? Choose the correct form.

1. I **stay / I'll stay** here until you come / **you'll come** back. **I'll stay** and **you come** are right.

2. I'm going to bed when I **finish / I'll finish** my work.

3. We must do something before it's / it will be too late.

4. Julia is going away soon. I'm / I'll be very sad when she leaves / she'll leave.

5. Don't go out yet. Wait until the rain stops / will stop.

6. We come / We'll come and visit you when we're / we'll be in England again.

7. When I **come / I'll come** to see you tomorrow, I bring / I'll bring the photographs.

8. I'm going to Paris next week. I hope to see some friends of mine while I'm / I'll be there.

9. 'Don't forget to give me your address.' 'OK, I give / I'll give it to you before I go / I'll go.'

Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1. Can you close the window before **you go out** ... ?

2. What are you going to do when ... ?

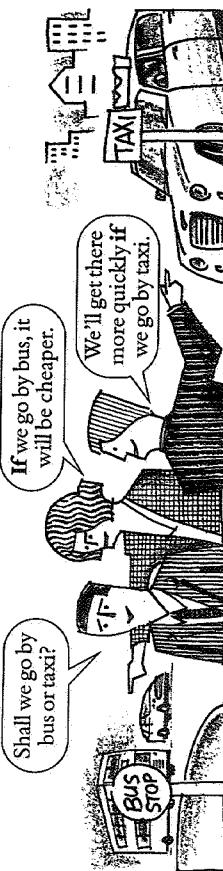
3. When I have more time, ...

4. I'll wait for you while ...

5. When I start my new job, ...

6. Will you be here when ... ?



**If we go ... If you see ... etc.****EXERCISES**Make sentences beginning with **If**. Choose from the boxes.

If can be at the beginning of a sentence or in the middle:

**If ... , ... (if at the beginning)****If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.****If we don't hurry, you'll miss the train.****If you're hungry, have something to eat.****If the phone rings, can you answer it, please?****... if ... (if in the middle)****It will be cheaper if we go by bus.****You'll miss the train if we don't hurry.****I'm going to the concert if I can get a ticket.****Do you mind if I use your phone? (= Is it OK if I use it?)**In conversation, we often use the **if**-part of the sentence alone:  
◎ 'Are you going to the concert?' 'Yes, if I can get a ticket.'**B If you see Ann tomorrow ... etc.**After **if**, we use the present (*'not' 'will'*). We say: **if you see ... (not 'if you will see')**:◎ If you **see** Ann tomorrow, can you ask her to phone me?◎ If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (*'not' 'if I will be'*)◎ What shall we do **if it rains?** (*'not' 'if it will rain'*)◎ If I **don't feel** well tomorrow, I'll stay at home.**C if and when**If I **go out** = it is possible that I **will** go out, but I'm not sure:

◎ A: Are you going out later?

◎ B: Perhaps. **If I go out**, I'll close the window.**When** I **go out** = I'm going out (for sure):

◎ A: Are you going out later?

◎ B: Yes, I am. **When I go out**, I'll close the window.◎ When I **get home** this evening, I'm going to have a shower.◎ If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me. (*'not' 'When I'm late'*)◎ We're going to play tennis **if it doesn't rain**. (*'not' 'when it doesn't rain'*)when ⇒ **[if]** if I had / if we went ... etc. ⇒ **[if]**

<b>If +</b>	<b>you don't hurry</b> you pass the exam you fail the exam <b>If +</b> you don't want this magazine you want those pictures you're busy now you're hungry you need money	<b>we can have lunch now</b> you can have them I can lend you some you'll get a certificate <b>you'll be late</b> I'll throw it away we can talk later you can do it again
-------------	--	---

1 **If ... don't ... Harry, you'll be late.**

2 If you pass .....

3 If .....

4 .....

5 .....

6 .....

7 .....

8 .....

Which is right?

1 If I'm / **4** late this evening, don't wait for me. I'm is right

2 Will you write to me if I give / I'll give you my address?

3 If there is / **will be** a fire, the alarm will ring.

4 If I don't see you tomorrow morning, I phone / I'll phone you in the evening.

5 I'm / **I'll** be surprised if Martin and Julia get / will get married.

6 Do you go / Will you go to the party if they invite / they'll invite you?

111.2 Use your own ideas to complete these sentences.

1 I'm going to the concert if **I can get a ticket.**2 If you don't hurry **you'll miss the train.**3 I don't want to go swimming if **it's raining.**4 If you go to bed early tonight, **you'll sleep well.**5 Turn the television off if **you don't like it.**6 Tina won't pass her exams if **she doesn't study.**7 If I have time tomorrow, **I'll go to the beach.**8 We can go to the beach tomorrow if **the weather is good.**111.3 Put in **if** or **when**.

1 If I'm late this evening, don't wait for me.

2 I'm going to do some shopping now. .... I come back, we can have lunch.

3 I'm thinking of going to see Tim. .... I go, will you come with me?

4 .... you don't want to go out tonight, we can stay at home.

5 Do you mind .... I close the window?

6 John is still at school. .... he leaves school, he wants to go to university.

7 Shall we have a picnic tomorrow .... the weather is good?

8 We're going to Madrid next week. We haven't got anywhere to stay — we hope to find a hotel .... we arrive. I don't know what we'll do .... we don't find anywhere.

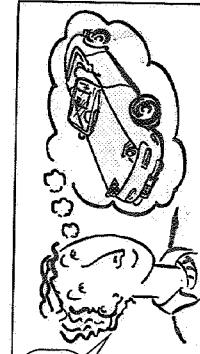


**If I had ... If we went ... etc.****EXERCISES**

Complete the sentences.

A Dan likes fast cars but he doesn't have one.  
He doesn't have enough money.  
**If he had** the money, he **would buy** a fast car.

Usually **had** is *past*, but in this sentence **had** is *not past*. **If he had** the money = if he had the money *now* (but he *doesn't have* it).



I	had/knew/lived/went (etc.) ...	I	wouldn't	buy ...
If	you didn't have/know/go (etc.) ...	you	be ...	be ...
it	was/were ...	it	have ...	have ...
they etc.	could ...	they etc.	could(n't)	go ... etc.

You can say:

• **If he had** the money, he would buy a car. (**If ... at the beginning**)  
or **If he had** the money. (... if ... in the middle)

**I'd / she'd / they'd etc.** = **I would / she would / they would etc.**:

I don't know the answer. **If I knew** the answer, **I'd tell** you.

It's raining, so we're not going out. **We'd get wet** if we **went** out.

Jane lives in a city. She likes cities. She **wouldn't be happy** if she **lived** in the country.

If you **didn't have** a job, what **would you do?** (but you **have** a job)

I'm sorry I can't help you. **I'd help** you if I **could**. (but I **can't**)

• If we **had** a car, we **could** travel more. (but we **haven't got** a car, so we **can't** travel much)

**B If (I) was/were ...**

You can say: **if (I/he/she/it) was or were ...** :

- It's cold. **If I were** you, **I'd put** your coat on. (or **If I was** you ...)
- It's not a very nice place. **I wouldn't go** there if I **was** you. (or ... if I **were** you)
- **It would be** nice if the weather **were** (or **was**) better.

Complete the sentences. Choose from the box and put the verb in the correct form.



we (have) a bigger house	I (watch) it	it (be) a bit cheaper
we (buy) a bigger house	every day (be) the same	I (be) bored
we (have) some pictures on the wall	the air (be) cleaner	

112.3

1 I'd buy that jacket if <b>it was</b> a <b>bit cheaper</b> .	I (watch) it	it (be) a bit cheaper
2 If there was a good film on TV tonight,	every day (be) the same	I (be) bored
3 This room would be nicer if	the air (be) cleaner	
4 If there wasn't so much traffic,		
5 Life would be boring if		
6 If I had nothing to do,		
7 We could invite all our friends to stay if		
8 If we had more money,		

112.4

Complete the sentences. Use your own ideas.

1 I'd go to the dentist if <b>I had a toothache</b> .	• I must go and see Ann.
(= I don't have time today so I will <b>not go</b> )	• <b>If I had</b> time, I <b>would go</b> today.
• I like that jacket but it's very expensive.	• I'd buy it if it <b>isn't</b> so expensive.
I'll <b>buy</b> it if it <b>isn't</b> too expensive.	(= it is expensive, so I'm <b>not</b> going to buy it)
• I'll <b>help</b> you if I <b>can</b> . (= perhaps I can help)	• I'd <b>help</b> you if I <b>could</b> but I can't.

# a person who ... a thing that/which ...

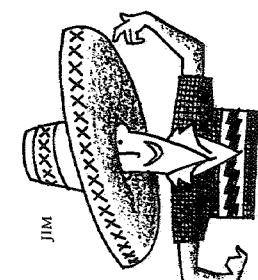
## (relative clauses 1)



**A**

1 met a woman. She can speak six languages.  
 [----- 2 sentences -----]  
**she → who**

1 sentence -----  
 I met a woman **who** can speak six languages.



**B**

Jim was wearing a hat. It was too big for him.  
 [----- 2 sentences -----]  
**it → that or which**

1 sentence -----  
 Jim was wearing **a hat** **that** was too big for him.  
 or  
 Jim was wearing **a hat** **which** was too big for him.

**who** is for people (*not* things):

A thief is a person	<b>who</b> steals things.	
Do you know anybody The man The people	who can play the piano? who phoned who work in the office	didn't give his name. are very friendly.

**that** is for things or people:

An aeroplane is a <b>machine</b>	<b>that</b> flies.	
Emma lives in a <b>house</b>	<b>that</b> is 500 years old.	
The people	<b>that</b> work in the office	are very friendly.

You can use **that** for people, but **who** is more usual.

**which** is for things (*not* people):

An aeroplane is a <b>machine</b>	<b>which</b> flies. ( <i>not</i> 'a machine <b>who</b> ...')
Emma lives in a <b>house</b>	<b>which</b> is 500 years old.

Do not use **which** for people:

- Do you remember the **woman who** was playing the piano at the party?  
 (*not* 'the woman **which** ...')

## EXERCISES

Choose from the boxes and write sentences: **A ... is a person who ...** Use a dictionary if necessary.

at <b>theif</b> a butcher a musician a patient	a dentist a fool a genius a liar	is ill in hospital steals things is very stupid sells meat
---	---	---

1. **A thief is a person who steals things.**

2. A butcher is a person

3. A musician

4.

5.

6.

7.

8.

Make one sentence from two.

1. (A man phoned. He didn't give his name.)

The man **who phoned** **didn't give his name**...

2. (A woman opened the door. She was wearing a yellow dress.)

The woman **who opened the door** **was wearing a yellow dress**.

3. (Some students took the exam. Most of them passed.)

Most of the students **who took the exam** **passed**.

4. (A policeman stopped our car. He wasn't very friendly.)

The **policeman** **who stopped our car** **wasn't very friendly**.

Put in **who** or **which**.

1. I met a woman **who** can speak six languages.

2. What's the name of the woman **who** lives next door?

3. What's the name of the river **which** flows through the town?

4. Where is the picture **which** was hanging on the wall?

5. Do you know anybody **who** wants to buy a car?

6. You always ask questions **which** are difficult to answer.

7. I have a friend **who** is very good at repairing cars.

8. I think everybody **who** went to the party enjoyed it very much.

9. Why does he always wear clothes **which** are too small for him?

Right or wrong? Correct the mistakes.

1. A thief is a person **which** steals things

2. An aeroplane is a machine that flies.

3. A coffee maker is a machine who makes coffee.

4. Have you seen the money that was on the table?

5. I don't like people which never stop talking.

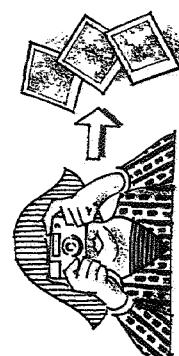
6. I know somebody that can help you.

7. I know somebody who works in that shop.

8. Correct the sentences who are wrong.

# the people we met the hotel you stayed at

## (relative clauses 2)



A

The man is carrying a bag.	2 sentences
It's very heavy.	

The bag (that) he is carrying is very heavy.	1 sentence
I like the	

Ann took some photographs.	2 sentences
Have you seen them?	

Have you seen the photographs (that) Ann took?	1 sentence
I like the	

You can say:

- The bag **that** he is carrying ... or The bag he is carrying ... (*with or without that*)
- ... the photographs **that** Ann took? or ... the photographs Ann took?

You do not need **that/who/which** when it is the **object**:

subject	verb	object	→ the bag (that) the man was carrying
The man	was carrying	a bag	→ the photographs (that) Ann took
Ann	took	some photographs	→ the book (that) you wanted
You	wanted	the book	→ the people (who) we met
We	met	some people	

- Did you find the **book** you wanted? (or ... the book that you wanted?)
- The people we met were very nice. (or The people **who** we met ...)
- Everything I said was true. (or Everything **that** I said ...)

Note that we say:

- The film we saw was very good. (not "The film we saw **it** was ...")

B Sometimes there is a **preposition (to/in/at etc.)** after the verb:

- Jill is **talking** to a man. → Do you know the man Jill is talking **to**?
- We stayed **at** a hotel. → The hotel we stayed **at** was near the station.
- I told you **about** some books. → These are the books I told you **about**.

Note that we say:

- ... the books I told you **about** (not 'the books I told you about **them**' )
- You can say: (a place) **where** ... :
- **The hotel** where we stayed was near the station. (= The hotel we stayed **at** ...)

- 1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:  
Did you like **the hotel**, **where** you **stayed**? .....
- 2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:  
What's the name of the restaurant .....
- 3 Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:  
Do you like .....
- 4 Richard works in a factory. You ask him:  
How big .....

C You must use **who/that/which** when it is the **subject** (⇒ Unit 113):
 

- I met a woman who can speak six languages. (**who** is the **subject**)
- Jim was wearing a hat that was too big for him. (**that** is the **subject**)

## EXERCISES

## 114.1 Make one sentence from two.

- 1 (Ann took some photographs. Have you seen them?)  
Have you seen **the photographs**. Ann took ? .....
- 2 (You gave me a pen. I've lost it.)  
I've lost the
- 3 (Sue is wearing a jacket. I like it.)  
I like the
- 4 (I gave you some flowers. Where are they?)  
Where are the
- 5 (He told us a story. I didn't believe it.)  
I .....
- 6 (You bought some oranges. How much were they?)  
How .....

## 114.2 Make one sentence from two.

- 1 (I was carrying a bag. It was very heavy.)  
The **bag** I **was** carrying **was** very **heavy** .....
- 2 (You cooked a meal. It was excellent.)  
The .....
- 3 (I'm wearing shoes. They aren't very comfortable.)  
The shoes .....
- 4 (We invited some people to dinner. They didn't come.)  
The .....

## 114.3

## Complete the sentences. Use the information in the box.

I looked at a map	they live in a house
I was sitting on a chair	we were waiting for some keys
you stayed <b>at</b> a hotel	Linda is dancing with a man
	you were looking for some keys
	you spoke to some people

- 1 What's the name of **the hotel** you **stayed** **at** ? .....
- 2 Who are the people .....
- 3 Did you find the .....
- 4 The .....
- 5 The .....
- 6 I fell off .....
- 7 .....
- 8 Who is .....

114.4 Read the situations and complete the questions. Use ... **where** ... .

- 1 John stayed at a hotel. You ask him:  
Did you like **the hotel**, **where** you **stayed**? .....
- 2 Sue had dinner in a restaurant. You ask her:  
What's the name of the restaurant .....
- 3 Sarah lives in a village. You ask her:  
Do you like .....
- 4 Richard works in a factory. You ask him:  
How big .....

# Appendix 1 Active and passive

1.1 Present and past:

	active	passive
<i>present simple</i>	We <b>make</b> butter from milk. Somebody <b>cleans</b> these rooms every day. People never <b>invite</b> me to parties. <b>How do they make butter?</b>	Butter is <b>made</b> from milk. These rooms are <b>cleaned</b> every day. I am never <b>invited</b> to parties. <b>How is butter made?</b>
<i>past simple</i>	Somebody <b>stole</b> my car last week. Somebody <b>stole</b> my keys yesterday. They <b>didn't invite</b> me to the party. <b>When did they build these houses?</b>	My car was <b>stolen</b> last week. My keys were <b>stolen</b> yesterday. I <b>wasn't invited</b> to the party. <b>When were these houses built?</b>

<i>present continuous</i>	They are <b>building</b> a new airport at the moment. (= it isn't finished) They are <b>building</b> some new houses near the river.	A new airport is <b>being built</b> at the moment. Some new houses are <b>being built</b> near the river.
<i>past continuous</i>	When I was here a few years ago, they <b>were building</b> a new airport. (= it wasn't finished at that time)	When I was here a few years ago, a new airport <b>was being built</b> .

<i>present perfect</i>	Look! They <b>have painted</b> the door. These shirts are clean. Somebody <b>has washed</b> them.	Look! The door <b>has been painted</b> . These shirts are clean. They <b>have been washed</b> .
<i>past perfect</i>	Somebody <b>had stolen</b> my car.	My car <b>has been stolen</b> .

1.2 Will / can / must / have to etc.

	active	passive
	Somebody <b>will clean</b> the office tomorrow. Somebody <b>must clean</b> the office. I think they'll <b>invite</b> you to the party. They can't <b>repair</b> my watch. You should <b>wash</b> this sweater by hand. They are going to <b>build</b> a new airport. Somebody <b>has to wash</b> these clothes. They had <b>to take</b> the injured man to hospital.	The office <b>will be cleaned</b> tomorrow. The office <b>must be cleaned</b> . I think you'll <b>be invited</b> to the party. My watch can't <b>be repaired</b> . This sweater should <b>be washed</b> by hand. A new airport is going <b>to be built</b> . These clothes <b>have to be washed</b> . The injured man <b>had to be taken</b> to hospital.

## Appendix 2 List of irregular verbs (⇒ Unit 24)

infinitive	past simple	past participle
be	was/were	been
beat	beat	beaten
become	became	become
begin	began	begun
bite	bited	bitten
blow	blew	blown
break	broke	broken
bring	brought	brought
build	built	built
buy	bought	bought
catch	caught	caught
choose	chose	chosen
come	came	come
cost	cost	cost
cut	cut	cut
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk
drive	drove	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen
feel	felt	felt
fight	fought	fought
find	found	found
fly	flew	flogen
forget	forgot	forgotten
get	got	got
give	gave	given
go	went	went
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung	hung
have	had	had
hear	heard	heard
hide	hid	hidden
hit	hit	hit
hold	held	held
hurt	hurt	hurt
keep	kept	kept
know	knew	known
leave	left	left
lend	lent	lent

The following verbs can be regular (-ed) or irregular (-t):

infinitive	past simple / past participle
burn	burned or burnt
dream	dreamed or dreamt

## Appendix 3 Irregular verbs in groups

infinitive	past simple	past participle
let	let	let
lie	lay	lain
light	lit	lit
lose	lost	lost
make	made	made
mean	meant	meant
meet	met	met
pay	paid	paid
put	put	put
read	/red/*	/red/*
ride	rode	ridden
ring	rang	rung
rise	rose	risen
run	ran	run
say	said	said
see	saw	seen
sell	sold	sold
send	sent	sent
shine	shone	shone
shoot	shot	shot
show	showed	shown
shut	shut	shut
sing	sang	sung
sit	sat	sat
sleep	slept	slept
speak	spoke	spoken
spend	spent	spent
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole	stolen
swim	swam	swum
take	took	taken
teach	taught	taught
tear	tore	torn
tell	told	told
think	thought	thought
throw	threw	thrown
understand	understood	understood
wake	woke	woken
wear	wore	worn
win	won	won
write	wrote	written

\* pronunciation

1	2	3	4	5	6
cost → cost cut → cut hit → hit hurt → hurt keep → kept know → knew leave → left lend → lent	lend → lent send → sent spend → spent build → built bought → bought caught → caught chosen → chosen come → come	lose → lost shoot → shot get → got light → lit sit → sat	blow → blew grow → grew know → knew throw → threw draw → drew show → showed	begin → began drink → drank swim → swam ring → rang sing → sang run → ran	pay → paid make → made stand → stood understand → understood
choose → chose come → came leave → left lend → lent	cost → cost cut → cut hit → hit hurt → hurt keep → kept know → knew leave → left lend → lent	cost → cost cut → cut hit → hit hurt → hurt keep → kept know → knew leave → left lend → lent	cost → cost cut → cut hit → hit hurt → hurt keep → kept know → knew leave → left lend → lent	cost → cost cut → cut hit → hit hurt → hurt keep → kept know → knew leave → left lend → lent	choose → chose come → came leave → left lend → lent
past simple / past participle are the same:	past simple / past participle are different:	past simple / past participle are the same:	past simple / past participle are different:	past simple / past participle are the same:	past simple / past participle are different:

1	2	3	4	5	6
break → broke choose → chose speak → spoke steal → stole wake → woke	drive → drove ride → rode rise → rose write → wrote	heat → beat bite → bit hide → hid	eat → ate fall → fell forget → forgot give → gave see → saw take → took	began → began drank → drank swam → swam rang → rang sang → sang ran → ran	paid → made written → understood
choose → chose come → came leave → left lend → lent	cost → cost cut → cut hit → hit hurt → hurt keep → kept know → knew leave → left lend → lent	cost → cost cut → cut hit → hit hurt → hurt keep → kept know → knew leave → left lend → lent	cost → cost cut → cut hit → hit hurt → hurt keep → kept know → knew leave → left lend → lent	begin → began drank → drank swam → swam rang → rang sang → sang ran → ran	come → became become → became
past simple / past participle are the same:	past simple / past participle are different:	past simple / past participle are the same:	past simple / past participle are different:	past simple / past participle are the same:	past simple / past participle are different:

## Appendix 4 : Short forms (he's / I'd / don't etc.)

### 4.1 Negative short forms (⇒ Unit 42):

isn't (= is not)	don't (= do not)	can't (= cannot)
aren't (= are not)	doesn't (= does not)	couldn't (= could not)
wasn't (= was not)	didn't (= did not)	won't (= will not)
weren't (= were not)		wouldn't (= would not)
hasn't (= has not)		shouldn't (= should not)
haven't (= have not)		mustn't (= must not)
hadn't (= had not)		needn't (= need not)

When we write short forms, we use *'(an apostrophe):*

I ~~am~~ → I'm      he ~~is~~ → he's      you ~~have~~ → you've

she ~~will~~ → she'll

**4.2** We use these forms with I/he/she etc.:

am → 'm	I'm	he's	she's	it's	we're	you're	they're
is → 's					we've	you've	they've
are → 're							
have → 've	I've						
has → 's		he's	she's	it's			
had → 'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd
will → 'll	I'll	he'll	she'll		we'll	you'll	they'll
would → 'd	I'd	he'd	she'd		we'd	you'd	they'd

- I've got some new shoes.
- We'll probably go out this evening.
- It's 10 o'clock. You're late again.

**'s = is or has:**

- She's going out this evening. (she's going = she is going)
- She's gone out. (she's gone = she has gone)

**d = would or had:**

- A: What would you like to eat?  
B: I'd like a salad, please. (I'd like = I would like)
- I told the police that I'd lost my passport. (I'd lost = I had lost)
- Do *not* use 'm's/d's etc. at the end of a sentence (⇒ Unit 39):
- 'Are you tired?'    'Yes, I am.' (not 'Yes, I'm.')

**4.3** We use short forms with I/you/he/she etc. but you can use short forms (especially 's) with other words too:

- Who's your favourite singer? (= who is)
- What's the time? (= what is)
- There's a big tree in the garden. (= there is)
- My sister's working in London. (= my sister is working)
- Paul's gone out. (= Paul has gone out)
- What colour's your car? (= What colour is your car?)

### 4.4

### 4.5

### 4.6

- We went to her house but she **wasn't** at home.
- Where's David?'    'I **don't** know. I **haven't** seen him.'
- You work all the time. You **shouldn't** work so hard.
- I **won't** be here tomorrow. (= I will not)

- Compare:
- Ann's camera was very expensive. (Ann's camera = **her** camera)
  - Ann's camera was very good. (Ann's = **Ann is**)
  - Ann's a very good photographer. (Ann's = **Ann**)
  - Ann's got a new camera. (Ann's got = **Ann has got**)

## Appendix 5 Spelling

### 5.3 -ing

Words + -s and -es (birds/watches etc.)

<i>noun + s</i> (plural) (⇒ Unit 65)	mistake → mistakes	hotel → hotels
<i>bird</i> → <b>birds</b>		
<i>verb + s</i> (he/she/it-s) (⇒ Unit 5)	live → lives	remember → remembers

*but*

+ <b>es</b> after -s / -sh / -ch / -x:	
bus → <b>buses</b>	pass → <b>passes</b>
dish → <b>dishes</b>	wash → <b>washes</b>
watch → <b>watches</b>	teach → <b>teaches</b>
box → <b>boxes</b>	

*also*

potato → <b>potatoes</b>	tomato → <b>tomatoes</b>
do → <b>does</b>	go → <b>goes</b>

-f / -fe → -ves:	knife → <b>knives</b>
shelf → <b>shelves</b>	but roof → <b>roofs</b>

Words ending in -y (baby → babies / study → studied etc.)

-y → -ies:

study → <b>studies</b> ( <i>not 'studys'</i> )	family → <b>families</b> ( <i>not 'familys'</i> )
story → <b>stories</b>	baby → <b>babies</b>
try → <b>tries</b>	fly → <b>flies</b>

-y → -ied (⇒ Unit 11):

study → <b>studied</b> ( <i>not 'studied'</i> )	marry → <b>married</b>
try → <b>tried</b>	copy → <b>copied</b>

-y → -ier/-iest (⇒ Units 86 and 89):

easy → <b>easier/easiest</b> ( <i>not 'easyer/easyest'</i> )	lucky → <b>luckier/luckiest</b>
happy → <b>happier/happiest</b>	funny → <b>funnier/funniest</b>
heavy → <b>heavier/heaviest</b>	

-y → -ily (⇒ Unit 85):

easy → <b>easily</b> ( <i>not 'easly'</i> )	lucky → <b>luckily</b>
happy → <b>happily</b>	heavy → <b>heavily</b>

Y does not change to i if the ending is -ay/-ey/-oy/-uy:  
holiday → **holidays** (*not 'holidais'*)  
enjoy → **enjoys/enjoyed**

*but*

say → <b>said</b>	pay → <b>paid</b> ( <i>irregular verbs</i> )
-------------------	--

### 5.4 Vowels and consonants:

Verbs that end in -e (make/write/drive etc.) → -**ing**:  
make → **making** write → **writing** come → **coming** dance → **dancing**

Verbs that end in -ie → -**ying**:  
lie → **lying** die → **dying** tie → **tying**

stop → **stopped**, big → **bigger** etc.

Vowels and consonants:

*Vowel letters:* a e i o u  
*Consonant letters:* b c d f g k l m n p r s t w y

Sometimes a word ends in a vowel + a consonant. For example: stop big, get. Before -ing/-ed/-er/-est, the consonant at the end (-p/-g/-t etc.) is doubled' (-pp/-gg/-tt etc.). For example:

V = vowel	C = consonant
stop	S T O P
run	R U N
get	G E T
swim	S W I M
big	B I G
hot	H O T
thin	T H I N
	M N N
	t t t
	mm mm mm
	gg gg gg
	tt tt tt
	nn nn nn

This does *not* happen

(1) if the word ends in *two* consonant letters (C + C):

C+C	C+C
help	H E L P
work	W O R K
fast	F A S T
	E A P

(2) if the word ends in two vowel letters + a consonant letter (V + V + C):

V+V+C	V+V+C
need	N E E D
wait	W A I T
cheap	C H E A P
	E D
	A T
	W I T
	C H E A P

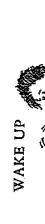
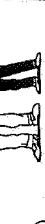
(3) in longer words (two syllables or more) if the last part of the word is *not* stressed:

stress	stress
happen	H A P-P-e-n
visit	V I S-P-e-n
remember	re-ME-M-b-er
<i>but</i>	prefer
	be-GIN

(4) if the word ends in -y or -w. (At the end of words, y and w are not consonants, few/fewer/fewest)

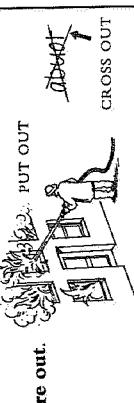
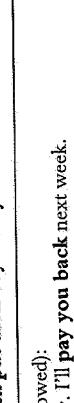
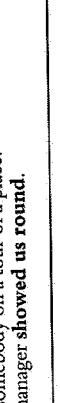
## Appendix 6 Phrasal verbs (look out / take off etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs (⇒ Unit 107).

<b>out</b>	<b>look out / watch out</b> = be careful: • Look out! There's a car coming!	
<b>on</b>	<b>come on</b> = be quick / hurry: • Come on! Everybody is waiting for you.	
	<b>hold on</b> = wait: • Can you hold on a minute? (= can you wait?)	
	<b>carry on</b> = continue: • Don't stop working. Carry on. (= continue working) • A: Excuse me, where is the station, please? B: Carry on along this road and turn right at the lights. (= Continue along ...)	
	<b>also go on / walk on / drive on etc.</b> = continue going etc.: • Don't stop here. Drive on. • How are you getting on in your new job? (= are you doing OK?)	
<b>off</b>	<b>take off</b> = leave the ground (for planes): • The plane took off 20 minutes late but landed on time.	
<b>up</b>	<b>wake up</b> = stop sleeping: • I often wake up in the middle of the night.	
	<b>speak up</b> = speak more loudly: • I can't hear you. Can you speak up a bit?	
	<b>hurry up</b> = do something more quickly: • Hurry up! We haven't got much time.	
	<b>wash up</b> = wash the plates etc. after a meal: • Do you want me to wash up? • (or ... to do the washing-up?)	
	<b>grow up</b> = become an adult: • What does your son want to do when he grows up?	
	<b>give up</b> = stop trying: • I know it's difficult but don't give up. (= don't stop trying)	
<b>down</b>	<b>slow down</b> = go more slowly: • You're driving too fast. Slow down.	
	<b>break down</b> = stop working (for cars / machines etc.): • Sue was very late because her car broke down.	
<b>over</b>	<b>fall over</b> = lose your balance: • I fell over because my shoes were too big for me.	

## Appendix 7 Phrasal verbs + object (fill in a form / put out a fire etc.)

This is a list of some important phrasal verbs + object (⇒ Unit 108).

<b>in</b>	<b>fill in</b> (a form) = complete a form: • Can you fill in this form, please?	
<b>out</b>	<b>put out</b> (a fire / a cigarette): • The fire brigade arrived and put the fire out. <b>cross out</b> (a mistake / a word etc.): • If you make a mistake, cross it out.	
<b>on</b>	<b>try on</b> (clothes) = put on clothes to see if they fit you: • (in a shop) This is a nice jacket. Shall I try it on?	
<b>up</b>	<b>give up</b> = stop something that you do: • Tom gave up smoking five years ago. (= he stopped smoking) • Are you still learning Italian? 'No, I gave it up.'	
	<b>ring up</b> = (telephone): • Sue rang me up last night. (also Sue rang me last night. 'without 'up')	
	<b>look up</b> (a word in a dictionary etc.): • I didn't know the meaning of the word, so I looked it up in a dictionary.	
	<b>turn down</b> = make louder (TV, radio, music etc.): • Can you turn the radio up? I can't hear it.	
<b>down</b>	<b>knock down</b> (a building) = demolish: • They are going to knock down the school and build a new one.	
	<b>turn down</b> = make more quiet (TV, radio, music etc.): • The music is too loud. Can you turn it down?	
	<b>away</b>	
	<b>throw away</b> (rubbish, things you don't want): • These apples are bad. Shall I throw them away? • Don't throw away that picture. I want it.	
	<b>put away</b> = put something in the place where you usually keep it: • After they finished playing, the children put their toys away.	
	<b>back</b>	
	<b>pay somebody back</b> (money that you borrowed): • Thank you for lending me the money. I'll pay you back next week.	
<b>over</b>	<b>knock over</b> (a cup / a glass / a person etc.): • Be careful. Don't knock your cup over. • There was an accident at the end of the road. A man was knocked over by a car. • (or A man was knocked down by a car.)	
	<b>round/ around</b>	
	<b>show</b> (somebody) round/around = take somebody on a tour of a place: • We visited a factory last week. The manager showed us round.	

## Additional exercises

List of exercises:

1–2	<b>am/is/are</b>
3	present continuous
4	present simple
5–7	present simple, <b>am/is/are</b> and <b>have (got)</b>
8–9	present continuous and present simple
10–13	<b>was/were</b> and past simple
14	past simple and past continuous
15	present and past
16–18	present perfect
19–22	present perfect and past simple
23	present, past and present perfect
24–27	passive
28	future
29	past, present and future
30	<b>-ing</b> and infinitive
31–32	<b>a</b> and <b>the</b>
33	prepositions

Units 12	1
Units 20	2
Units 21	3
Units 22	4
Units 23	5
Units 24	6
Units 25	7
Units 26	8
Units 27	9
Units 28	10
Units 29	11
Units 30	12
Units 31	13
Units 32	14
Units 33	15
Units 34	16
Units 35	17
Units 36	18
Units 37	19
Units 38	20
Units 39	21
Units 40	22
Units 41	23
Units 42	24
Units 43	25
Units 44	26
Units 45	27
Units 46	28
Units 47	29
Units 48	30
Units 49	31
Units 50	32
Units 51	33

2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 'Are you hungry?' 'No, but I'm thirsty.'  
 2 How are your parents? 'They're very well.'  
 3 Is Linda at home?' 'No, ..... at work.'  
 4 ..... my keys?' 'In the kitchen.'  
 5 Where is Pete from? ..... American or British?  
 6 ..... hot today. The temperature is 35 degrees.  
 7 'Are you a teacher?' 'No, ..... a student.'  
 8 ..... your umbrella?' 'No, ..... Green,'  
 9 Where's your car? ..... in the car park?  
 10 ..... tired?' 'No, I'm fine.'  
 11 ..... these oranges?' 'Thirty pence each.'

**present continuous (I'm working / are you working? etc.)**

Units 3–4

Use the words in brackets to write sentences.

- 1 A: Where are your parents?  
 B: They're **watching TV**. (they/watch/TV)  
 2 A: Paula is going out.  
 B: **Where's she going?** (where/she/go?)  
 3 A: Where's David?  
 B: ..... (he/have/a bath)  
 4 A: ..... ? (the children/play?)  
 B: No, they're asleep.  
 5 A: ..... ? (it/rain?)  
 6 A: Where are Sue and Steve?  
 B: ..... (they/come/now)  
 7 A: ..... ? (why/you/stand/here?)  
 B: ..... (I/wait/for somebody)

**present simple (I work / she doesn't work / do you work? etc.)**

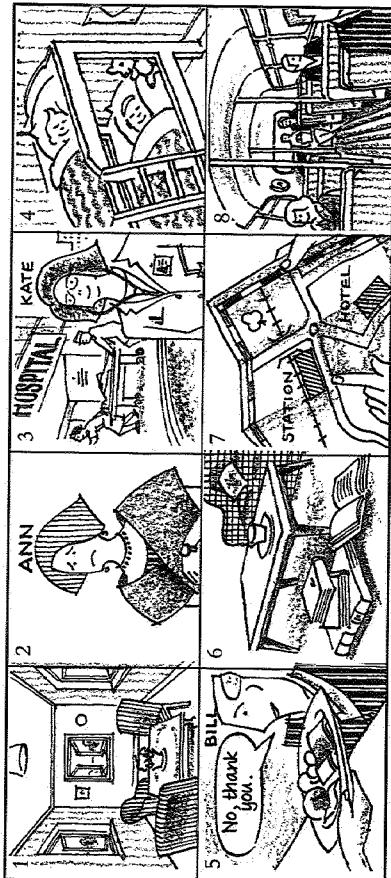
Units 5–7

Complete the sentences. Use the present simple.

- 1 Sue **always arrives** at work early. (Sue/always/arrive)  
 2 We **don't watch** TV very often. (we/not/watch)  
 3 How often **do you wash** your hair? (you/wash) ..... to go. (Chris/not/want)  
 4 I want to go to the cinema but ..... near here? (Ann/live)  
 5 ..... a lot of people. (Sarah/know)  
 6 ..... very much. (I/not/travel)  
 7 Enjoy travelling but ..... in the morning? (you/usually/get up)  
 8 What time ..... My parents are usually at home in the evening.  
 10 Very often. (they/not/go out) ..... work at five o'clock. (Tim/always/finish)  
 11 A: What ..... ? (Jill/do)  
 B: ..... in a hotel. (she/work)

**am/is/are**

1 Write sentences for the pictures. Use the words in the boxes + **is/Isn't/are/aren't**.



1	The windows are open.
2	Ann isn't happy.
3	Kate ....
4	....
5	....
6	....
7	....
8	....

1	The windows are open.
2	Ann isn't happy.
3	Kate ....
4	....
5	....
6	....
7	....
8	....

## present simple, am/is/are and have (got)

**5** Read the questions and Claire's answers. Then write sentences about Claire.

Are you married?	1 She isn't married.
Do you live in London?	2 She lives in London.
Are you a student?	3 .....
Have you got a car?	4 .....
Do you go out a lot?	5 .....
Have you got a lot of friends?	6 .....
Do you like London?	7 .....
Do you like dancing?	8 .....
Are you interested in sport?	9 .....

**6** Complete the questions.

What's your name?	1 ..... married?
Where ..... any children?	2 ..... ?
How ..... ?	3 ..... ?
	4 ..... your job?
	5 ..... a car?
	6 ..... to work by car?

Brian.	1 I'm 29.
Yes, I am.	I work in a supermarket.
In Barton Road.	No, I hate it.
Yes, a daughter.	Yes, I have.
She's three.	No, I usually go by bus.

**7** Who is this man?

That's my brother.	1 Are you speaking / Do you speak English? "Yes, a little."
Michael.	2 Do you speak is right
He's a travel agent.	3 Sometimes we're going / we go away at weekends.
No, in Manchester.	4 It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.

**8** Make sentences from these words.

- Sarah often / tennis
- I / a new car
- my shoes / dirty
- Sonia / 32 years old
- I / two sisters
- we often / TV in the evening
- Ann never / a hat
- a bicycle / two wheels
- these flowers / beautiful
- Mary / German very well

## present continuous (I'm working) and present simple (I work)

**8** Complete the sentences.



**9** Which is right?

- 'Are you speaking / Do you speak English?' "Yes, a little."
- Sometimes we're going / we go away at weekends.
- It's a nice day today. The sun is shining / shines.
- (You meet Ann in the street.) Hello, Ann. Where are you going / do you go?
- How often are you going / do you go on holiday?
- Emily is a writer. She's writing / She writes books for children.
- I'm never reading / I never read newspapers.
- 'Where are Michael and Jane?' "They're watching / They watch TV in the living room."
- Helen is in her office. She's talking / She talks to somebody.
- What time are you usually having / do you usually have dinner?
- John isn't at home at the moment. He's visiting / He visits some friends.
- "Would you like some tea?" "No, thank you. I'm not drinking / I don't drink tea."

## was/were and past simple (I worked / did you work? etc.)

Units 1-12

## past simple (I worked) and past continuous (I was working)

Units 1-4

10 Complete the sentences. Use one word only.

- 1 I got up early and **had** ... a shower.
- 2 Tom was tired last night, so he ..... to bed early.
- 3 I ..... this pen on the floor. Is it yours?
- 4 Kate got married when she ..... 23.
- 5 Helen is learning to drive. She ..... 'I've got a new job.' 'Yes, Helen.' 'Yes, I ..... me.'
- 6 'Where did you buy that book?' 'It was a present. Ann ..... it to me.'
- 7 We ..... hungry, so we had something to eat.
- 8 'Did you enjoy the film?' 'Yes, I ..... it was very good.'
- 9 'Did Mary come to your party?' 'No, we ..... her, but she didn't come.'
- 10 'Did Tom come to your party?' 'No, we .....'

Look at the questions and Kevin's answers.  
Write sentences about Kevin when he was a child.



When you were a child ...

- |                                  |      |
|----------------------------------|------|
| 1 Were you tall?                 | No.  |
| 2 Did you like school?           | Yes. |
| 3 Were you good at sport?        | Yes. |
| 4 Did you play football?         | Yes. |
| 5 Did you work hard at school?   | No.  |
| 6 Did you have a lot of friends? | Yes. |
| 7 Did you have a bicycle?        | No.  |
| 8 Were you a quiet child?        | No.  |

Complete the questions.

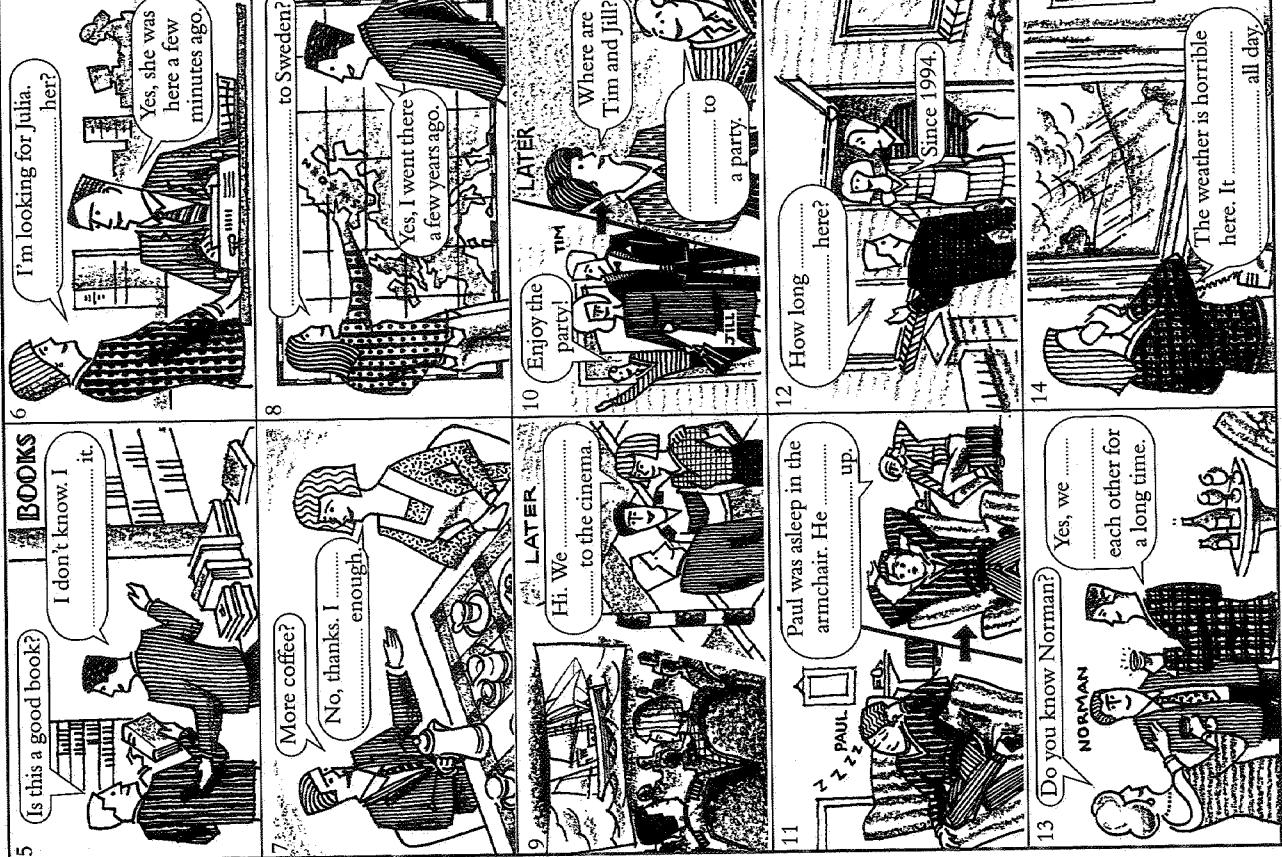
- |                                    |   |
|------------------------------------|---|
| 1 Did you have ... a nice holiday? | Yes, it was great, thanks.                          |
| 2 Where did you go?                | To Amsterdam.                                       |
| 3 ..... there?                     | Five days.  |
| 4 ..... Amsterdam?                 | Yes, very much.                                     |
| 5 ..... good?                      | I have friends in Amsterdam, so I stayed with them. |
| 6 ..... back?                      | Yes, it was warm and sunny.                         |
| 7 .....?                           | Yesterday.  |

Put the verb in the right form (positive, negative or question).

- 1 It was a good party. I **enjoyed** ... it. (I/enjoy)
- 2 Did you do ... the shopping? (you/do) 'No, I **didn't have** ... time.' (I/have)
- 3 'Did you phone Alan?' 'No, I'm afraid .....' (I/forgot)
- 4 I like your new watch. Where ..... it? (you/get)
- 5 I saw Lucy at the party but ..... to her. (I/speak)
- 6 A: ..... a nice weekend? (you/have)
- 7 B: Yes, I went to stay with some friends of mine.
- 8 Paul wasn't well yesterday, so ..... to work. (he/go)
- 9 Where ..... five minutes ago? (she/arrive)
- 10 Before he came here? 'Yes, ..... before he came here? (Robert/live)
- 11 The restaurant wasn't expensive. ..... very much. (the meal/cost)

11 Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the past simple or past continuous.

1 It was raining... (rain) when we ..... (go) out.	2 When I arrived at the office, Jane and Paul ..... (work) at their desks.	3 I ..... (open) the window because it was hot.	4 The phone ..... (ring) while Sue ..... (cook) the dinner.	5 Tom ..... (look) out of the window when the accident ..... (happen).	6 Tom ..... (look) out of the window when he ..... (hear) a noise outside, so I ..... (look) out of the window.	7 Catherine ..... (buy) a magazine but she ..... (not/read) it.	8 Catherine bought a magazine but she ..... (not/read) it.	9 Richard had a book in his hand but he ..... (not/read) it.	10 Richard had a book in his hand but he ..... (not/read) it.



## Units 3–14

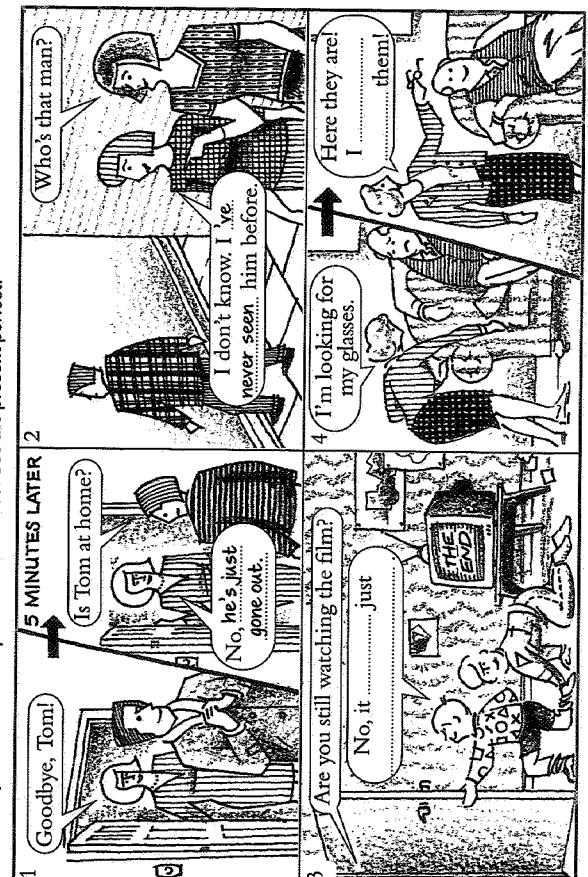
## present and past

- 15 Complete the sentences. Use one of these forms:  
the present simple (I work etc.) the present continuous (I am working etc.)  
the past simple (I worked etc.) the past continuous (I was working etc.)

- 1 You can turn off the television. I'm ..... watching ..... (not/watch) it.  
2 Last night Jenny ..... fell ..... (fall) asleep while she ..... was reading ..... (read).  
3 Listen! Somebody ..... (play) the piano.  
4 'Have you got my key?' 'No, I ..... (not/like) hard work.  
5 David is very lazy. He ..... (see) your parents/go) for their holidays last year?  
6 Where ..... (drive) her new car.  
7 ..... (drive) her new car.  
8 A: ..... (you/watch) television very often?  
B: No, I haven't got a television set.  
9 A: What ..... (you/do) at 6 o'clock last Sunday morning?  
B: I was in bed asleep.  
10 Andy isn't at home very much. He ..... (go) away a lot.  
11 I ..... (try) to find a job at the moment. It's very difficult.  
12 I'm tired this morning. I ..... (not/sleep) very well last night.

## present perfect (I have done / she has been etc.)

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.



## 16

Look at the pictures and complete the sentences. Use the present perfect.

**17** Complete the sentences (1, 2 or 3 words).

- 1 Mark and Liz are married. They have been married for five years.
- 2 David has been watching TV since 5 o'clock.
- 3 Martin is at work. He has been at work since 8.30.
- 4 'Have you just arrived in London?' 'No, I've been here ..... five days.'
- 5 I've known Ann ..... we were at school together.
- 6 'My brother lives in Los Angeles.' 'Really? How long ..... there?'
- 7 George has had the same job ..... 20 years.
- 8 Some friends of ours are staying with us at the moment. They have been here since Monday.

**18** Complete the sentences. Write about yourself.

- 1 I've never ridden a horse.
- 2 I've been to London many times.
- 3 I've just .....
- 4 I've ..... (once / twice / a few times / many times)
- 5 I haven't ..... yet.
- 6 I've never .....
- 7 I've ..... since .....
- 8 I've ..... for .....

**present perfect (I have done etc.) and past simple (I did etc.)**

**19** Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences (positive or negative).

- 1 A: Do you like London?  
B: I haven't been there.
- 2 A: Have you seen Ann?  
B: Yes, I saw her five minutes ago.
- 3 A: That's a nice sweater. Is it new?  
B: Yes, I bought it last week.
- 4 A: Are you tired this morning?  
B: Yes, I went to bed late last night.
- 5 A: Do you want the newspaper or can I have it?  
B: You can have it. I haven't got it.
- 6 A: Are you enjoying your new job?  
B: I haven't got yet. My first day is next Monday.
- 7 A: The weather isn't very nice today, is it?  
B: No, but it was very nice yesterday.
- 8 A: Was Linda at the party on Saturday?  
B: I don't think so. I haven't seen her there.
- 9 A: Is your son still at school?  
B: No, he left school two years ago.
- 10 A: Is Sylvia married?  
B: Yes, she got married married for five years.
- 11 A: Have you heard of George Washington?  
B: Of course. He was the first President of the United States.

**Make sentences from the words in brackets (...). Use the present perfect or past simple.**

- 1 A: Have you been to Scotland?  
B: Yes, I went there last year. (I / go / there / last year)
- 2 A: Do you like London?  
B: I don't know. I've never been there. (I / never / there)
- 3 A: What time is Paul going out?  
B: .....
- 4 A: Has Catherine gone home?  
B: Yes, ..... (she / go / at 4 o'clock)
- 5 A: New York is my favourite city.  
B: Is it? .....
- 6 A: What are you doing this weekend?  
B: I don't know. .... (I / not / decide / yet)
- 7 A: I can't find my address book. Have you seen it?  
B: .....
- 8 A: Are you hungry?  
B: No, ..... (I / just / eat)
- 9 A: Paula and Sue are here.  
B: Are they? ? (what time / they / arrive?)

**Present perfect or past simple? Complete the sentences.**

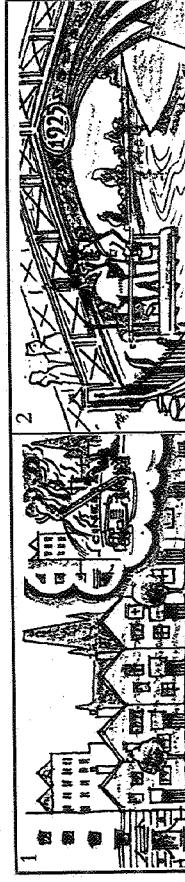
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 A: <u>Have you been</u> to France?<br>B: Yes, many times.<br>A: When ..... the last time?<br>B: Two years ago.  |  |
| 2 A: Is this your car?<br>B: Yes, it is.<br>A: How long ..... it?<br>B: It's new. I <u>bought</u> it yesterday.   |  |
| 3 A: Where do you live?<br>B: In Harold Street.<br>A: How long ..... there?<br>B: Five years. Before that ..... in Mill Road.<br>A: How long ..... in Mill Road?<br>B: About three years. |  |
| 4 A: What do you do?<br>B: I work in a shop.<br>A: How long ..... there?<br>B: Nearly two years.<br>A: What ..... before that?<br>B: I ..... a taxi driver.                               |  |

**22 Write sentences about yourself.**

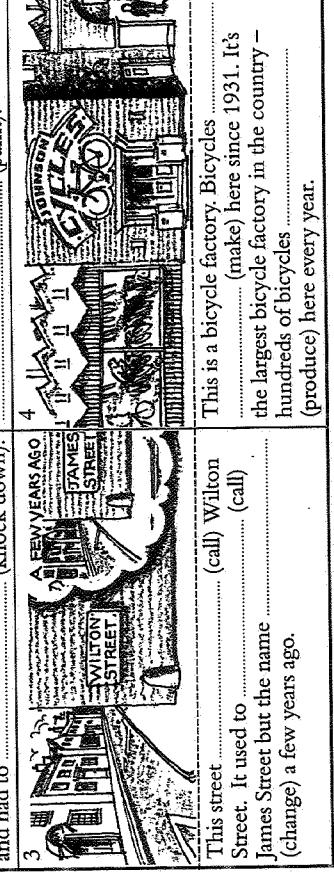
- 1 (yesterday morning) I was late for work yesterday morning.
- 2 (last night)
- 3 (yesterday afternoon)
- 4 (... days ago)
- 5 (last week)
- 6 (last year)

**passive**

Complete the sentences.



These houses were built 20 years ago. Before that there was a cinema here but the building ..... (damage) in a fire and had to ..... (knock down).



This bridge ..... (build) in 1925. It ..... (use) by hundreds of people every day. At the moment the bridge ..... (paint).

4 This is a bicycle factory. Bicycles ..... (make) here since 1931. It's ..... (clean). It will be ready tomorrow. The largest bicycle factory in the country – hundreds of bicycles ..... (produce) here every year.

Complete the sentences.

- 1 'Is Sue working?' No, she's on holiday.  
A Does Sue work B Is working Sue C Is Sue working D Does work Sue
- 2 'Where .....?' 'In a village near London.'  
A lives your uncle B does your uncle live C your uncle lives D does live your uncle
- 3 I speak Italian but ..... French.  
A I speak not B I'm not speaking C I don't speak D I don't speak a shower at the moment'
- 4 'Where's Tom?' '.....?' 'In a village near London.'
- 5 Why .....? '.....?' angry with me yesterday?  
A were you B was you C you were D have you been
- 6 My favourite film is Cleo's Dream.  
A I'm seeing B I see C I saw D I've seen
- 7 I ..... out last night. I was too tired.  
A don't go B didn't went C didn't go D haven't gone
- 8 Liz is from Edinburgh. She ..... there all her life.  
A is living B has lived C lives D lived
- 9 My friend ..... for me when I arrived.  
A waited B has waited C was waiting D has been waiting
- 10 'How long .....?' 'Six months.'  
A do you learn B are you learning C you are learning D have you been learning
- 11 Martin is English but he lives in France. He has been there .....  
A for three years B since three years C three years ago D during three years
- 12 'What time .....?' 'About an hour ago.'  
A has Ann phoned B Ann has phoned C did Ann phone D is Ann phoning
- 13 What ..... when you saw her?  
A did Sue wear B was Sue wearing C has Sue worn
- 14 'Can you drive?' 'No, .....'  
A I never drove B I'm never driving C I've never driven D I was never driving
- 15 I saw Lisa at the station when I was going to work this morning but she ..... me.  
A didn't see B don't see C hasn't seen D didn't saw

- 1 Somebody has stolen my keys.
- 2 Somebody stole my car last week.
- 3 Somebody wants you on the phone.
- 4 Somebody has eaten the bananas.
- 5 Somebody will repair the machine.
- 6 Somebody is watching us.
- 7 Somebody has to buy the food.

Write a new sentence with the same meaning.

**My keys have been stolen...**

- 1 My car ....
- 2 You ....
- 3 The ....
- 4 We ....
- 5 The ....

### Active or passive? Complete the sentences.

- 1 They are building ... (build) a new airport at the moment.
- 2 These shirts are clean now. They have been washed ... (wash).
- 3 'How did you fall?' 'I ..... (push).'
- 4 'How did you fall?' 'I ..... (push).'
- 5 I can't find my bag. Somebody ..... (take) it!
- 6 My watch is broken. It ..... (repair) at the moment.
- 7 Who ..... (invent) the camera?
- 8 When ..... (the camera/invent)?
- 9 The letter was for me, so why ..... (they/send) it to you?
- 10 The information will ..... (send) to you as soon as possible.

### past, present and future

Complete the sentences.

- 1 A: Did you go ..... (you/go) out last night?  
B: No ..... (I/stay) at home.
- 2 A: What ..... (you/do)?  
B: ..... (I/watch) television.
- 3 A: ..... (you/go) out tomorrow night?  
B: Yes ..... (I/go) to the cinema.
- 4 A: Which film ..... (you/see)?  
B: ..... (I/not/know).
- 5 (I/not/decide) yet.

### future

#### 28 Which is the best alternative?

- 1 We're having ... a party next Sunday. I hope you can come.  
A We have      B We're having      C We'll have
- 2 Do you know about Sally?  
A She leaves      B She's going to leave      C She'll leave
- 3 There's a programme on television that I want to watch. .... in five minutes.  
A It starts      B It's starting      C It will start
- 4 The weather is nice now but I think ..... later.  
A it rains      B it's raining      C it will rain
- 5 'What ..... next weekend?' 'Nothing special. Why?'  
A do you do      B are you doing      C will you do
- 6 'When you see Ann, can you ask her to phone me?' 'OK,  
A I ask      B I'm going to ask      C I'll ask

7 'What would you like to drink, tea or coffee?' '  
A I have      B I'm going to have      C I'll have

8 Don't take that newspaper away.  
A I read      B I'm going to read      C I'll read

9 Rachel is ill, so ..... to the party tomorrow night.  
A she doesn't come      B she isn't coming      C she won't come

10 I want to meet Sarah at the station. What time  
A does her train arrive      B is her train going to arrive      C is her train arriving

11 'Will you be at home tomorrow evening?' 'No.  
A I go out      B I'm going out      C I'll go out

12 '..... you tomorrow?' 'Yes, OK.'  
A Do I phone      B Am I going to phone      C Shall I phone

**Units 26-29**

**Units 3-20 26-29**

#### 29 Are you on holiday here?



- 1 A: Are you on holiday here?  
B: Yes, we are.  
A: How long ..... (you/be) here?  
B: ..... (we/arrive) yesterday.  
A: And how long ..... (you/stay)?  
B: Until the end of next week.
- 2 A: And ..... (you/like) it here?  
B: Yes, ..... (we/have)  
a wonderful time.

- 3 A: Oh, ..... (I/jill/phone) while you were out.  
B: ..... (she/always/phone) when I'm not here.  
A: No, but ..... (she/leave) a message?  
B: OK, ..... (I/phone) her now.  
A: It's in my address book. ..... (I/get) it for you.

- 4 A: ..... (I/go) out with Chris and Steve this evening.  
B: Yes, where ..... (you/want) to come with us?  
A: To the Italian restaurant in North Street.  
B: Yes, ..... (I/be) there two or three times. In fact I ..... (go)  
there last night but I'd love to go again!

- 5 A: ..... (I/lose) my glasses again.  
B: ..... (you/see) them?  
A: ..... (you/wear) them when  
(I/come) in.  
A: Well, ..... (I/go) and look now,  
so where are they?  
B: ..... (you/look) in the kitchen?  
A: No,



## -ing and infinitive

Which is correct?

- 1 Don't forget **to switch** off the light before you go out.  
A switch B to switch C switching now.
- 2 It's late. I must ..... to you now.  
A go B to go C going
- 3 I'm sorry but I haven't got time ..... to talk.  
A for talking B to talk C talking
- 4 Bill is always in the kitchen. He enjoys ..... .  
A cook B to cook C cooking
- 5 We've decided ..... away for a few days.  
A go B to go C going
- 6 You're making too much noise. Can you please stop ..... ?  
A shout B to shout C shouting
- 7 Would you like ..... to dinner on Sunday?  
A come B to come C coming
- 8 That bag is too heavy for you. Let me ..... you.  
A help B to help C helping
- 9 There's a swimming pool near my house. I go ..... every day.  
A to swim B to swimming C swimming
- 10 Did you use a dictionary ..... the letter?  
A to translate B for translating C for translate
- 11 I'd love ..... a car like yours.  
A have B to have C having
- 12 Could you ..... me with this bag, please?  
A help B to help C helping
- 13 I don't mind ..... here but I'd prefer to sit by the window.  
A sit B to sit C sitting
- 14 Do you want ..... you?  
A that I help B me to help C me helping
- 15 I always read the newspaper before ..... work.  
A start B to start C starting
- 16 I wasn't feeling very well but the medicine made me ..... better.  
A feel B to feel C feeling
- 17 Shall I phone the restaurant ..... a table?  
A for reserve B for reserving C to reserve
- 18 Tom looked at me without ..... anything.  
A say B saying C to say

**a and the**  
Complete the sentences.

1 Can you pass **the** sugar... , please? 2 Have you got ..... ?

2 Can you pass **the** sugar... , please? 2 Have you got ..... ?

3 Have you got any milk? Yes, there's some in ..... .

4 What do you do? I'm ...

5 I don't feel very well. I don't want to go to ..... .

6 What did you do last night? I went to ..... .

7 Shall we walk home? TAXI

8 Can you play ..... ?

9 I'm interested in ..... .

10 What's the difference between those cars? Nothing, they're .....

**32** Put in **a/an** or **the** where necessary. If **a/an/the** are not necessary, leave an empty space (-).

- 1 Who is **the** best player in your team?
- 2 I don't watch **-** television very often.
- 3 Is there **a** bank near here? 'Yes, at **the** end of this street.'
- 4 I can't ride **.....** horse.
- 5 **.....** sky is very clear tonight.
- 6 Do you live here or are you **.....** tourist?
- 7 What did you have for **.....** lunch?
- 8 Who was **.....** first President of **.....** United States?
- 9 'What time is it?' 'I don't know. I haven't got **.....** watch.'
- 10 I'm sorry but I've forgotten your name. I can never remember **.....** names.
- 11 What time is **.....** next train to London?
- 12 Kate never writes **.....** letters. She prefers to phone people.
- 13 'Where's Sue?' 'She's in **.....** garden.'
- 14 Excuse me, I'm looking for **.....** Majestic Hotel. Is it near here?
- 15 Gary was ill **.....** last week, so he didn't go to **.....** work.
- 16 Everest is **.....** highest mountain in **.....** world.
- 17 I usually listen to **.....** radio while I'm having **.....** breakfast.
- 18 I like **.....** sport. My favourite sport is **.....** basketball.
- 19 Julia is **.....** doctor. Her husband is **.....** art teacher.
- 20 My apartment is on **.....** second floor. Turn left at **.....** top of **.....** stairs, and it's on **.....** right.
- 21 After **.....** dinner, we watched **.....** television.
- 22 Last year we had **.....** wonderful holiday in **.....** south of **.....** France.

## Key to Exercises

1 <b>U1</b>	4 Yes, they are. <b>or</b> No, they aren't. / No, they're not.
2 <b>U1</b>	5 Yes, it is. <b>or</b> No, it isn't. / No, it's not.
3 <b>U1</b>	6 Yes, I am. <b>or</b> No, I'm not.
4 <b>U1</b>	7 Diamonds <b>aren't</b> / <b>are not</b> cheap.
5 <b>U1</b>	8 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> interested in football. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> interested in football.
6 <b>U1</b>	9 Rome <b>isn't</b> / <b>is not</b> in Spain.
7 <b>U1</b>	10 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> playing football. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> playing football.
8 <b>U1</b>	11 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> lying <b>on</b> the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> lying <b>on</b> the beach.
9 <b>U1</b>	12 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> having a swim. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> having a swim.
10 <b>U1</b>	13 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> sitting <b>on</b> a chair. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> sitting <b>on</b> a chair.
11 <b>U1</b>	14 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> swimming. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> swimming.
12 <b>U1</b>	15 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> staying at home. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> staying at home.
13 <b>U1</b>	16 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> reading a book. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> reading a book.
14 <b>U1</b>	17 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> listening to music. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> listening to music.
15 <b>U1</b>	18 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> watching TV. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> watching TV.
16 <b>U1</b>	19 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> learning English. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> learning English.
17 <b>U1</b>	20 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> wearing a hat. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> wearing a hat.
18 <b>U1</b>	21 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> writing a letter. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> writing a letter.
19 <b>U1</b>	22 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> having a shower. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> having a shower.
20 <b>U1</b>	23 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to bed. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to bed.
21 <b>U1</b>	24 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to sleep. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to sleep.
22 <b>U1</b>	25 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
23 <b>U1</b>	26 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the cinema. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the cinema.
24 <b>U1</b>	27 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the park. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the park.
25 <b>U1</b>	28 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
26 <b>U1</b>	29 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
27 <b>U1</b>	30 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
28 <b>U1</b>	31 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
29 <b>U1</b>	32 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
30 <b>U1</b>	33 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
31 <b>U1</b>	34 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
32 <b>U1</b>	35 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
33 <b>U1</b>	36 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
34 <b>U1</b>	37 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
35 <b>U1</b>	38 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
36 <b>U1</b>	39 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
37 <b>U1</b>	40 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
38 <b>U1</b>	41 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
39 <b>U1</b>	42 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
40 <b>U1</b>	43 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
41 <b>U1</b>	44 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
42 <b>U1</b>	45 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
43 <b>U1</b>	46 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
44 <b>U1</b>	47 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
45 <b>U1</b>	48 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
46 <b>U1</b>	49 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
47 <b>U1</b>	50 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
48 <b>U1</b>	51 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
49 <b>U1</b>	52 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
50 <b>U1</b>	53 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
51 <b>U1</b>	54 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
52 <b>U1</b>	55 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
53 <b>U1</b>	56 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
54 <b>U1</b>	57 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
55 <b>U1</b>	58 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
56 <b>U1</b>	59 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.
57 <b>U1</b>	60 <b>I'm</b> / <b>I am</b> going to the beach. <b>or</b> <b>I'm not</b> / <b>I am not</b> going to the beach.

## prepositions

### Put in a preposition (**in/for/by** etc.).

- 1 Helen is studying law **at** university.
- 2 What is the longest river **.....** Europe?
- 3 Is there anything **.....** television this evening?
- 4 We arrived **.....** the hotel after midnight.
- 5 'Where's Mike?' 'He's **.....** holiday.'
- 6 Tom hasn't got up yet. He's still **.....** bed.
- 7 Linda is away. She's been away **.....** Monday.
- 8 The next meeting is **.....** 15 April.
- 9 I usually **go** to work **.....** car.
- 10 There's too much sugar **.....** my coffee.
- 11 Kevin lived in London **.....** six months. He didn't like it very much.
- 12 Were there a lot of people **.....** the party?
- 13 What are you doing **.....** the moment? Are you working?
- 14 I don't know any of the people **.....** this photograph.
- 15 The train was very slow. It stopped **.....** every station.
- 16 I like this room. I like the pictures **.....** the walls.
- 17 Did you buy that picture? 'No, it was given to me **.....** a friend of mine.'
- 18 I'm going away **.....** a few days. I'll be back **.....** Thursday.
- 19 Silvia has gone **.....** Italy. She's **.....** Milan at the moment.
- 20 Ann left school **.....** fifteen and got a job **.....** a shop.

### Put in a preposition (**in/for/by** etc.).

- 1 **U1** 4 Yes, they are. **or**  
My hands **aren't** / **are not** cold.
- 2 **U1** 5 Canada is a very big country.
- 3 **U1** 6 Diamonds **aren't** / **are not** cheap.
- 4 **U1** 7 They're /They are having
- 5 **U1** 8 **I'm** / **I am** interested in football. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** interested in football.
- 6 **U1** 9 Rome **isn't** / **is not** in Spain.
- 7 **U1** 10 **I'm** / **I am** playing football. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** playing football.
- 8 **U1** 11 **I'm** / **I am** swimming. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** swimming.
- 9 **U1** 12 **I'm** / **I am** staying at home. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** staying at home.
- 10 **U1** 13 **I'm** / **I am** having a shower. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** having a shower.
- 11 **U1** 14 **I'm** / **I am** sleeping. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** sleeping.
- 12 **U1** 15 **I'm** / **I am** writing a letter. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** writing a letter.
- 13 **U1** 16 **I'm** / **I am** listening to music. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** listening to music.
- 14 **U1** 17 **I'm** / **I am** watching TV. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** watching TV.
- 15 **U1** 18 **I'm** / **I am** learning English. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** learning English.
- 16 **U1** 19 **I'm** / **I am** not hungry. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** hungry.
- 17 **U1** 20 **I'm** / **I am** not warm today. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** warm today.
- 18 **U1** 21 **I'm** / **I am** afraid of dogs. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** afraid of dogs.
- 19 **U1** 22 **I'm** / **I am** wearing shoes. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** wearing shoes.
- 20 **U1** 23 **I'm** / **I am** not reading a newspaper. **or**  
**I'm not** / **I am not** reading a newspaper.

- 5 We always have dinner at 7.30.  
6 Tim never watches television.  
7 Children usually like chocolate.  
8 Julia always enjoys parties.

*Example answers:*

- 2 I usually read in bed.  
3 I often get up before 7 o'clock.  
4 I never go to work by bus.  
5 I usually drink two cups of coffee in the morning.
- 2 Where is she going?  
3 What are you eating?  
4 Why are you crying?  
5 What are they looking at?  
6 Why is he laughing?

- 3 Are you listening to me?  
4 Where are your friends going?  
5 Are your parents watching television?  
6 What is Ann cooking?  
7 Why are you looking at me?  
8 Is the bus coming?
- 4,5  
2 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.  
3 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.  
4 Yes, it is or No, it's not.  
No, it isn't. / No, it's not.  
5 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.  
6 Yes, I am. or No, I'm not.

*Example answers:*

- 2 Carol doesn't like classical music. I like (or I don't like) classical music.  
3 Bill and Rose don't like boxing. Carol likes boxing.  
4 Bill and Rose like horror films. Carol doesn't like horror films. I like (or I don't like) horror films.

- 5,6  
2 thinks 5 has  
3 flies 6 finishes  
4 dances
- 5,6  
2 live 5 They go  
3 She eats 6 He sleeps  
4 They play

- 5,6  
2 open 7 costs  
3 closes 8 cost  
4 teaches 9 boils  
5 meets 10 like... likes  
6 washes

- 5,6  
2 I often play basketball.  
3 Margaret usually works hard.  
4 Jenny always wears nice clothes.

- 6 don't believe  
7 like  
8 doesn't eat

*Example answer:*

6 Are you writing a letter?

5 Is that clock working?

4 Are you enjoying the film?

3 Is it raining?

2 Are you going now?

1 Are you listening to me?

2 Do you enjoy / Do you like

3 Do you start

4 Do you work

5 Does he do

6 Does he teach

7 Does he like

8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

9 Does he have ...?

10 Was he at work?

11 Is he at work?

12 Is he at work?

13 Is he at work?

14 Is he at work?

15 Is he at work?

16 Is he at work?

17 Is he at work?

18 Is he at work?

19 Is he at work?

20 Is he at work?

21 Is he at work?

22 Is he at work?

23 Is he at work?

24 Is he at work?

25 Is he at work?

26 Is he at work?

27 Is he at work?

28 Is he at work?

29 Is he at work?

30 Is he at work?

31 Is he at work?

32 Is he at work?

33 Is he at work?

34 Is he at work?

35 Is he at work?

36 Is he at work?

37 Is he at work?

38 Is he at work?

39 Is he at work?

40 Is he at work?

- 6 don't believe  
7 like  
8 doesn't eat

*Example answer:*

6 Are you writing a letter?

5 Is that clock working?

4 Are you enjoying the film?

3 Is it raining?

2 Are you going now?

1 Are you listening to me?

2 Do you enjoy / Do you like

3 Do you start

4 Do you work

5 Does he do

6 Does he teach

7 Does he like

8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

9 Does he have ...?

10 Was he at work?

11 Is he at work?

12 Is he at work?

13 Is he at work?

14 Is he at work?

15 Is he at work?

16 Is he at work?

17 Is he at work?

18 Is he at work?

19 Is he at work?

20 Is he at work?

21 Is he at work?

22 Is he at work?

23 Is he at work?

24 Is he at work?

25 Is he at work?

26 Is he at work?

27 Is he at work?

28 Is he at work?

29 Is he at work?

30 Is he at work?

31 Is he at work?

32 Is he at work?

33 Is he at work?

34 Is he at work?

35 Is he at work?

36 Is he at work?

37 Is he at work?

38 Is he at work?

39 Is he at work?

40 Is he at work?

- 6 don't believe  
7 like  
8 doesn't eat

*Example answer:*

6 Are you writing a letter?

5 Is that clock working?

4 Are you enjoying the film?

3 Is it raining?

2 Are you going now?

1 Are you listening to me?

2 Do you enjoy / Do you like

3 Do you start

4 Do you work

5 Does he do

6 Does he teach

7 Does he like

8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

9 Does he have ...?

10 Was he at work?

11 Is he at work?

12 Is he at work?

13 Is he at work?

14 Is he at work?

15 Is he at work?

16 Is he at work?

17 Is he at work?

18 Is he at work?

19 Is he at work?

20 Is he at work?

21 Is he at work?

22 Is he at work?

23 Is he at work?

24 Is he at work?

25 Is he at work?

26 Is he at work?

27 Is he at work?

28 Is he at work?

29 Is he at work?

30 Is he at work?

31 Is he at work?

32 Is he at work?

33 Is he at work?

34 Is he at work?

35 Is he at work?

36 Is he at work?

37 Is he at work?

38 Is he at work?

39 Is he at work?

40 Is he at work?

- 6 don't believe  
7 like  
8 doesn't eat

*Example answer:*

6 Are you writing a letter?

5 Is that clock working?

4 Are you enjoying the film?

3 Is it raining?

2 Are you going now?

1 Are you listening to me?

2 Do you enjoy / Do you like

3 Do you start

4 Do you work

5 Does he do

6 Does he teach

7 Does he like

8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

9 Does he have ...?

10 Was he at work?

11 Is he at work?

12 Is he at work?

13 Is he at work?

14 Is he at work?

15 Is he at work?

16 Is he at work?

17 Is he at work?

18 Is he at work?

19 Is he at work?

20 Is he at work?

21 Is he at work?

22 Is he at work?

23 Is he at work?

24 Is he at work?

25 Is he at work?

26 Is he at work?

27 Is he at work?

28 Is he at work?

29 Is he at work?

30 Is he at work?

31 Is he at work?

32 Is he at work?

33 Is he at work?

34 Is he at work?

35 Is he at work?

36 Is he at work?

37 Is he at work?

38 Is he at work?

39 Is he at work?

40 Is he at work?

- 6 don't believe  
7 like  
8 doesn't eat

*Example answer:*

6 Are you writing a letter?

5 Is that clock working?

4 Are you enjoying the film?

3 Is it raining?

2 Are you going now?

1 Are you listening to me?

2 Do you enjoy / Do you like

3 Do you start

4 Do you work

5 Does he do

6 Does he teach

7 Does he like

8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

9 Does he have ...?

10 Was he at work?

11 Is he at work?

12 Is he at work?

13 Is he at work?

14 Is he at work?

15 Is he at work?

16 Is he at work?

17 Is he at work?

18 Is he at work?

19 Is he at work?

20 Is he at work?

21 Is he at work?

22 Is he at work?

23 Is he at work?

24 Is he at work?

25 Is he at work?

26 Is he at work?

27 Is he at work?

28 Is he at work?

29 Is he at work?

30 Is he at work?

31 Is he at work?

32 Is he at work?

33 Is he at work?

34 Is he at work?

35 Is he at work?

36 Is he at work?

37 Is he at work?

38 Is he at work?

39 Is he at work?

40 Is he at work?

- 6 don't believe  
7 like  
8 doesn't eat

*Example answer:*

6 Are you writing a letter?

5 Is that clock working?

4 Are you enjoying the film?

3 Is it raining?

2 Are you going now?

1 Are you listening to me?

2 Do you enjoy / Do you like

3 Do you start

4 Do you work

5 Does he do

6 Does he teach

7 Does he like

8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

9 Does he have ...?

10 Was he at work?

11 Is he at work?

12 Is he at work?

13 Is he at work?

14 Is he at work?

15 Is he at work?

16 Is he at work?

17 Is he at work?

18 Is he at work?

19 Is he at work?

20 Is he at work?

21 Is he at work?

22 Is he at work?

23 Is he at work?

24 Is he at work?

25 Is he at work?

26 Is he at work?

27 Is he at work?

28 Is he at work?

29 Is he at work?

30 Is he at work?

31 Is he at work?

32 Is he at work?

33 Is he at work?

34 Is he at work?

35 Is he at work?

36 Is he at work?

37 Is he at work?

38 Is he at work?

39 Is he at work?

40 Is he at work?

- 6 don't believe  
7 like  
8 doesn't eat

*Example answer:*

6 Are you writing a letter?

5 Is that clock working?

4 Are you enjoying the film?

3 Is it raining?

2 Are you going now?

1 Are you listening to me?

2 Do you enjoy / Do you like

3 Do you start

4 Do you work

5 Does he do

6 Does he teach

7 Does he like

8 Does he enjoy / Does he like

9 Does he have ...?

10 Was he at work?

11 Is he at work?

12 Is he at work?

13 Is he at work?

14 Is he at work?

15 Is he at work?

## 11.5

*Example answers:*

- 1 I got up late yesterday.  
 2 I met some friends at lunchtime.  
 3 I played volleyball.  
 4 I wrote a letter.  
 5 I lost my keys.

## UNIT 12

- 12.1 2 didn't work    4 didn't have  
       3 didn't go      5 didn't do
- 12.2 2 Did you enjoy the party?  
 3 Did you have a good holiday?  
 4 Did you finish work early?  
 5 Did you sleep well last night?

## 12.3

- 2 I got up before 7 o'clock, or  
 I didn't get up before 7 o'clock.  
 3 I had a shower, or  
 I didn't have a shower.  
 4 I bought a magazine, or  
 I didn't buy a magazine.  
 5 I ate meat, or  
 I didn't eat meat.  
 6 I went to bed before 10.30, or  
 I didn't go to bed before 10.30.

## 12.4

- 2 did you arrive  
 3 Did you win  
 4 did you go  
 5 did it cost  
 6 Did you go to bed late  
 7 Did you have a nice time  
 8 did it happen / did that happen

## 12.5

- 2 bought      5 opened  
 3 Did it rain    6 didn't have  
 4 didn't stay   7 did you do

## UNIT 13

- 2 Carol and Jack were at/in the  
 cinema. They were watching a  
 film.  
 3 Tom was in his car. He was  
 driving.

- 4 Catherine was at the station. She  
 was waiting for a train.  
 5 Mr and Mrs Hall were in the  
 park. They were walking.  
 6 I was in a café. I was having a  
 drink with some friends.

- 13.1 2 she was swimming /she was  
       having a swim.  
 3 she was reading a/the  
       newspaper.

- 13.2 2 she was swimming /she was  
       having a swim.  
 3 she was listening to music/...  
       listening to the radio.

- 13.3 2 What were you doing  
 3 Was it raining  
 4 Why was Ann driving so fast  
 5 Was Tim wearing a suit

- 13.4 2 He was carrying a bag.  
 3 He wasn't going to the dentist.  
 4 He was eating an ice-cream.  
 5 He wasn't carrying an umbrella.  
 6 He wasn't going home.  
 7 He was wearing a hat.  
 8 He wasn't riding a bicycle.

- 14.1 1 happened ... was painting ... fell  
 2 arrived ... got ... were waiting  
 3 was walking ... met ... was  
 going ... was carrying ... stopped

- 14.2 1 was studying  
 2 The bus has just gone.  
 3 did the post arrive ... came ...  
 was having  
 4 didn't go

- 5 were you driving ... stopped  
 ... wasn't driving  
 6 Did your team win ... didn't  
 play  
 7 did you break the window ...  
 were playing ... kicked ... hit  
 8 Did you see ... was wearing  
 9 were you ... lost ... did you get ... climbed

- 15.1 1 started (it) last week.  
 2 they arrived at 5 o'clock.  
 3 she went (away) on Friday.  
 5 I wore them yesterday.

## UNIT 16

- 3 played  
 4 A year ago.  
 5 Have you ever met  
 6 wasn't  
 7 've/have just washed

## 10.3

- 3 for 20 years  
 4 20 years ago  
 5 ten minutes ago  
 6 an hour ago  
 7 for six months  
 8 for a long time  
 9 a few days ago

## 10.4

- 2 been here since Tuesday.  
 3 raining for an hour.  
 4 known Sue for two years.  
 5 had my/a camera since 1989.  
 6 been married for six months.  
 7 been studying medicine (at  
 university) for three years.  
 8 played / been playing the  
 piano since he was seven years  
 old.

## 10.5

- Example answers:*  
 1 I've lived in ... all my life.  
 2 I've been in the same job for ten  
 years.  
 3 I've been learning English for six  
 months.  
 4 I've known Chris for a long  
 time.  
 5 I've had a headache since I got  
 up this morning.

## 10.6

- 11.1 1 Have you ever been to Australia?  
 2 Have you ever lost your  
 passport?  
 5 Have you ever flown in a  
 helicopter?  
 6 Have you ever eaten Chinese  
 food?  
 7 Have you ever been to New  
 York?

## 11.2

- 2 How long have they been there  
 / in Brazil?  
 3 How long have you known her?  
 4 How long has she been learning  
 Italian?  
 5 How long has he lived in  
 Canada? / How long has he  
 been living ...?  
 6 How long have you been a  
 teacher?

## 11.3

- 12.1 1 Helen:  
 2 Helen has never been to  
 Australia.  
 3 Helen/She has eaten Chinese  
 food a few times.  
 4 Helen/She has never driven a  
 bus.  
*You (example answers):*  
 5 I've / I have never been to  
 New York.  
 6 I've / I have played tennis  
 many times.  
 7 I've / I have never flown in a  
 helicopter.  
 8 I've / I have been late for work  
 a few times.

## 12.2

- 12.3 1 Helen:  
 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.  
 3 They have been on holiday since  
 Sunday.  
 4 The sun has been shining all day.  
 5 She has been waiting for ten  
 minutes.  
 6 He has had a beard since he was  
 20.

## 12.4

- 13.1 1 I've / I have never been to  
 New York.  
 2 He's/He has just got up.  
 3 They've/They have just  
 bought a car.  
 4 The race has just started.

## 13.2

- 14.1 1 She has done a lot of interesting  
 things.  
 She has travelled all over the  
 world, or She has been all over  
 the world.  
 2 She has been married three  
 times.  
 She has written ten books.  
 She has met a lot of interesting  
 people.

## 14.2

- 15.1 1 I started (it) last week.  
 2 they arrived at 5 o'clock.  
 3 she went (away) on Friday.  
 5 I wore them yesterday.

## 15.2

- 16.1 1 played  
 2 A few days ago.  
 3 A few hours ago.  
 4 Two hours ago.  
 5 Six months ago.

## 11.1

- 3 have been  
 4 has been  
 5 have lived / have been living.  
 6 has worked / has been working  
 7 has had  
 8 have been learning

## 11.2

- 2 How long have they been there  
 / in Brazil?  
 3 How long have you known her?  
 4 How long has she been learning  
 Italian?  
 5 How long has he lived in  
 Canada? / How long has he  
 been living ...?  
 6 How long have you been a  
 teacher?

## 11.3

- 12.1 1 Helen:  
 2 Have you ever driven a bus?  
 3 Have you ever broken your leg?  
 4 Have you ever eaten Chinese  
 food?  
 5 Have you ever been to New  
 York?

## 12.2

- 13.1 1 Helen:  
 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.  
 3 They have been on holiday since  
 Sunday.  
 4 The sun has been shining all day.  
 5 She has been waiting for ten  
 minutes.  
 6 He has had a beard since he was  
 20.

## 12.3

- 14.1 1 I've / I have never been to  
 New York.  
 2 He's/He has just got up.  
 3 They've/They have just  
 bought a car.  
 4 The race has just started.

## 13.1

- 15.1 1 I started (it) last week.  
 2 they arrived at 5 o'clock.  
 3 she went (away) on Friday.  
 5 I wore them yesterday.

## 15.2

- 16.1 1 played  
 2 A few days ago.  
 3 A few hours ago.  
 4 Two hours ago.  
 5 Six months ago.

## 11.4

- 3 have been  
 4 has been  
 5 have lived / have been living.  
 6 has worked / has been working  
 7 has had  
 8 have been learning

## 11.5

- 2 How long have they been there  
 / in Brazil?  
 3 How long have you known her?  
 4 How long has she been learning  
 Italian?  
 5 How long has he lived in  
 Canada? / How long has he  
 been living ...?  
 6 How long have you been a  
 teacher?

## 11.6

- 12.1 1 Helen:  
 2 Have you ever driven a bus?  
 3 Have you ever broken your leg?  
 4 Have you ever eaten Chinese  
 food?  
 5 Have you ever been to New  
 York?

## 12.2

- 13.1 1 Helen:  
 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.  
 3 They have been on holiday since  
 Sunday.  
 4 The sun has been shining all day.  
 5 She has been waiting for ten  
 minutes.  
 6 He has had a beard since he was  
 20.

## 12.3

- 14.1 1 I've / I have never been to  
 New York.  
 2 He's/He has just got up.  
 3 They've/They have just  
 bought a car.  
 4 The race has just started.

## 13.1

- 15.1 1 I started (it) last week.  
 2 they arrived at 5 o'clock.  
 3 she went (away) on Friday.  
 5 I wore them yesterday.

## 15.2

- 16.1 1 played  
 2 A few days ago.  
 3 A few hours ago.  
 4 Two hours ago.  
 5 Six months ago.

## 11.5

- 3 have been  
 4 has been  
 5 have lived / have been living.  
 6 has worked / has been working  
 7 has had  
 8 have been learning

## 11.6

- 2 How long have they been there  
 / in Brazil?  
 3 How long have you known her?  
 4 How long has she been learning  
 Italian?  
 5 How long has he lived in  
 Canada? / How long has he  
 been living ...?  
 6 How long have you been a  
 teacher?

## 11.7

- 12.1 1 Helen:  
 2 Have you ever driven a bus?  
 3 Have you ever broken your leg?  
 4 Have you ever eaten Chinese  
 food?  
 5 Have you ever been to New  
 York?

## 12.2

- 13.1 1 Helen:  
 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.  
 3 They have been on holiday since  
 Sunday.  
 4 The sun has been shining all day.  
 5 She has been waiting for ten  
 minutes.  
 6 He has had a beard since he was  
 20.

## 12.3

- 14.1 1 I've / I have never been to  
 New York.  
 2 He's/He has just got up.  
 3 They've/They have just  
 bought a car.  
 4 The race has just started.

## 13.1

- 15.1 1 I started (it) last week.  
 2 they arrived at 5 o'clock.  
 3 she went (away) on Friday.  
 5 I wore them yesterday.

## 15.2

- 16.1 1 played  
 2 A few days ago.  
 3 A few hours ago.  
 4 Two hours ago.  
 5 Six months ago.

## 11.5

- 3 have been  
 4 has been  
 5 have lived / have been living.  
 6 has worked / has been working  
 7 has had  
 8 have been learning

## 11.6

- 2 How long have they been there  
 / in Brazil?  
 3 How long have you known her?  
 4 How long has she been learning  
 Italian?  
 5 How long has he lived in  
 Canada? / How long has he  
 been living ...?  
 6 How long have you been a  
 teacher?

## 11.7

- 12.1 1 Helen:  
 2 Have you ever driven a bus?  
 3 Have you ever broken your leg?  
 4 Have you ever eaten Chinese  
 food?  
 5 Have you ever been to New  
 York?

## 12.2

- 13.1 1 Helen:  
 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.  
 3 They have been on holiday since  
 Sunday.  
 4 The sun has been shining all day.  
 5 She has been waiting for ten  
 minutes.  
 6 He has had a beard since he was  
 20.

## 12.3

- 14.1 1 I've / I have never been to  
 New York.  
 2 He's/He has just got up.  
 3 They've/They have just  
 bought a car.  
 4 The race has just started.

## 13.1

- 15.1 1 I started (it) last week.  
 2 they arrived at 5 o'clock.  
 3 she went (away) on Friday.  
 5 I wore them yesterday.

## 15.2

- 16.1 1 played  
 2 A few days ago.  
 3 A few hours ago.  
 4 Two hours ago.  
 5 Six months ago.

## 11.5

- 3 have been  
 4 has been  
 5 have lived / have been living.  
 6 has worked / has been working  
 7 has had  
 8 have been learning

## 11.6

- 2 How long have they been there  
 / in Brazil?  
 3 How long have you known her?  
 4 How long has she been learning  
 Italian?  
 5 How long has he lived in  
 Canada? / How long has he  
 been living ...?  
 6 How long have you been a  
 teacher?

## 11.7

- 12.1 1 Helen:  
 2 Have you ever driven a bus?  
 3 Have you ever broken your leg?  
 4 Have you ever eaten Chinese  
 food?  
 5 Have you ever been to New  
 York?

## 12.2

- 13.1 1 Helen:  
 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.  
 3 They have been on holiday since  
 Sunday.  
 4 The sun has been shining all day.  
 5 She has been waiting for ten  
 minutes.  
 6 He has had a beard since he was  
 20.

## 12.3

- 14.1 1 I've / I have never been to  
 New York.  
 2 He's/He has just got up.  
 3 They've/They have just  
 bought a car.  
 4 The race has just started.

## 13.1

- 15.1 1 I started (it) last week.  
 2 they arrived at 5 o'clock.  
 3 she went (away) on Friday.  
 5 I wore them yesterday.

## 15.2

- 16.1 1 played  
 2 A few days ago.  
 3 A few hours ago.  
 4 Two hours ago.  
 5 Six months ago.

## 11.5

- 3 have been  
 4 has been  
 5 have lived / have been living.  
 6 has worked / has been working  
 7 has had  
 8 have been learning

## 11.6

- 2 How long have they been there  
 / in Brazil?  
 3 How long have you known her?  
 4 How long has she been learning  
 Italian?  
 5 How long has he lived in  
 Canada? / How long has he  
 been living ...?  
 6 How long have you been a  
 teacher?

## 11.7

- 12.1 1 Helen:  
 2 Have you ever driven a bus?  
 3 Have you ever broken your leg?  
 4 Have you ever eaten Chinese  
 food?  
 5 Have you ever been to New  
 York?

## 12.2

- 13.1 1 Helen:  
 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.  
 3 They have been on holiday since  
 Sunday.  
 4 The sun has been shining all day.  
 5 She has been waiting for ten  
 minutes.  
 6 He has had a beard since he was  
 20.

## 12.3

- 14.1 1 I've / I have never been to  
 New York.  
 2 He's/He has just got up.  
 3 They've/They have just  
 bought a car.  
 4 The race has just started.

## 13.1

- 15.1 1 I started (it) last week.  
 2 they arrived at 5 o'clock.  
 3 she went (away) on Friday.  
 5 I wore them yesterday.

## 15.2

- 16.1 1 played  
 2 A few days ago.  
 3 A few hours ago.  
 4 Two hours ago.  
 5 Six months ago.

## 11.5

- 3 have been  
 4 has been  
 5 have lived / have been living.  
 6 has worked / has been working  
 7 has had  
 8 have been learning

## 11.6

- 2 How long have they been there  
 / in Brazil?  
 3 How long have you known her?  
 4 How long has she been learning  
 Italian?  
 5 How long has he lived in  
 Canada? / How long has he  
 been living ...?  
 6 How long have you been a  
 teacher?

## 11.7

- 12.1 1 Helen:  
 2 Have you ever driven a bus?  
 3 Have you ever broken your leg?  
 4 Have you ever eaten Chinese  
 food?  
 5 Have you ever been to New  
 York?

## 12.2

- 13.1 1 Helen:  
 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.  
 3 They have been on holiday since  
 Sunday.  
 4 The sun has been shining all day.  
 5 She has been waiting for ten  
 minutes.  
 6 He has had a beard since he was  
 20.

## 12.3

- 14.1 1 I've / I have never been to  
 New York.  
 2 He's/He has just got up.  
 3 They've/They have just  
 bought a car.  
 4 The race has just started.

## 13.1

- 15.1 1 I started (it) last week.  
 2 they arrived at 5 o'clock.  
 3 she went (away) on Friday.  
 5 I wore them yesterday.

## 15.2

- 16.1 1 played  
 2 A few days ago.  
 3 A few hours ago.  
 4 Two hours ago.  
 5 Six months ago.

## 11.5

- 3 have been  
 4 has been  
 5 have lived / have been living.  
 6 has worked / has been working  
 7 has had  
 8 have been learning

## 11.6

- 2 How long have they been there  
 / in Brazil?  
 3 How long have you known her?  
 4 How long has she been learning  
 Italian?  
 5 How long has he lived in  
 Canada? / How long has he  
 been living ...?  
 6 How long have you been a  
 teacher?

## 11.7

- 12.1 1 Helen:  
 2 Have you ever driven a bus?  
 3 Have you ever broken your leg?  
 4 Have you ever eaten Chinese  
 food?  
 5 Have you ever been to New  
 York?

## 12.2

- 13.1 1 Helen:  
 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.  
 3 They have been on holiday since  
 Sunday.  
 4 The sun has been shining all day.  
 5 She has been waiting for ten  
 minutes.  
 6 He has had a beard since he was  
 20.

## 12.3

- 14.1 1 I've / I have never been to  
 New York.  
 2 He's/He has just got up.  
 3 They've/They have just  
 bought a car.  
 4 The race has just started.

## 13.1

- 15.1 1 I started (it) last week.  
 2 they arrived at 5 o'clock.  
 3 she went (away) on Friday.  
 5 I wore them yesterday.

## 15.2

- 16.1 1 played  
 2 A few days ago.  
 3 A few hours ago.  
 4 Two hours ago.  
 5 Six months ago.

## 11.5

- 3 have been  
 4 has been  
 5 have lived / have been living.  
 6 has worked / has been working  
 7 has had  
 8 have been learning

## 11.6

- 2 How long have they been there  
 / in Brazil?  
 3 How long have you known her?  
 4 How long has she been learning  
 Italian?  
 5 How long has he lived in  
 Canada? / How long has he  
 been living ...?  
 6 How long have you been a  
 teacher?

## 11.7

- 12.1 1 Helen:  
 2 Have you ever driven a bus?  
 3 Have you ever broken your leg?  
 4 Have you ever eaten Chinese  
 food?  
 5 Have you ever been to New  
 York?

## 12.2

- 13.1 1 Helen:  
 2 She has lived in Wales all her life.  
 3 They have been on holiday since  
 Sunday.  
 4 The sun has been shining all day.  
 5 She has been waiting for ten  
 minutes.  
 6 He has had a beard since he was  
 20.

## 12.3

- 14.1 1 I've / I have never been to  
 New York.  
 2 He's/He has just got up.  
 3 They've/They have just  
 bought a car.  
 4 The race has

- 8 washed  
9 's/has visited  
10 hasn't come
- 20.4**
- 1 Did you have was  
2 Have you seen went  
haven't seen  
3 has worked / has been working was worked  
didn't enjoy
- 4 've/have seen 've/have never spoken  
Have you ever spoken met
- UNIT 21**
- 5 was given  
6 are shown  
7 were invited  
8 was made  
9 was stolen ... was found
2. Sally was born in Birmingham.  
3 Her parents were born in Ireland.  
4 I was born in ...  
5 My mother was born in ...
- UNIT 22**
- 2 A bridge is being built.  
3 The windows are being cleaned.  
4 The grass is being cut.
- UNIT 23**
- 3 Glass is made from sand.  
4 Stamps are sold in a post office.  
5 This room isn't used very often.  
6 Are we allowed to park here?  
7 How is this word pronounced?  
8 They have been invited to a party.  
9 The house was painted last month.  
10 Three people were injured in the accident.  
11 My bicycle was stolen a few days ago.  
12 When was this bridge built?  
13 Were you invited to the party last week?  
14 How were these windows broken?  
15 I wasn't woken up by the noise.
- UNIT 24**
- 2 Football is played in most ...  
3 Why was the letter sent to ...?  
4 ... where cars are repaired.  
5 Where were you born?  
6 How many languages are spoken ...  
7 ... but nothing was stolen.  
8 When was the bicycle invented?
- UNIT 25**
- 11 learnt/learned  
12 ridden  
13 known  
14 fell ... hurt
- 24.4**
- 2 Did  
3 were  
4 was  
5 Has  
6 did
- 2 've/have  
3 Have  
4 are  
5 were
- 2 eaten  
3 enjoyed  
4 damaged  
5 use
- 2 gone away  
3 understand  
4 listening  
5 pronounced  
6 open
- UNIT 26**
- 2 Did  
3 were  
4 was  
5 Has  
6 did
- 2 was  
3 Have  
4 are  
5 were
- 2 told  
3 won  
4 met  
5 woken up  
6 swam  
7 thought
- UNIT 27**
- 2 spoken  
3 cost  
4 driven  
5 sold  
6 flew
- UNIT 28**
- 2 'll/will  
3 won't  
4 won't
- UNIT 29**
- 2 'll/will  
3 won't  
4 won't
- UNIT 30**
- 2 'll/will  
3 won't  
4 won't
- UNIT 31**
- 2 I'm going away at the weekend.  
3 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.  
4 I'm meeting a friend this evening.  
5 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.
- UNIT 32**
- 2 I'm going ... We're meeting  
3 She's getting ... leaves  
4 are going ... are they going  
5 finishes
- UNIT 33**
- 2 I'm not going  
3 I'm going ... We're meeting  
4 are you getting ... leaves  
5 does the film begin  
10 are you doing ... I'm working
- UNIT 34**
- 2 I'm going to buy a newspaper.  
3 We're going to play football.  
4 I'm going to have a bath.
- UNIT 35**
- 2 are you doing  
3 They're going  
4 she'll lend  
5 I'm going  
6 will phone  
7 He's working  
8 Will
- UNIT 36**
- 2 I'm going to stay  
3 I'm going to eat  
4 're going to give  
5 go  
6 used to eat  
7 watches  
8 used to live  
9 get  
10 did you use to play
- UNIT 37**
- 2 I'm going to fall (down).  
3 The car is going to turn (left).  
4 He's/He is going to kick the ball.
- UNIT 38**
- 2 I think I'll have  
3 I don't think I'll play  
4 I don't think I'll buy
- UNIT 39**
- 2 I'll do  
3 I watch  
4 I'll go  
5 is going to buy  
6 I'll give
- UNIT 40**
- 2 I'm going to phone Ann this evening.  
2 I'm going to get up early  
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.  
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.

- 2 Are you working next week?  
3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?  
4 What time are your friends arriving?  
5 When is Liz going on holiday?
- 23.3**
- 2 Did  
3 were  
4 was  
5 Has  
6 did
- 2 was  
3 Have  
4 are  
5 were
- 2 told  
3 won  
4 met  
5 woken up  
6 swam  
7 thought
- 23.4**
- 2 've/have  
3 Have  
4 are  
5 were
- 2 spoken  
3 cost  
4 driven  
5 sold  
6 flew
- 23.5**
- 2 'll/will  
3 won't  
4 won't
- 23.6**
- 2 'll/will  
3 won't  
4 won't
- 23.7**
- 2 'll/will  
3 won't  
4 won't
- 23.8**
- 2 I'll be at home.  
3 I'll probably be in bed.  
4 I'll be at work.  
5 I don't know where I'll be.
- Example answers:**
- 2 I'll be at home.  
3 I'll probably be in bed.  
4 I'll be at work.  
5 I don't know where I'll be.
- 23.9**
- 2 I'm going away at the weekend.  
3 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.  
4 I'm meeting a friend this evening.  
5 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.
- 23.10**
- 2 I think we'll win the game.  
3 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.  
4 I think Sue will like her present.  
5 I think they'll get married.  
6 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.
- 23.11**
- 2 I'm not going  
3 I'm going ... We're meeting  
4 are you getting ... leaves  
5 does the film begin  
10 are you doing ... I'm working
- 23.12**
- 2 I'm going to buy a newspaper.  
3 We're going to play football.  
4 I'm going to have a bath.
- 23.13**
- 2 are you doing  
3 They're going  
4 she'll lend  
5 I'm going  
6 will phone  
7 He's working  
8 Will
- 23.14**
- 2 I'm going to stay  
3 I'm going to eat  
4 're going to give  
5 go  
6 used to eat  
7 watches  
8 used to live  
9 get  
10 did you use to play
- 23.15**
- 2 I'm going to fall (down).  
3 The car is going to turn (left).  
4 He's/He is going to kick the ball.
- 23.16**
- 2 I think I'll have  
3 I don't think I'll play  
4 I don't think I'll buy
- 23.17**
- 2 I'll do  
3 I watch  
4 I'll go  
5 is going to buy  
6 I'll give
- 23.18**
- 2 I'm going to phone Ann this evening.  
2 I'm going to get up early  
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.  
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.

- 2 Are you working next week?  
3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?  
4 What time are your friends arriving?  
5 When is Liz going on holiday?
- 23.1**
- 2 she'll be  
3 she was  
4 she'll be
- 23.2**
- 2 I'll be at home.  
3 I'll probably be in bed.  
4 I'll be at work.  
5 I don't know where I'll be.
- Example answers:**
- 2 I'll be at home.  
3 I'll probably be in bed.  
4 I'll be at work.  
5 I don't know where I'll be.
- 23.3**
- 2 I'm going away at the weekend.  
3 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.  
4 I'm meeting a friend this evening.  
5 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.
- 23.4**
- 2 I think we'll win the game.  
3 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.  
4 I think Sue will like her present.  
5 I think they'll get married.  
6 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.
- 23.5**
- 2 I'm not going  
3 I'm going ... We're meeting  
4 are you getting ... leaves  
5 does the film begin  
10 are you doing ... I'm working
- 23.6**
- 2 I'm going to buy a newspaper.  
3 We're going to play football.  
4 I'm going to have a bath.
- 23.7**
- 2 are you doing  
3 They're going  
4 she'll lend  
5 I'm going  
6 will phone  
7 He's working  
8 Will
- 23.8**
- 2 I'm going to stay  
3 I'm going to eat  
4 're going to give  
5 go  
6 used to eat  
7 watches  
8 used to live  
9 get  
10 did you use to play
- 23.9**
- 2 I'm going to fall (down).  
3 The car is going to turn (left).  
4 He's/He is going to kick the ball.
- 23.10**
- 2 I think I'll have  
3 I don't think I'll play  
4 I don't think I'll buy
- 23.11**
- 2 I'll do  
3 I watch  
4 I'll go  
5 is going to buy  
6 I'll give
- 23.12**
- 2 I'm going to phone Ann this evening.  
2 I'm going to get up early  
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.  
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.

- 2 Are you working next week?  
3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?  
4 What time are your friends arriving?  
5 When is Liz going on holiday?
- 23.1**
- 2 she'll be  
3 she was  
4 she'll be
- 23.2**
- 2 I'll be at home.  
3 I'll probably be in bed.  
4 I'll be at work.  
5 I don't know where I'll be.
- Example answers:**
- 2 I'll be at home.  
3 I'll probably be in bed.  
4 I'll be at work.  
5 I don't know where I'll be.
- 23.3**
- 2 I'm going away at the weekend.  
3 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.  
4 I'm meeting a friend this evening.  
5 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.
- 23.4**
- 2 I think we'll win the game.  
3 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.  
4 I think Sue will like her present.  
5 I think they'll get married.  
6 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.
- 23.5**
- 2 I'm not going  
3 I'm going ... We're meeting  
4 are you getting ... leaves  
5 does the film begin  
10 are you doing ... I'm working
- 23.6**
- 2 I'm going to buy a newspaper.  
3 We're going to play football.  
4 I'm going to have a bath.
- 23.7**
- 2 are you doing  
3 They're going  
4 she'll lend  
5 I'm going  
6 will phone  
7 He's working  
8 Will
- 23.8**
- 2 I'm going to stay  
3 I'm going to eat  
4 're going to give  
5 go  
6 used to eat  
7 watches  
8 used to live  
9 get  
10 did you use to play
- 23.9**
- 2 I'm going to fall (down).  
3 The car is going to turn (left).  
4 He's/He is going to kick the ball.
- 23.10**
- 2 I think I'll have  
3 I don't think I'll play  
4 I don't think I'll buy
- 23.11**
- 2 I'll do  
3 I watch  
4 I'll go  
5 is going to buy  
6 I'll give
- 23.12**
- 2 I'm going to phone Ann this evening.  
2 I'm going to get up early  
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.  
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.

- 2 Are you working next week?  
3 What are you doing tomorrow evening?  
4 What time are your friends arriving?  
5 When is Liz going on holiday?
- 23.1**
- 2 she'll be  
3 she was  
4 she'll be
- 23.2**
- 2 I'll be at home.  
3 I'll probably be in bed.  
4 I'll be at work.  
5 I don't know where I'll be.
- Example answers:**
- 2 I'll be at home.  
3 I'll probably be in bed.  
4 I'll be at work.  
5 I don't know where I'll be.
- 23.3**
- 2 I'm going away at the weekend.  
3 I'm playing basketball tomorrow.  
4 I'm meeting a friend this evening.  
5 I'm going to the cinema on Thursday evening.
- 23.4**
- 2 I think we'll win the game.  
3 I don't think I'll be here tomorrow.  
4 I think Sue will like her present.  
5 I think they'll get married.  
6 I don't think you'll enjoy the film.
- 23.5**
- 2 I'm not going  
3 I'm going ... We're meeting  
4 are you getting ... leaves  
5 does the film begin  
10 are you doing ... I'm working
- 23.6**
- 2 I'm going to buy a newspaper.  
3 We're going to play football.  
4 I'm going to have a bath.
- 23.7**
- 2 are you doing  
3 They're going  
4 she'll lend  
5 I'm going  
6 will phone  
7 He's working  
8 Will
- 23.8**
- 2 I'm going to stay  
3 I'm going to eat  
4 're going to give  
5 go  
6 used to eat  
7 watches  
8 used to live  
9 get  
10 did you use to play
- 23.9**
- 2 I'm going to fall (down).  
3 The car is going to turn (left).  
4 He's/He is going to kick the ball.
- 23.10**
- 2 I think I'll have  
3 I don't think I'll play  
4 I don't think I'll buy
- 23.11**
- 2 I'll do  
3 I watch  
4 I'll go  
5 is going to buy  
6 I'll give
- 23.12**
- 2 I'm going to phone Ann this evening.  
2 I'm going to get up early  
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.  
3 I'm going to buy some new clothes tomorrow.

- 28.4**
- 1 I can/can't swim.
  - 2 I can/can't ski.
  - 3 I can/can't play chess.
  - 4 I can/can't run ten kilometres.
  - 5 I can/can't drive.
  - 6 I can/can't ride a horse.
- 28.5**
- 1 where shall we go?
  - 2 what shall we buy?
  - 3 who shall we invite?
  - 4 who shall we go?

- 31.1**
- 1 I might see you tomorrow.
  - 2 I am might forget to phone.
  - 3 It might snow today.
  - 4 It might be late tonight.
  - 5 Mary might not be here.
  - 6 I might not have time to meet you.

- 31.2**
- 1 I might go away.
  - 2 I might see her on Monday.
  - 3 He might be at home tomorrow morning.
  - 4 He might watch television.
  - 5 He's going out in the afternoon.
  - 6 He might go shopping.
- 31.3**
- 1 I might read a newspaper.
  - 2 I might go for a drink with some friends.
  - 3 I might have an egg for breakfast.

- 31.4**
- Example answers:*
- 1 I can/can't swim.
  - 2 I can/can't ski.
  - 3 I can/can't play chess.
  - 4 I can/can't run ten kilometres.
  - 5 I can/can't drive.
  - 6 I can/can't ride a horse.

- 32.5**
- 1 needn't
  - 2 must
  - 3 had to
  - 4 must
  - 5 mustn't
  - 6 needn't
- 34.1**
- 1 can see
  - 2 can't find
  - 3 can't hear
  - 4 can speak

- 33.1**
- 1 couldn't eat
  - 2 can't decide
  - 3 couldn't find
  - 4 can't go
  - 5 couldn't go
- 33.2**
- 1 You should go
  - 2 You should clean
  - 3 you should visit
  - 4 you should wear
  - 5 You should take

- 33.3**
- 1 Can/Could you pass the salt, (please)?
  - 2 Can/Could you turn off the radio, (please)?
  - 3 Can/Could I have tomato soup, (please)?
  - 4 Can/Could you give me your phone number, (please)?
  - 5 Can/Could I borrow your pen, (please)? or Can/Could you lend me...?
- 33.4**
- 1 I think you should sell it.
  - 2 I think she should have a holiday.
  - 3 I don't think they should get married.
  - 4 I don't think you should go to work.
  - 5 I think he should go to the doctor.
  - 6 I don't think we should stay there.

- 33.5**
- 1 must
  - 2 must meet
  - 3 must wash
  - 4 must learn
  - 5 must go
  - 6 must win
  - 7 must be
- 34.2**
- 1 I must
  - 2 I had to
  - 3 I must
  - 4 I must

- 34.3**
- 1 have to go
  - 2 had to buy
  - 3 have to change
  - 4 had to answer
- 34.4**
- 1 did he have to wait
  - 2 does she have to go
  - 3 does you have to pay
  - 4 do you have to do
  - 5 do you have to
- 34.5**
- 1 doesn't have to wait.
  - 2 doesn't have to get up early.
  - 3 doesn't have to work (so) hard.
  - 4 doesn't have to work (so) hard.
  - 5 doesn't have to leave now.

- 34.6**
- 1 have to pay
  - 2 had to borrow
  - 3 must stop or have to stop
  - 4 has to meet
  - 5 must tell or have to tell
- 34.7**
- 1 Do you think I should learn (to drive)?
  - 2 Do you think I should get another job?
  - 3 Do you think I should invite Gary (to the party)?
  - 4 Do you think I should sell it.

- 34.8**
- 1 I have to go to work every day.
  - 2 I have to write a letter tomorrow.
  - 3 I have to tomorrow.
  - 4 I had to go to the dentist yesterday.
- 34.9**
- 1 There aren't many factories.
  - 2 There are two cinemas.
  - 3 There isn't a university.
  - 4 There are a lot of big hotels.
  - 5 There isn't an airport.

- 35.1**
- 1 There are nine planets in the solar system.
  - 2 There are fifteen players in a rugby team.
  - 3 There are twenty-six letters in the English alphabet.
  - 4 There are thirty days in September.
  - 5 There are fifty states in the USA.
- 35.2**
- 1 Is it ... if's / it is
  - 2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
  - 3 Would you like to see my holiday photographs?

- 36.5**
- 1 Would you like to go to a concert next week?
  - 2 It's ... Is it
  - 3 There's
  - 4 Would you like to borrow my umbrella?
  - 5 Is there ... there's
  - 6 It's
  - 7 Is there

- 37.1**
- 1 Do you like
  - 2 Do you like
  - 3 Would you like
  - 4 would you like
  - 5 Would you like
  - 6 I like
- 37.2**
- 1 Do you like
  - 2 There was a carpet
  - 3 There were three pictures
  - 4 There was a small table
  - 5 There were some flowers
  - 6 There were some books
  - 7 There was an armchair
  - 8 There was a sofa

- 37.3**
- 1 Do you like
  - 2 Do you like
  - 3 Do you like
  - 4 Do you like
  - 5 I'd like
- 37.4**
- 1 Do you like
  - 2 Do you like
  - 3 Do you like
  - 4 Do you like
  - 5 I'd like

- 37.5**
- 1 Do you like
  - 2 Do you like
  - 3 Do you like
  - 4 Do you like
  - 5 I'd like
- 37.6**
- 1 Do you like
  - 2 Do you like
  - 3 Do you like
  - 4 Do you like
  - 5 I'd like

- 38.1**
- 1 There's / There is a hospital.
  - 2 There isn't a swimming pool.
  - 3 There's / There is a swimming pool.
  - 4 There are two cinemas.
  - 5 There are two cimemas.
  - 6 There aren't any big hotels.
  - 7 There aren't any big hotels.
- 38.2**
- Example answers:*
- 1 There's / There is a university in ...
  - 2 There are a lot of big shops.
  - 3 There isn't an airport.
  - 4 There aren't many factories.
  - 5 There are two cinemas.
  - 6 There aren't any big hotels.
  - 7 There aren't any big hotels.

- 38.3**
- 1 There's / There is a university.
  - 2 There are a lot of big shops.
  - 3 There isn't an airport.
  - 4 There aren't many factories.
  - 5 There are two cinemas.
  - 6 There aren't any big hotels.
  - 7 There aren't any big hotels.
- 38.4**
- 1 There are
  - 2 There are
  - 3 There are
  - 4 There are
  - 5 Are there
  - 6 There are
  - 7 There are
  - 8 There are
  - 9 There's / There is ... There aren't
  - 10 There will be (or there are)

- 38.5**
- Example answers:*
- 1 Would you like an apple?
  - 2 Would you like some coffee? / ... a cup of coffee?
  - 3 Would you like some cheese? / ... a piece of cheese?
  - 4 Would you like a sandwich? / ... a piece of cake?
  - 5 Would you like some cake? / ... a piece of cake?
  - 6 It's cold.
  - 7 It's windy.
  - 8 It's sunny/fine.
  - 9 It's / It's a nice day.
  - 10 It's / It's

- 38.6**
- 1 Is it ... if's / it is
  - 2 Would you like to play tennis tomorrow?
  - 3 Would you like to see my holiday photographs?
  - 4 Is it ... if's / it is
  - 5 It's / It's
  - 6 It's
  - 7 Is it
  - 8 It's / It's
  - 9 It's / It's
  - 10 It's / It's

- 38.3**
- 2 How far is it from the hotel to the beach?
  - 3 How far is it from New York to Washington?
  - 4 How far is it from your house to the airport?
- 38.4**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It
- 38.5**
- 2 It's nice to see you again.
  - 3 It's impossible to work in this office.
  - 4 It's easy to make friends.
  - 5 It's interesting to visit different places.
  - 6 It's dangerous to go out alone

**Example answers:**

- 1 I like sport but my sister doesn't.
- 2 I don't eat meat but Jenny does.
- 3 I'm American but my husband isn't.
- 4 I haven't been to Japan but Jenny has.

**38.6**

- 1 Yes, I have, or No, I haven't.
- 2 Yes, I will, or No, I won't.
- 3 Yes, I do, or No, I don't.
- 4 Yes, it is, or No, it isn't.
- 5 Yes, I am, or No, I'm not.
- 6 Yes, I do, or No, I don't.
- 7 Yes, I will, or No, I won't.
- 8 Yes, I have, or No, I haven't.
- 9 Yes, I did, or No, I didn't.
- 10 Yes, I was, or No, I wasn't.

**38.7**

**40.1**

- 1 So am I.
- 2 So can I, or I can't.
- 3 Neither am I, or I am.
- 4 So do I, or I don't.
- 5 Neither do I, or I do.
- 6 So did I, or I didn't.
- 7 Neither have I, or I have.
- 8 Neither do I, or I do.
- 9 So am I, or I'm not.
- 10 Neither have I, or I have.
- 11 Neither did I, or I did.
- 12 So do I, or I don't.

**40.2**

**40.3**

**40.4**

**40.5**

**40.6**

**40.7**

**40.8**

**40.9**

**40.10**

**40.11**

**40.12**

**40.13**

**40.14**

**40.15**

**40.16**

**40.17**

**40.18**

**40.19**

**40.20**

**40.21**

**40.22**

**40.23**

**40.24**

**40.25**

**40.26**

**40.27**

**40.28**

**40.29**

**40.30**

**40.31**

**40.32**

**40.33**

**40.34**

**40.35**

**41.3**

- 1 So am I.
- 2 So can I, or I can't.
- 3 Neither am I, or I am.
- 4 So do I, or I don't.
- 5 Neither do I, or I do.
- 6 So did I, or I didn't.
- 7 Neither have I, or I have.
- 8 Neither do I, or I do.
- 9 So am I, or I'm not.
- 10 Neither have I, or I have.
- 11 Neither did I, or I did.
- 12 So do I, or I don't.

**41.4**

**41.5**

**41.6**

**41.7**

**41.8**

**41.9**

**41.10**

**41.11**

**41.12**

**41.13**

**41.14**

**41.15**

**41.16**

**41.17**

**41.18**

**41.19**

**41.20**

**41.21**

**41.22**

**41.23**

**41.24**

**41.25**

**41.26**

**41.27**

**41.28**

**41.29**

**41.30**

**41.31**

**41.32**

**41.33**

**41.34**

**41.35**

**41.36**

**41.37**

**41.38**

**41.39**

**41.40**

**41.41**

**41.42**

**41.43**

**41.44**

**41.45**

**41.46**

**41.47**

**41.48**

**41.49**

**41.50**

**41.51**

**41.52**

**41.53**

**41.54**

**41.55**

- 42.3**
- 3 He wasn't born in London.
  - 4 He doesn't like London.
  - 5 He'd like to live in the country.
  - 6 He can drive.
  - 7 He hasn't got a car.
  - 8 He doesn't read newspapers.
  - 9 He isn't interested in politics.
  - 10 He watches TV most evenings.
  - 11 He didn't watch TV last night.
  - 12 He went out last night.

- 42.4**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.5**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.6**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.7**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.8**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.9**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.10**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.11**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.12**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.13**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.14**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.15**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.16**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.17**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.18**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.19**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.20**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.21**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.22**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.23**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.24**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.25**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.26**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.27**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.28**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.29**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.30**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.31**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.32**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.33**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.34**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.35**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.36**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.37**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.38**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.39**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.40**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.41**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.42**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.43**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.44**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.45**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.46**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.47**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.48**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.49**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.50**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.51**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.52**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.53**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.54**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.55**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.56**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.57**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.58**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.59**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.60**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.61**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.62**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.63**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.64**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.65**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.66**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.67**
- 3 It
  - 4 There
  - 5 It
  - 6 it
  - 7 There
  - 8 It

- 42.68**
- 3 It
  -

**UNIT 7****UNIT 8****UNIT 9****UNIT 10****UNIT 11****UNIT 12****UNIT 13****UNIT 14****UNIT 15****UNIT 16****UNIT 17****UNIT 18****UNIT 19****UNIT 20****UNIT 21****UNIT 22****UNIT 23****UNIT 24****UNIT 25****UNIT 26****UNIT 27****UNIT 28****UNIT 29****UNIT 30****UNIT 31****UNIT 32****UNIT 33****UNIT 34****UNIT 35****UNIT 36****UNIT 37****UNIT 38****UNIT 39****UNIT 40****UNIT 41****UNIT 42****UNIT 43****UNIT 44****UNIT 45****UNIT 46****UNIT 47****UNIT 48****UNIT 49****UNIT 50****UNIT 51****UNIT 52****UNIT 53****UNIT 54****UNIT 55****UNIT 56****UNIT 57****UNIT 58****UNIT 59****UNIT 60****UNIT 61****UNIT 62****UNIT 63****UNIT 64****UNIT 65****UNIT 66****UNIT 67****UNIT 68****UNIT 69****UNIT 70****UNIT 71****UNIT 72****UNIT 73****UNIT 74****UNIT 75****UNIT 76****UNIT 77****UNIT 78****UNIT 79****UNIT 80****UNIT 81****UNIT 82****UNIT 83****UNIT 84****UNIT 85****UNIT 86****UNIT 87****UNIT 88****UNIT 89****UNIT 90****UNIT 91****UNIT 92****UNIT 93****UNIT 94****UNIT 95****UNIT 96****UNIT 97****UNIT 98****UNIT 99****UNIT 100****UNIT 101****UNIT 102****UNIT 103****UNIT 104****UNIT 105****UNIT 106****UNIT 107****UNIT 108****UNIT 109****UNIT 110****UNIT 111****UNIT 112****UNIT 113****UNIT 114****UNIT 115****UNIT 116****UNIT 117****UNIT 118****UNIT 119****UNIT 120****UNIT 121****UNIT 122****UNIT 123****UNIT 124****UNIT 125****UNIT 126****UNIT 127****UNIT 128****UNIT 129****UNIT 130****UNIT 131****UNIT 132****UNIT 133****UNIT 134****UNIT 135****UNIT 136****UNIT 137****UNIT 138****UNIT 139****UNIT 140****UNIT 141****UNIT 142****UNIT 143****UNIT 144****UNIT 145****UNIT 146****UNIT 147****UNIT 148****UNIT 149****UNIT 150****UNIT 151****UNIT 152****UNIT 153****UNIT 154****UNIT 155****UNIT 156****UNIT 157****UNIT 158****UNIT 159****UNIT 160****UNIT 161****UNIT 162****UNIT 163****UNIT 164****UNIT 165****UNIT 166****UNIT 167****UNIT 168****UNIT 169****UNIT 170****UNIT 171****UNIT 172****UNIT 173****UNIT 174****UNIT 175****UNIT 176****UNIT 177****UNIT 178****UNIT 179****UNIT 180****UNIT 181****UNIT 182****UNIT 183****UNIT 184****UNIT 185****UNIT 186****UNIT 187****UNIT 188****UNIT 189****UNIT 190****UNIT 191****UNIT 192****UNIT 193****UNIT 194****UNIT 195****UNIT 196****UNIT 197****UNIT 198****UNIT 199****UNIT 200****UNIT 201****UNIT 202****UNIT 203****UNIT 204****UNIT 205****UNIT 206****UNIT 207****UNIT 208****UNIT 209****UNIT 210****UNIT 211****UNIT 212****UNIT 213****UNIT 214****UNIT 215****UNIT 216****UNIT 217****UNIT 218****UNIT 219****UNIT 220****UNIT 221****UNIT 222****UNIT 223****UNIT 224****UNIT 225****UNIT 226****UNIT 227****UNIT 228****UNIT 229****UNIT 230****UNIT 231****UNIT 232****UNIT 233****UNIT 234****UNIT 235****UNIT 236****UNIT 237****UNIT 238****UNIT 239****UNIT 240****UNIT 241****UNIT 242****UNIT 243****UNIT 244****UNIT 245****UNIT 246****UNIT 247****UNIT 248****UNIT 249****UNIT 250****UNIT 251****UNIT 252****UNIT 253****UNIT 254****UNIT 255****UNIT 256****UNIT 257****UNIT 258****UNIT 259****UNIT 260****UNIT 261****UNIT 262****UNIT 263****UNIT 264****UNIT 265****UNIT 266****UNIT 267****UNIT 268****UNIT 269****UNIT 270****UNIT 271****UNIT 272****UNIT 273****UNIT 274****UNIT 275****UNIT 276****UNIT 277****UNIT 278****UNIT 279****UNIT 280****UNIT 281****UNIT 282****UNIT 283****UNIT 284****UNIT 285****UNIT 286****UNIT 287****UNIT 288****UNIT 289****UNIT 290****UNIT 291****UNIT 292****UNIT 293****UNIT 294****UNIT 295****UNIT 296****UNIT 297****UNIT 298****UNIT 299****UNIT 300****UNIT 301****UNIT 302****UNIT 303****UNIT 304****UNIT 305****UNIT 306****UNIT 307****UNIT 308****UNIT 309****UNIT 310****UNIT 311****UNIT 312****UNIT 313****UNIT 314****UNIT 315****UNIT 316****UNIT 317****UNIT**

- 54.2**  
2 went fishing.  
3 goes swimming  
4 going skiing.  
5 go shopping.  
6 went jogging

- 54.3**  
2 to the bank  
3 shopping  
4 to sleep

- 5 home  
6 skiing  
7 riding  
8 for a walk

- 9 on holiday ... to Portugal

- 55.1**  
2 get your jacket  
3 get a doctor  
4 get a taxi  
5 get the job  
6 get some milk  
7 get a ticket  
8 gets a good salary

- 55.2**  
2 getting dark  
3 getting married  
4 getting ready  
5 getting late

- 55.3**  
2 get wet  
3 got married  
4 get angry  
5 got lost

- 6 get old  
7 got better  
8 get nervous

- 55.4**  
2 got to Bristol at 11.45.  
3 I left the party at 11.15 and got home at midnight.

- 4 (Example answer) I left home at 8.30 and got to the airport at 10 o'clock.  
**55.5**  
2 got off  
3 got out of  
4 got on

- 3 He's/He is having a rest.  
4 They're/They are having a nice time.  
5 They're/They are having dinner.  
6 He's/He is having a bath.

- 57.3**  
2 Have a nice/good journey!  
3 Did you have a nice/good weekend?  
4 Did you have a nice/good game (of tennis)?  
5 Have a nice/good meal!

- 57.4**  
2 have something to eat  
3 had a glass of water  
4 have a walk  
5 had an accident  
6 have a look

- 58.1**  
2 He's/He is doing (their) homework.  
3 He's/He is doing the shopping, or he is shopping.  
4 She's/She is making a jacket.  
5 They're/They are doing an exam/examination. (or ... taking an exam.)  
6 She's/She is doing exercises.  
7 She's/She is making a phone-call, or She's/She is phoning somebody.  
8 He's/He is making the/his bed.

- 58.2**  
9 She's/She is doing the washing-up, or She is washing up. / She is doing the dishes. / She is washing the dishes.  
10 He's/He is making a (shopping) list.

- 11 They're/They are making a film.

- 12 He's/He is taking a photograph.

- 58.3**  
2 I ... them  
3 he ... her  
4 they ... us  
5 we ... you

- 6 my key  
3 Her husband  
4 your coat  
5 their homework  
6 his name  
7 Our house

- 58.4**  
2 I like him.  
3 I don't like it.  
4 Do you like it?  
5 I don't like her.  
6 Do you like them?

- 57.5**  
2 Can you give it to him?  
3 Can you give them to her?  
4 Can you give it to me?  
5 Can you give it to them?  
6 Can you give them to us?

- UNIT 59**
- 59.1**  
2 done  
3 make  
4 made  
5 did  
6 do

- 59.2**  
2 They're/They are doing (their) homework.  
3 He's/He is doing the shopping, or he is shopping.  
4 She's/She is making a jacket.  
5 They're/They are doing an exam/examination. (or ... taking an exam.)  
6 She's/She is doing exercises.  
7 She's/She is making a phone-call, or She's/She is phoning somebody.  
8 He's/He is making the/his bed.

- 59.3**  
2 They live with their parents.  
3 We live with our parents.  
4 Julia lives with her parents.  
5 I live with my parents.  
6 John lives with his parents.  
7 Do you live with your parents?  
8 Most children live with their parents.

- 59.4**  
2 their  
3 his  
4 his  
5 her

- 59.5**  
2 his  
3 Their  
4 our  
5 her  
6 my  
7 her  
8 their

- 61.1**  
2 Yes, I know her but I can't remember her name.  
3 Yes, I know them but I can't remember their names.  
4 Yes, I know you but I can't remember your name.

- 61.2**  
2 to stay with him at his house  
3 to stay with them at their house  
4 to stay with me at my house  
5 to stay with her at her house  
6 to stay with you at your house?

- 61.3**  
2 I gave her my address and she gave me hers.  
3 He gave me his address and I gave him mine.

- 4 We gave them our address and they gave us theirs.  
5 She gave him her address and he gave her his.  
6 You gave us your address and we gave you ours.  
7 They gave you their address and you gave them yours.

- 61.4**  
2 years  
3 my ... Mine  
4 Yours ... mine  
5 her  
6 My ... hers

- 63.2**  
2 Andy's  
3 David's  
4 Jane's

- 63.3**  
3 OK  
4 Bill's phone number

- UNIT 32**
- 32.1**  
2 her hands  
3 our hands  
4 his hands  
5 their hands  
6 your hands

- 32.2**  
2 When I saw him, he was by himself.  
3 Don't go out by yourself.  
4 I went to the cinema by myself.  
5 My sister lives by herself.  
6 Many people live by themselves.

- 32.3**  
2 Whose camera is this?  
3 It's hers.  
3 Whose gloves are these?  
4 Whose hat is this?  
5 Whose money is this?  
6 Whose books are these?

- 32.4**  
2 Whose camera is this?  
3 It's hers.  
3 Whose gloves are these?  
4 Whose hat is this?  
5 Whose money is this?  
6 Whose books are these?

- 32.5**  
2 Whose camera is this?  
3 It's hers.  
3 Whose gloves are these?  
4 Whose hat is this?  
5 Whose money is this?  
6 Whose books are these?

- 32.6**  
2 They can't see each other.  
3 They often write to each other.  
4 They don't know each other.  
5 They're / They are sitting next to each other.  
6 They gave each other presents/a present.

- 32.7**

- 32.8**  
2 each other  
3 each other  
4 yourselves  
5 us  
6 ourselves

- 32.9**

- 32.10**  
2 each other  
3 each other  
4 yourselves  
5 us  
6 themselves

- 32.11**

- 32.12**  
2 each other  
3 each other  
4 yourselves  
5 us  
6 themselves

- 32.13**

- UNIT 33**
- 33.1**  
2 others  
3 friends of ours  
4 friend of mine  
5 friend of his  
6 friend of yours

- 33.2**  
2 myself  
3 herself  
4 themselves  
5 myself

- 33.3**  
2 us  
3 her  
4 mine

- 33.4**  
2 us  
3 them  
4 they  
5 us  
6 She

- 33.5**  
2 them  
3 me  
4 her  
5 us  
6 He ... it

- 33.6**  
2 myself  
3 herself  
4 themselves  
5 myself

- 33.7**

- 33.8**  
2 myself  
3 herself  
4 themselves  
5 myself

- 33.9**

- 33.10**  
2 myself  
3 herself  
4 themselves  
5 myself

- 33.11**

- 33.12**  
2 them  
3 him  
4 yours

- 33.13**

- |                            |              |             |                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| 5 My brother's job         | 6 addresses  | 10 feet     | 15 OK                                |
| 6 OK                       | 7 knives     | 11 holidays | 16 ... an umbrella.                  |
| 7 OK                       | 8 sandwiches | 12 potatoes | <b>65.3</b>                          |
| 8 Paula's favourite colour | 9 families   |             | 2 a piece of wood                    |
| 9 your mother's birthday   |              |             | 3 a glass of water                   |
| 10 My parents' house       |              |             | 4 a bar of chocolate                 |
| 11 OK                      | <b>65.2</b>  |             | 5 a cup of tea                       |
| 12 OK                      | 2 teeth      | 5 fish      | 6 a piece of paper                   |
| 13 Sivia's Party           | 3 people     | 6 leaves    | 7 a bowl of soup                     |
| 14 OK                      | 4 children   |             | 8 a loaf of bread                    |
|                            |              |             | 9 a jar of honey                     |
|                            |              |             | <b>65.3</b>                          |
|                            |              |             | 3 ... with a lot of beautiful trees. |

15 OK  
 16 ... an umbrella.  
  
 17 a piece of wood  
 18 a glass of water  
 19 a bar of chocolate  
 20 a cup of tea  
 21 a piece of paper  
 22 a bowl of soup  
 23 a loaf of bread  
 24 a jar of honey

**UNIT 5**

67.1

2 I bought a newspaper (*or a paper*), some flowers (*or a bunch of flowers*) and a pen.

3 I bought some stamps, some postcards and some bread (*or a loaf of bread*).

4 I bought some toothpaste, some soap (*or a bar of soap*) and a

672 2 Would you like some coffee?  
(or ... a cup of coffee?)

3 Would you like a biscuit?

4 Would you like some bread?  
(or ... a piece of bread / a slice  
of bread?)

5 Would you like a chocolate?

6 Would you like some chocolate?  
(or ... a piece of chocolate?)

2 some ... some	2 eyes	2 information	2 furniture	2 job	2 lovely weather
3 some	3 hair	3 chairs	3 furniture	3 job	3 lovely weather
4 a ... some	4 information	4 chairs	4 furniture	4 job	4 lovely weather
5 an ... some	5 chairs	5 furniture	5 job	5 lovely weather	
6 a ... a ... some	6 furniture	6 job	6 lovely weather		
7 some	7 job	7 lovely weather			
8 some	8 some	8 some	8 some	8 some	8 some
9 some ... a	9 some ... a	9 some ... a	9 some ... a	9 some ... a	9 some ... a

- 11 the station  
12 OK  
13 OK  
14 OK  
15 the theatre

---

ANSWER

7.1

Example answers  
1 I don't like dancing.

2 the same time  
3 the same age  
4 the same colour  
5 the same problem

2 the guitar  
3 breakfast  
4 the radio  
5 television/TV

33. 4  
the name  
The sky  
television  
the police  
the capital  
lunch  
the middle

34. 2  
2 the name  
3 The sky  
4 television  
5 the police  
6 the capital  
7 lunch  
8 the middle

2 the cinema	3 school
3 hospital	4 the station
4 the airport	5 home
5 home	6 bed
6 Prison	7 the post office

77.8  
2 the cinema  
3 go to bed  
4 go to prison  
5 go to the dentist  
6 go to university/college  
7 go to hospital / are taken to hospital

77.9  
2 the doctor  
3 the bank  
4 OK  
5 OK  
6 OK  
7 OK  
8 OK  
9 OK  
10 the city centre

- UNIT 68**

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9

3 a 4 the 5 an 6 the ... the  
7 a ... a 8 a ... a  
9 ... a student ... a journalist ...  
a flat near the college ... The

1990-1991  
Yearbook

*ra*, a bunch  
one end (or a  
te, some  
d a

coffee?  
tea?  
bread?  
/ a slice  
late?  
chocolate?  
ite?)

Figure 1. A photograph of the surface of a sample of  $\text{Fe}_3\text{O}_4$  taken at a distance of 1 m from the sample.

- |    |            |
|----|------------|
| 10 | feet       |
| 6  | addresses  |
| 7  | knives     |
| 8  | sandwiches |
| 9  | families   |
| 5  | fish       |
| 6  | leaves     |
| 2  | teeth      |
| 3  | people     |
| 4  | children   |

FIGURE 2

job  
favourite colour  
is birthday  
ouse

8 an  
9 an

ment  
stant.  
rapher.  
er.  
ian.  
etective.

ars a hat.  
cycle.  
n artist.  
n a bookshop.  
arn a foreign  
old house.  
m going to



4 cities  
5 umbrellas

- 11 the station  
12 OK  
13 OK  
14 OK  
15 the theatre

---

4 I love big cities.  
 5 I like basketball.  
 6 I love TV quiz shows.  
 7 I don't like loud music.  
 8 I hate computer games.

**71** **2**

*Example answers:*

- 2 I'm not interested in polo.
- 3 I'm interested in sport.
- 4 I don't know much about it.
- 5 I don't know anything about it.

6 I know a little about cooking

7 1.3

3 friends	4 parties
5 The shops	6 the milk
7 milk	8 football
9 computers	10 The water
11 cold water	

13 the people  
14 Vegetables  
15 the children  
16 the words  
17 photographs  
18 the photographs  
19 English ... international  
business  
20 Money ... happiness

UNIT 2

72.1



**UNIT 31**

- 1 5 a lot of money  
6 OK  
7 OK  
8 a lot
- 31.1**  
3 Both 9 Neither  
4 Neither 10 either of  
5 Neither 11 Both  
6 both 12 neither of  
7 Either 13 Both  
8 neither of 14 either of
- 31.2**  
1 Both windows are open.  
2 Neither man is wearing a hat.  
3 Both men have (got) cameras, or ... are carrying cameras.  
4 Both buses go to the airport, or ... are going to the airport.  
5 Both answer is right.
- 31.3**  
3 Both of them are students.  
4 Neither of them has (got) a car.  
5 Both of them live in London.  
6 Both of them like cooking.  
7 Neither of them can play the piano.  
8 Both of them read newspapers.  
9 Neither of them is interested in sport.

**UNIT 32**

- 1 5 many  
2 many 8 many  
3 much 9 How many  
4 many 10 How much  
5 many 11 How much  
6 much 12 How many  
7 much
- 32.1**  
1 a lot of accidents  
2 much time  
3 many countries  
4 many people  
5 much luggage  
6 many times
- 32.2**  
1 a lot of interesting things  
2 a lot of fun  
3 a lot of traffic
- 32.3**  
1 a few questions  
2 ... few people
- 32.4**  
1 a few  
2 a few  
3 a little  
4 a little
- 32.5**  
1 a little luck  
2 ... a few things  
3 ... a few things  
4 OK  
5 ... a few questions  
6 ... few people
- 32.6**  
1 a lot of snow  
2 OK

**UNIT 33**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.
- 33.1**  
1 a lot of money  
2 bigger  
3 slower  
4 more expensive  
5 higher  
6 more dangerous
- 33.2**  
1 black clouds  
2 long holiday  
3 hot water  
4 fresh air  
5 sharp knife  
6 dangerous job
- 33.3**  
1 It looks new.  
2 I feel ill.  
3 You look surprised.  
4 You look surprised.  
5 They smell nice.  
6 It tastes horrible.
- 33.4**  
1 It doesn't look new.  
2 It doesn't sound American.  
3 You don't feel cold.  
4 They don't look heavy.  
5 It doesn't taste good.
- 33.5**

**UNIT 34**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.
- 34.1**  
1 a lot of money  
2 bigger  
3 slower  
4 more expensive  
5 higher  
6 more dangerous
- 34.2**  
1 black clouds  
2 long holiday  
3 hot water  
4 fresh air  
5 sharp knife  
6 dangerous job
- 34.3**  
1 It looks new.  
2 I feel ill.  
3 You look surprised.  
4 You look surprised.  
5 They smell nice.  
6 It tastes horrible.
- 34.4**  
1 It doesn't look new.  
2 It doesn't sound American.  
3 You don't feel cold.  
4 They don't look heavy.  
5 It doesn't taste good.
- 34.5**

**UNIT 35**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.
- 35.1**  
1 a lot of money  
2 bigger  
3 slower  
4 more expensive  
5 higher  
6 more dangerous
- 35.2**  
1 a lot of coffee  
2 very little rain  
3 very few hotels  
4 very little time  
5 very few people  
6 very little work
- 35.3**  
1 a few  
2 a few  
3 a little  
4 a little
- 35.4**  
1 a few  
2 a few  
3 a little  
4 a little
- 35.5**  
1 a lot of time  
2 angry  
3 slowly  
4 slow  
5 careful  
6 hard

**UNIT 36**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.
- 36.1**  
1 a lot of money  
2 bigger  
3 slower  
4 more expensive  
5 higher  
6 more dangerous
- 36.2**  
1 black clouds  
2 long holiday  
3 hot water  
4 fresh air  
5 sharp knife  
6 dangerous job
- 36.3**  
1 It looks new.  
2 I feel ill.  
3 You look surprised.  
4 You look surprised.  
5 They smell nice.  
6 It tastes horrible.
- 36.4**  
1 It doesn't look new.  
2 It doesn't sound American.  
3 You don't feel cold.  
4 They don't look heavy.  
5 It doesn't taste good.
- 36.5**

**UNIT 37**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.
- 37.1**  
1 a lot of money  
2 bigger  
3 slower  
4 more expensive  
5 higher  
6 more dangerous
- 37.2**  
1 a lot of coffee  
2 very little rain  
3 very few hotels  
4 very little time  
5 very few people  
6 very little work
- 37.3**  
1 a few  
2 a few  
3 a little  
4 a little
- 37.4**  
1 a few  
2 a few  
3 a little  
4 a little
- 37.5**  
1 a lot of time  
2 angry  
3 slowly  
4 slow  
5 careful  
6 hard

**UNIT 38**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 39**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 40**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 41**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 42**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 43**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 44**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 45**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 46**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 47**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 48**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 49**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 50**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 51**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 52**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 53**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 54**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 55**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 56**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 57**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 58**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 59**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 60**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 61**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 62**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 63**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 64**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 65**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 66**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 67**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 68**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 69**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 70**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 71**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 72**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 73**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 74**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 75**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 76**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 77**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 78**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 79**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 80**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 81**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 82**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 83**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 84**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 85**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 86**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 87**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 88**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 89**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 90**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 91**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 92**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 93**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 94**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 95**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 96**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 97**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 98**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 99**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 100**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 101**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 102**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 103**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 104**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 105**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 106**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 107**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 108**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 109**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 110**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 111**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 112**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 113**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 114**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 115**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 116**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 117**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 118**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 119**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 120**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 121**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 122**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 123**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 124**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 125**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 126**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 127**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 128**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 129**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 130**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 131**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 132**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 133**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 134**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 135**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 136**

- 4 I had a wonderful holiday.  
5 We went to a Chinese restaurant.

**UNIT 137**

- §1.2**
- 1 the happiest day
  - 2 the best film
  - 3 the most popular singer
  - 4 the worst mistake
  - 5 the prettiest village
  - 6 the prettiest day
  - 7 the coldest day
  - 8 the most boring person
- §1.3**
- 1 Everest is the highest mountain in the world.
  - 2 It's too far.
  - 3 It's too expensive.
  - 4 It isn't / It's not big enough.
  - 5 It was too difficult.
  - 6 It was too long.
  - 7 I'm too busy.
  - 8 I was too tired.

**§1.4**

Jupiter is the largest planet in the solar system.  
The Nile is the longest river in Africa. / ... in the world.

**§1.5**

The car isn't big enough.  
His legs aren't long enough.  
He isn't strong enough.

**§1.6**

sharp enough to cut  
warm enough to have  
enough bread to make  
well enough to win  
enough time to read

- §2.1**
- 1 Did you buy that jacket in England?
  - 2 I arrived at the hotel early.
  - 3 Julia goes to Italy every year.
  - 4 We have lived here since 1988.
  - 5 Sue was born in London in 1960.
  - 6 Paul didn't go to work yesterday.
  - 7 Ann went to the bank yesterday afternoon.
  - 8 I had my breakfast in bed this morning.
  - 9 Barbara is going to university in October.
  - 10 I saw a beautiful bird in the garden this morning.
  - 11 My parents have been to the United States many times.
  - 12 I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night.
  - 13 Are you going to the cinema tomorrow evening?
  - 14 I took the children to school this morning.

**§2.2**

I like this picture very much.  
Tom started his new job last week.  
OK

**§2.3**

old enough  
enough time  
big enough  
eat enough  
enough fruit  
tired enough  
practise enough

- §2.4**
- sharp enough to cut  
warm enough to have  
enough bread to make  
well enough to win  
enough time to read
- §2.5**
- He was looking for a job.  
He's / He is still looking (for a job).  
He hasn't found a job yet.
- §2.6**
- She was asleep / sleeping.  
She's / She is still asleep / sleeping, or ... still in bed.

- §2.7**
- Susan is always polite.  
I usually finish work at 5 o'clock.
- §2.8**
- Paul passed the exam easily.  
Ann doesn't speak French very well.
- §2.9**
- I did a lot of work yesterday.  
Do you know London well?
- §2.10**
- We enjoyed the party very much.  
They were eating.
- §2.11**
- They're / They are still having dinner. / ... still eating.

- §3.1**
- 1 They always stay in the same hotel.
  - 2 Diane doesn't usually work on Saturdays.
  - 3 Is Tina already here?
  - 4 What do you usually have for breakfast?
  - 5 I can never remember his name.
  - 6 Sue was born in London in 1960.
  - 7 Yes, and I also speak French.
  - 8 Yes, and I'm also hungry.
  - 9 Yes, and I've also been to Ireland.
  - 10 Yes, and I also bought some books.

**§3.2**

They're / They are both students.  
They've both got cars. / They both have cars.

**§3.3**

They are / They're all married. They were all born in England. They all live in New York.

- §3.4**
- 1 They both play football.
  - 2 They are / They're all married. They were all born in England.
  - 3 She's / She has already gone / left.
  - 4 I've already got one. / I already have one.
  - 5 I've / I have already paid (it).
  - 6 He already knows.
- §3.5**
- 1 He gave it to Gary.
  - 2 He gave them to Sarah.
  - 3 He gave it to his sister.
  - 4 He gave them to Robert.
  - 5 He gave it to a neighbour.
  - 6 He gave Joanna a plant.
  - 7 He gave Richard some gloves / a pair of gloves.
  - 8 He gave Diane some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
  - 9 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.
  - 10 I gave Kevin a pen.

- §3.6**
- 1 Are you still living in Clare Street?
  - 2 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
  - 3 Do you still want to be a teacher?
  - 4 Do you still have ...
  - 5 Do you still go to the cinema a lot?
  - 6 Do you still want to be a teacher?
- §3.7**
- 1 He always gets up early.
  - 2 He always goes swimming.
  - 3 He's / He is never late for work.
  - 4 He sometimes gets angry.
  - 5 He often goes swimming.
  - 6 He's / He is usually at home in the evenings.
- §3.8**
- 1 I will never forget what you said.
  - 2 I have ever lost your passport?
  - 3 Do you still work in the same place?

- §4.1**
- 1 They haven't finished (dinner) yet. / They haven't finished eating yet.
  - 2 Is Ann here yet? or Has Ann arrived / come yet?
  - 3 Have you got your (exam) results yet? / Have you had your ... / Have you received your ...
  - 4 Have you decided where to go yet? / Do you know where you're going yet?
  - 5 She's / She has already gone / left.
  - 6 I've already got one. / I already have one.
  - 7 I've / I have already paid (it).
  - 8 He already knows.

**§4.2**

- 1 What do you usually have for breakfast?
- 2 I am / I have / I've never remembered his name.
- 3 We have lived here since 1988.
- 4 Sue was born in London in 1960.
- 5 Yes, and I also speak French.
- 6 Yes, and I'm also hungry.
- 7 Yes, and I've also been to Ireland.
- 8 Yes, and I also bought some books.

**§4.3**

- 1 They're / They are both students.
- 2 They've both got cars. / They both have cars.
- 3 She's / She has already gone / left.
- 4 I've / I have already paid (it).
- 5 I've / I have already paid (it).
- 6 He already knows.

- §4.4**
- 1 They both play football.
  - 2 They are / They're all married. They were all born in England.
  - 3 She's / She has already gone / left.
  - 4 I've / I have already paid (it).
  - 5 I've / I have already paid (it).
  - 6 He already knows.
- §4.5**
- 1 He gave it to Gary.
  - 2 He gave them to Sarah.
  - 3 He gave it to his sister.
  - 4 He gave them to Robert.
  - 5 He gave it to a neighbour.
  - 6 He gave Joanna a plant.
  - 7 He gave Richard some gloves / a pair of gloves.
  - 8 He gave Diane some chocolates / a box of chocolates.
  - 9 I gave Rachel some flowers / a bunch of flowers.
  - 10 I gave Kevin a pen.

- §4.6**
- 1 Can you lend me an umbrella?
  - 2 Can you give me your address?
  - 3 Can you lend me ten pounds?
  - 4 Can you send me some information?
  - 5 Can you show me the letter?
  - 6 Can you get me some stamps?
  - 7 I'll phone you in three days.
  - 8 I'm exam is in two weeks.
  - 9 Tom will be here in half an hour. / ... in 30 minutes.
- §4.7**
- 1 I will never forget what you said.
  - 2 I have ever lost your passport?
  - 3 Do you still work in the same place?

- UNIT 5**
- 5 while  
6 during  
7 while  
8 for  
9 during  
10 while
- 33.3**
- 2 eating  
3 answering  
4 having/taking  
5 finishing/doing  
6 going/travelling
- 33.4**
- 2 John worked in a bookshop for two years after leaving school.  
3 Before going to sleep, I read a few pages of my book.  
4 After walking for three hours, we were very tired.  
5 Let's have a cup of coffee before going out.
- 37.1**
- 2 Alex lived in Canada until 1990.  
3 Alex has lived in England since 1990.  
4 Alice lived in France until 1991.  
5 Alice has lived in Switzerland since 1991.  
6 Carol worked in a hotel from 1990 to 1993.  
7 Carol has worked in a restaurant since 1993.  
8 Gerry was a teacher from 1983 to 1989.  
9 Gerry has been a salesman since 1989.  
11 Alex has lived in England for ..... years.  
12 Alice has lived in Switzerland for ..... years.  
13 Carol worked in a hotel for three years.  
14 Carol has worked in a restaurant for ..... years.  
15 Gerry was a teacher for six years.  
16 Gerry has been a salesman for ..... years.
- 37.2**
- 2 until 9 since  
3 for 10 until  
4 since 11 for  
5 Until 12 until  
6 for 13 Since  
7 for 14 for  
8 until

- 33.1**
- 2 In the box.  
3 On the box.  
4 On the wall.  
5 At the bus stop.  
6 In the field.  
7 On the balcony.  
8 In the pool.  
9 At the window.  
10 On the ceiling.  
11 On the table.  
12 At the table.
- 33.2**
- 2 in  
3 on  
4 in  
5 on  
6 at  
7 in  
8 in  
9 at  
10 at a restaurant ... to the hotel
- 37.3**
- 2 to 9 to  
3 to 10 at  
4 in 11 at  
5 to 12 to Mary's house  
6 to ... at home  
7 at 13 - (no preposition)  
8 to 14 study at ... go to

- 37.4**
- 2 after lunch  
3 before the end  
4 during the course  
5 before they went to Australia  
6 during the night  
7 while you are waiting  
8 after the concert
- 33.2**
- 3 while  
4 for

- 101.3**
- 1 to  
2 - (no preposition)  
3 at  
4 in  
5 to  
6 - (no preposition)
- 101.4**
- 1 with  
2 without  
3 by  
4 about  
5 at  
6 by  
7 on  
8 with
- 101.5**
- 1 with  
2 in  
3 to  
4 at  
5 with  
6 of
- 101.6**
- 1 with  
2 in  
3 to  
4 at  
5 with  
6 of

- 101.7**
- 1 off  
2 over  
3 off  
4 out of  
5 across  
6 round/around
- 101.8**
- 1 through  
2 at  
3 to  
4 about  
5 of  
6 of
- 101.9**
- 1 from  
2 round/around  
3 on  
4 round/around  
5 into the house through a window

- 101.10**
- 1 out of  
2 round/around  
3 in  
4 from here to the airport  
5 round/around
- 101.11**
- 1 behind  
2 next to / beside / by  
3 in front of  
4 between  
5 next to / beside / by  
6 in front of  
7 behind  
8 on the left  
9 in the middle
- 101.12**
- 1 behind  
2 between  
3 above  
4 in front of  
5 on  
6 by / next to / beside  
7 below / under  
8 above  
9 under
- 101.13**
- 1 out of  
2 round/around  
3 in  
4 from here to the airport  
5 round/around

- 101.14**
- 1 from  
2 interested in going  
3 good at getting  
4 fed up with waiting  
5 sorry for waking
- 101.15**
- 1 for getting angry with you
- 101.16**
- 1 from  
2 round/around  
3 in  
4 from here to the airport  
5 round/around
- 101.17**
- 1 behind  
2 next to / beside  
3 in  
4 on/over  
5 over  
6 on/over  
7 over  
8 out of
- 101.18**
- 1 from  
2 round/around  
3 in  
4 from here to the airport  
5 round/around

- 101.19**
- 1 behind  
2 next to / beside  
3 in  
4 on/over  
5 over  
6 on/over  
7 over  
8 out of
- 101.20**
- 1 from  
2 round/around  
3 in  
4 from here to the airport  
5 round/around
- 101.21**
- 1 behind  
2 next to / beside  
3 in  
4 on/over  
5 over  
6 on/over  
7 over  
8 out of
- 101.22**
- 1 from  
2 round/around  
3 in  
4 from here to the airport  
5 round/around

## UNIT 16

1 **9 up**

10 going away ... coming back

**107.3**

2 Hold on

3 slowed down

4 takes off

5 get on

6 speak up

7 broken down

8 fall over / fall down

9 carried on

10 gave up

**107.4****108.1**

3 I went to the window and (I) looked out.

4 I wanted to phone you but I didn't have your number.

5 I jumped into the river and (I) swam to the other side.

6 I usually drive to work but I went by bus this morning.

7 Do you want me to come with you or shall I wait here?

**108.2**

(no preposition)

13 to

14 on

15 of/about

**108.3**

1 at

2 after

3 for

4 after

5 at

6 for

10 for

11 to

12 -

Example answers:

2 She took off her hat, or She took her hat off.

3 He put down his bag, or He put his bag down.

4 She picked up the magazine, or She picked the magazine up.

5 He put on his sunglasses, or He put his sunglasses on.

6 She turned off the tap, or She turned the tap off.

**108.4**

Example answers:

3 It depends on the programme.

4 It depends (on) what it is.

5 It depends on the weather.

6 It depends (on) how much you want.

**107.5**

2 went in

3 looked up

4 rode off

5 turned round/around or looked round/around

6 got off

7 sat down

8 got out

**107.6**

2 away/out

3 round/around

4 going out ... be back

5 down

6 over

7 back

8 in

9 gave it up or gave up (*without* it)

10 put out your cigarette / put your cigarette out

**110.2**

2 when they heard the news

3 they went to live in New Zealand

4 while they were away before they came here

5 somebody broke into the house

6 they didn't believe me

**110.3**

2 I finish

3 it's

4 I'll be ... she leaves

5 stops

**110.4**

2 When

3 If

4 If

5 if

6 When

7 if

8 when ... if

**110.5**

2 A patient

3 A dentist

4 A fool

5 A genius

6 A liar

**110.6**

2 a musical instrument.

3 A musician

4 a person who looks after your teeth.

5 A dentist is a person who looks after your teeth.

6 A fool is a person who is very stupid.

7 A genius is a person who is very intelligent.

8 A liar is a person who doesn't tell the truth.

**110.7**

2 The woman who opened the door was wearing a yellow dress.

3 Most of the students who took the exam passed (it).

4 The policeman who stopped our car wasn't very friendly.

**110.8**

2 ... she knew

3 we had

4 which

5 who

6 which

7 who

8 who

9 which

10 the salary was/were

11 I wouldn't know

12 would you change

**110.9**

2 If you pass the exam, you'll get a certificate.

3 I went to the cinema but the film wasn't very good.

4 I went to a café and met some friends of mine.

5 There was a film on television, so I watched it.

6 I got up in the middle of the night because I couldn't sleep.

**110.10**

2 He put his jacket on.

3 He put it on.

4 She took off her glasses.

5 She took them off.

6 Put your pens down.

7 They gave the money back.

8 I turned off the lights.

9 I turned them off.

**110.11**

2 When I'm tired, I like to watch TV.

3 When I phoned her, there was no answer.

4 When I go on holiday, I always go to the same place.

5 When the programme ended, I switched off the TV.

6 When I arrived at the hotel, there were no rooms.

**110.12**

2 away/out

3 round/around

4 look it up

5 throw them away

6 fill it in

7 tried on a pair of shoes / tried a pair of shoes on

8 showed me round (or around)

5 ... you're not watching it.

6 ... she doesn't study.

7 ... I'll go and see Chris.

8 ... the weather is good.

**110.13**

2 A butcher

3 a person who sells meat.

4 A musician

5 a person who plays a musical instrument.

6 A patient

7 A hospital

8 A dentist

9 A fool

10 A genius

11 A liar

12 the truth.

**110.14**

2 When

3 If

4 If

5 if

6 When

7 if

8 when ... if

**110.15**

2 ... she invite

3 I give

4 I'll phone

5 I'll be ... get

6 Will you go ... they invite

**110.16**

2 ... people who/that never stop talking.

3 OK (who is also correct)

4 OK (what is also correct)

5 OK (that is also correct)

6 OK (the sentences that/which are wrong).

**110.17**

2 ... coffee.

3 ... machine that/which makes

4 OK (which is also correct)

5 ... people who/that never stop talking.

6 OK (who is also correct)

7 OK (that is also correct)

8 ... the sentences that/which are wrong.

**110.18**

2 Example answers:

1 I'd go to Antarctica

2 I didn't have any friends

3 I had enough money

4 I'd call the police

5 there were no guns

6 ... you'll feel better in the morning.

**110.19**

2 Example answers:

1 I'd go to ...

2 ...

**110.20**

2 Example answers:

1 I'd go to ...

2 ...

3 ...

4 ...

5 ...

6 ...

7 ...

8 ...

9 ...

10 ...

11 ...

12 ...

13 ...

14 ...

15 ...

16 ...

17 ...

18 ...

19 ...

20 ...

21 ...

22 ...

23 ...

24 ...

25 ...

26 ...

27 ...

28 ...

29 ...

30 ...

31 ...

32 ...

33 ...

34 ...

35 ...

36 ...

37 ...

38 ...

39 ...

40 ...

41 ...

42 ...

43 ...

44 ...

45 ...

46 ...

47 ...

48 ...

49 ...

50 ...

51 ...

52 ...

53 ...

54 ...

55 ...

56 ...

57 ...

58 ...

59 ...

60 ...

61 ...

62 ...

63 ...

64 ...

65 ...

66 ...

67 ...

68 ...

69 ...

70 ...

71 ...

72 ...

73 ...

74 ...

75 ...

76 ...

77 ...

78 ...

79 ...

80 ...

81 ...

82 ...

83 ...

84 ...

85 ...

86 ...

87 ...

88 ...

89 ...

90 ...

91 ...

92 ...

93 ...

94 ...

95 ...

96 ...

97 ...

98 ...

99 ...

100 ...

101 ...

102 ...

103 ...

104 ...

105 ...

106 ...

107 ...

108 ...

109 ...

110 ...

111 ...

112 ...

113 ...

114 ...

115 ...

116 ...

117 ...

118 ...

119 ...

120 ...

121 ...

122 ...

123 ...

124 ...

125 ...

126 ...

127 ...

## UNIT 14

- 1 3 The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.  
4 The people we invited to dinner didn't come.
- 114.1  
2 I've lost the pen you gave me.  
3 I like the jacket Sue is wearing.  
4 Where are the flowers I gave you?  
5 I didn't believe the story he told us.
- 114.2  
2 The meal you cooked was excellent.
- 114.3  
2 Who are the people you spoke to?  
3 Did you find the keys you were looking for?  
4 The house they live in is too small for them.  
5 The map I looked at wasn't very clear.  
6 I fell off the chair I was sitting on.
- 114.4  
2 What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?  
3 Do you like the village where you live?  
4 How big is the factory where you work?

- 7 The bus we were waiting for was very late.  
8 Who is the man Linda is dancing with?

## Key to Additional exercises

- 3 The shoes I'm wearing aren't very comfortable.  
4 The people we invited to dinner didn't come.
- 114.3  
2 Who are the people you spoke to?  
3 Did you find the keys you were looking for?  
4 The house they live in is too small for them.  
5 The map I looked at wasn't very clear.  
6 I fell off the chair I was sitting on.

- 2 What's the name of the restaurant where you had dinner?  
3 Do you like the village where you live?  
4 How big is the factory where you work?

- 7 The bus we were waiting for was very late.  
8 Who is the man Linda is dancing with?

- 1 3 Kate is a doctor.  
4 The children are asleep.  
5 Bill isn't hungry.  
6 The books aren't on the table.  
7 The hotel is near the station.  
8 The bus isn't full.
- 2 3 she's/she is  
4 Where are  
5 Is he  
6 It's/It is  
7 I'm/I am or  
8 No, I'm not. I'm a student.  
9 Is it  
10 Are you  
11 How much are
- 3 3 He's/He is having a bath.  
4 Are the children playing?  
5 Is it raining?  
6 They're/They are coming now.  
7 Why are you standing here?  
I'm/I am waiting for somebody.
- 4 3 Chris doesn't want  
4 Do you want  
5 Does Ann live  
6 Sarah knows  
7 I don't travel  
8 I don't watch  
9 do you usually get up  
10 They don't go out  
11 Tim always finishes  
12 does Jill do ... She works
- 5 3 She's/She is a student.  
4 She hasn't got a car.  
5 She goes out a lot.  
6 She's got / She has got a lot of friends.  
7 She doesn't like London.  
8 She likes dancing.  
9 She isn't / She's not interested in sport.

- 1 3 Are you married?  
2 Where do you live?  
3 Have you got / Do you have any children?  
4 How old is she?  
5 What do you do? / Where do you work? / What's your job?  
6 Do you like/enjoy your job?  
7 Have you got / Do you have a car?  
8 Do you (usually) go to work by car?  
9 What's his name? / What's he called?  
10 Does he live/work in London?
- 7 4 Sonia is 32 years old.  
5 I've got / I have two sisters.  
6 We often watch TV in the evening.  
7 Ann never wears a hat.  
8 A bicycle has got two wheels.  
9 These flowers are beautiful.  
10 Mary speaks German very well.
- 8 4 I didn't speak  
5 I heard ...  
6 Where did you stay?  
7 Was the weather good?  
8 When did you get/come back?
- 13 3 I forgot  
4 did you get  
5 I didn't speak  
6 Did you have  
7 he didn't go  
8 she arrived  
9 did Robert live  
10 The meal didn't cost
- 9 2 we were working  
3 opened  
4 rang ... was cooking  
5 heard ... looked  
6 was looking ... happened  
7 wasn't reading ... was watching  
8 didn't read  
9 finished ... paid ... left  
10 saw ... was walking ... was waiting

- 1 3 Are you married?  
2 Where do you live?  
3 Have you got / Do you have any children?  
4 How old is she?  
5 What do you do? / Where do you work? / What's your job?  
6 Do you like/enjoy your job?  
7 Have you got / Do you have a car?  
8 Do you (usually) go to work by car?  
9 What's his name? / What's he called?  
10 Does he live/work in London?
- 12 3 He was good at sport.  
4 He played football.  
5 He didn't work hard at school.  
6 He had a lot of friends.  
7 He didn't have a bicycle.  
8 He wasn't a quiet child.
- 14 3 He was good at sport.  
4 He played football.  
5 He didn't work hard at school.  
6 He had a lot of friends.  
7 He didn't have a bicycle.  
8 He wasn't a quiet child.

- 1 3 Are you married?  
2 Where do you live?  
3 Have you got / Do you have any children?  
4 How old is she?  
5 What do you do? / Where do you work? / What's your job?  
6 Do you like/enjoy your job?  
7 Have you got / Do you have a car?  
8 Do you (usually) go to work by car?  
9 What's his name? / What's he called?  
10 Does he live/work in London?
- 11 3 He was good at sport.  
4 He played football.  
5 He didn't work hard at school.  
6 He had a lot of friends.  
7 He didn't have a bicycle.  
8 He wasn't a quiet child.

## 16

- 3 is playing  
4 gave  
5 doesn't like  
6 did your parents go  
7 saw ... was driving  
8 Do you watch  
9 were you doing  
10 goes  
11 in/am trying  
12 didn't sleep
- 16 it's/it has just finished/ended.  
4 I've/I have found them.  
5 I haven't read it.  
6 Have you seen her?  
7 I've/I have had enough.  
8 Have you (ever) been to  
Sweden?  
9 We've/We have (just) been to  
the cinema.  
10 They've/They have gone to a  
party.
- 11 He's/He has just woken up.  
12 How long have you lived here?  
or ... have you been living  
here?  
13 We've/We have known each  
other for a long time.  
14 It's/It has been raining all day.  
or It has rained all day. on/It has  
been horrible/bad all day.

16  
8 B 12 C  
9 C 13 B  
10 D 14 C  
11 A 15 A

- 3 bought  
4 went  
5 've/have read or  
've/have finished with  
6 haven't started (it)  
or haven't begun  
7 was  
8 didn't see  
9 left  
10 's/has been  
11 was

20  
3 He's/He has already gone.  
4 she went at 4 o'clock.

- 5 How many times have you been  
there?  
6 I haven't decided yet.  
7 It was on the table last night.  
8 I've just eaten.  
9 What time did they arrive?

21

- 1 When was the last time? or  
When did you go the last  
time?  
2 How long have you had it?  
I bought it yesterday.  
3 How long have you lived / have  
you been / have you been  
living there?  
Before that we lived in Mill  
Road.

22  
1 When was the last time? or  
When did you go the last  
time?  
2 How long have you had it?  
I bought it yesterday.  
3 How long have you lived / have  
you been / have you been  
living there?  
Before that we lived in Mill  
Road.

How long did you live in Mill  
Road?

- 4 How long have you worked /  
have you been working  
there?  
What did you do before that?  
I was a taxi driver. or I worked as  
a taxi driver.

17  
3 has been  
4 for  
5 since  
6 has he lived / has he been / has  
he been living  
7 for  
8 have been

- 18  
3 has been  
4 for  
5 since  
6 has he lived / has he been / has  
he been living  
7 for  
8 have been

18  
3 has been  
4 for  
5 since  
6 has he lived / has he been / has  
he been living  
7 for  
8 have been

19

Example answers:

- 3 I've just started this exercise.  
4 I've met Julia a few times.  
5 I haven't had dinner yet.  
6 I've never been to Australia.  
7 I've lived here since I was born.  
8 I've lived here for three years.

23  
2 B 5 A  
3 D 6 D  
4 A 7 C

## 23

- 1 I stayed  
did you do  
I watched  
Are you going  
I'm going  
are you going to see  
I don't know. I haven't decided  
2 We arrived  
are you staying / are you going  
to stay  
do you like  
we're having  
3 I've just remembered – Jill  
phoned  
She always phones ... Did she  
leave  
she wants  
I'll phone ... Do you know  
I'll get

- 4 I've/I have  
5 we're having  
6 the cinema  
7 a taxi  
8 the piano  
9 computers  
10 the same

- 11 He's/He has  
12 been made ... are produced  
13 have been made ... are produced

- 14 I've/I have  
15 we're having  
16 the fridge  
17 a car  
18 like sport (-) ... is basketball (-)  
19 a doctor ... an art teacher  
20 the second floor ... the top of  
the stairs ... on the right

- 21 After dinner (-) ... watched  
television (-)  
22 a wonderful holiday in the  
south of France (-)

30

- 1 I stayed  
did you do  
I watched  
Are you going  
I'm going  
are you going to see  
I don't know. I haven't decided  
2 We arrived  
are you staying / are you going  
to stay  
do you like  
we're having  
3 I've just remembered – Jill  
phoned  
She always phones ... Did she  
leave  
she wants  
I'll phone ... Do you know  
I'll get

- 4 I've/I have  
5 we're having  
6 the cinema  
7 a taxi  
8 the piano  
9 computers  
10 the same

- 11 He's/He has  
12 been made ... are produced  
13 have been made ... are produced

- 14 I've/I have  
15 we're having  
16 the fridge  
17 a car  
18 like sport (-) ... is basketball (-)  
19 a doctor ... an art teacher  
20 the second floor ... the top of  
the stairs ... on the right

- 21 After dinner (-) ... watched  
television (-)  
22 a wonderful holiday in the  
south of France (-)

31

- 1 I stayed  
did you do  
I watched  
Are you going  
I'm going  
are you going to see  
I don't know. I haven't decided  
2 We arrived  
are you staying / are you going  
to stay  
do you like  
we're having  
3 I've just remembered – Jill  
phoned  
She always phones ... Did she  
leave  
she wants  
I'll phone ... Do you know  
I'll get

- 4 I've/I have  
5 we're having  
6 the cinema  
7 a taxi  
8 the piano  
9 computers  
10 the same

- 11 He's/He has  
12 been made ... are produced  
13 have been made ... are produced

- 14 I've/I have  
15 we're having  
16 the fridge  
17 a car  
18 like sport (-) ... is basketball (-)  
19 a doctor ... an art teacher  
20 the second floor ... the top of  
the stairs ... on the right

- 21 After dinner (-) ... watched  
television (-)  
22 a wonderful holiday in the  
south of France (-)

32

- 1 I stayed  
did you do  
I watched  
Are you going  
I'm going  
are you going to see  
I don't know. I haven't decided  
2 We arrived  
are you staying / are you going  
to stay  
do you like  
we're having  
3 I've just remembered – Jill  
phoned  
She always phones ... Did she  
leave  
she wants  
I'll phone ... Do you know  
I'll get

- 4 I've/I have  
5 we're having  
6 the cinema  
7 a taxi  
8 the piano  
9 computers  
10 the same

- 11 He's/He has  
12 been made ... are produced  
13 have been made ... are produced

- 14 I've/I have  
15 we're having  
16 the fridge  
17 a car  
18 like sport (-) ... is basketball (-)  
19 a doctor ... an art teacher  
20 the second floor ... the top of  
the stairs ... on the right

- 21 After dinner (-) ... watched  
television (-)  
22 a wonderful holiday in the  
south of France (-)

## Index

a / an	64	each other	62D	give	give something to somebody / give somebody something	
a and some	66–67	either	41A	if we go / if you see etc.	111	
a / an and the	68	either (of)	81	if and when	111C	
about	104E	embedded questions (Do you know what ... ? etc.)	48	If I had / if we went	112	
above	102E	end (at the end of)	90B, 99B	Do you know if ... ?	48C	
across	103	in April / in summer etc.	96	in	in a room / in hospital etc.	
adjectives	84	go (go swimming etc.)	54D	99–100	in five minutes / in three years etc.	
(quick / quickly)	85	go home / go to work / go to the cinema	70	96E	96E	
comparative (older / more expensive)	86–88	go in / go back etc. (phrasal verbs)	107	in and to	101	
superlatives (the oldest / the most expensive)	89	going to (I'm going to do something)	27	put something in	103	
get + adjective (get tired etc.)	55B	gone and been	17C	go in / fill in etc. (phrasal verbs)	107–108, Appendix 7	
possessive adjectives (my / your / her etc.)	59, 61	good	85D	infinitive (do / see / play etc.)	107–108, Appendix 7	
something / anybody / anyone / anything	75D, 77–78	good and well	85D	infinitive (do / see etc.) and to + infinitive (to do / to see etc.)	107–108, Appendix 7	
anywhere	78	good at	105A	can / will / should etc. + infinitive	107–108, Appendix 7	
apostrophe (I'm, it's etc.)	Appendix 4	going to	50A	50A	50A	
apostrophe's (my brother's car)	63	gone to + infinitive (I want to go etc.)	50B, 51–52	verbs + to + infinitive (I want to go etc.)	50B, 51–52	
are see am / is / are	around	Have you ever ... ?	17	infinitive and -ing (do / doing etc.)	50–51	
around	103, 107–108, Appendix 7	superlative + ever	89E	50–51	50–51	
arrive	101C	word order	93	I went to the shop to buy ...	...?	
articles (a / an / the)	64–72	every	79	(infinitive for purpose) 53	53	
a / an	64, 66–67	everybody / everyone / everything	everywhere	infinitive and for ... 53B	53B	
a / an and the	68	everywhere	79C	adjective + infinitive (it's easy to ... ) 38B	38B	
the 69–72	as (not as ... as)	expect	51A, 52B	something to eat / nowhere to go etc.	78D	
ask	ask somebody to ...	far	How far is it?	38A, 46D	78D	
ask somebody for ...	52B	far → further	86B	farmer	50C	
at	at 8 o'clock / at night etc.	fast	85C	feed up (with)	105A	
at the bus stop / at work etc.	96	fed up	(with)	few	83	
99–100	at and to	finishing	51B	finish (finish -ing)	51B	
at the age of ...	104B	for	for	for ten minutes / for three years etc.	19, 97D	
auxiliary verbs	23, 39–41	for and to	33B	for and to ... 33B	33B	
away	run away / throw away etc. (phrasal verbs)	go	for a walk etc.	54C	go (doing / playing / going etc.)	50C
ago	19B	from	for and during	98C	am / is / are + -ing (present continuous)	3–4, 23A, 26,
all	all and every etc.	full (in front of)	102A–B	have	have	50–51
all (of)	80	further	105A	have breakfast	/ have a shower etc.	50C
word order	93	future	26–29	her	58–59, 61	50C
advise (advise somebody to ...)	52B	I'm working tomorrow. (present continuous)	26	hers	60–61	50C
afraid (of)	105A	The concert starts at 7.30. (present simple) 26C	26	himself	62	50C
after	98, 110	(I'm) going to (do something)	27	him	58, 61	50C
ago	19B	will	28–29	his	59–61	50C
all	all	28D / 29C	future after when / before / while etc.	110B	holiday (on holiday) 54B, 104A	50C
already	28	direct speech and reported speech	110B	home	54A, 70A, 101B	50C
word order	93	done	future after if	111B	get home 55C, 101C	50C
already	94C	did	how 46	How long have you ... ? (present perfect) 18	50C	
along	103	didn't	How long have you ... ? (present perfect) 18	how big? / how old? / how far? etc.	50C	
also (word order)	93	in negatives	27	How long does it take?	46D	
always	103	12, 23D, 39C,	will	How long does it take?	46D	
always + present simple	5C	42B, 50A	28–29	How much? / how many?	82A	
word order	93	dit in questions	23D, 39C,	just	just + present perfect 16A	
am / is / are	1–2	43B, 50A	15–18	word order 93	107, Appendix 6	
am / is / are + -ing (present continuous)	3–4, 23A, 26, 50C	different (from)	105A	geographical names with and without the 72	107, Appendix 6	
there is / there are	36	direct speech and reported speech	49	ground sec -ing	107, Appendix 6	
an see a	36	done	56	get to (a place) 55C, 101C	107, Appendix 6	
and	109	don't / doesn't	6, 23D,	get on / get up etc. (phrasal verbs)	107, Appendix 6	
another	64B	in negatives	39C, 42B, 50A	107–108, Appendix 6	107, Appendix 6	
any	any and some	15–18	down	103	103	
any	75	been and gone	17C	sit down / put down etc. (phrasal verbs)	107–108, Appendix 6	
any and no	76	there has / have been	37B	during	98	
any (of)	80	begin (begin to ... or begin -ing)	51C	belong (to)	106A	

**kind** (*kind to somebody / kind of somebody*) 105A  
**know** (*Do you know where ...?*) 48  
**learn** (*learn to ...*) 51A  
**left (on the left)** 102A  
**lend (lend something to somebody)** 95  
**less** 87C  
**let** 52D  
**like (What is it like?)** 45B  
**like (verb)**  
*would like* 35, 51D, 52A  
*do you like? and would you like?* 35C  
*like to ... or like -ing* 51C  
**listen (to)** 106A  
**little / a little** 83  
**look** + adjective (*look tired* etc.)  
84C  
*look at/for/after* 106B  
*lot (a lot of ...)* 82  
**love** 51C-D  
**make** 56  
*make somebody do something*  
52D  
*make and do* 56  
**many**  
*many and much* 82  
*not as many (as)* 88B  
*too many* 91C  
**married**  
*married to* 105A  
*get married* 55  
**may** 30D  
*me/you/him etc. (personal pronouns)* 58, 61  
*middle (in the middle of)* 100A,  
102A  
**night** 30  
*mind (I don't mind -ing)* 51B  
*mine/yours/hers etc. (possessive pronouns)* 60-61  
**modal verbs (will/can/might etc.)**  
28-35, 50A  
*more* 86C, 87  
**most**  
*most (of)* 80  
*the most expensive / the most difficult etc.* 89  
*much and many* 82  
*much bigger / much more expensive* 87D  
*too much* 91C

**ought to** 32F  
*our* 59, 61  
*ours* 60-61  
*ourselves* 62  
**out**  
*cut* of 103  
*go out / put out* etc. (*phrasal verbs*) 107-108, Appendix 6-7  
*over* 103  
*climb over / knock over* (*phrasal verbs*) 107-108, Appendix 6-7  
**need**  
*needn't* 32D  
*need to ...* 51A  
**negatives** 42  
*negative questions* 43C  
*no and none* 76  
*not + any* 76-77  
**neither**  
*Neither am I / Neither do I etc.* 41B  
*neither (of)* 81  
**never**  
*never + present simple* 5C  
*never + present perfect* 17  
*word order* 93  
*next to* 102A  
*nice (nice to somebody / nice of somebody)* 105A  
*no (no money / no friends etc.)* 76A-B, 80A  
**nobody/no-one/nothing** 77-78  
*no-one and none* 76C  
*none* 76B-C, 80B-C  
*nor (Nor am I / Nor do I etc.)* 41B  
*nouns (countable and uncountable)* 66-67  
*nowhere* 78  
**of**  
*the roof of the building* etc. 63C  
*the ... of ...* 72E  
*off* 103  
*get off / turn off* etc. (*phrasal verbs*) 107-108, Appendix 6  
**offer** (*to do something*) 51A  
**often**  
*often + present simple* 5C  
*word order* 93  
**on**  
*on Monday / on 25 April etc.* 96  
*on the table / on the wall* 99-100  
*on the left/right* 102A  
*on holiday / on television* etc. 104A  
*go on (holiday / a trip etc.)* 54B  
*get on (put on etc. (*phrasal verbs*)* 107-108, Appendix 6-7  
**one/ones** 74  
**opposite** 102B  
*or* 109B

**persuade** (*persuade somebody to ...*) 52B  
**Phrasal verbs** (*get up / put on etc.*) 107-108, Appendix 6-7  
**Plural** (*cup → cups / man → men etc.*) 65  
**policeman** 65D  
**possessive adjectives** (*my / your / his etc.*) 59, 61  
**possessive pronouns** (*mine / yours / his etc.*) 60-61  
**prefer** 51C-D  
**prepositions** 96-106  
*at/on/in (time)* 96  
*for/since* 19, 97  
*until* 97A-B  
*before / after/during/while* 98  
*in/at/on (places)* 99-100  
*to/in/at (places)* 101  
*on* 96, 99-100, 102A, 104A  
*under/behind/opposite etc.*  
*past (preposition)* 103  
*past continuous (was/were + -ing)* 13-14, 23A, 50C  
*past continuous (*I was doing*) and past simple (*I did*)* 14  
*past continuous passive*  
*Appendix 1.1*  
**past participle** (*deemed/done/seen etc.*) 24A  
**present perfect** (*I have cleaned*) 15,  
23C  
*passive (*the room was cleaned*)* 21-22, 23B, Appendix 1  
*regular (cleaned) and irregular (seen)* 24B, Appendix 2-3  
**past perfect**  
*He said he had (done something)* 49  
*active and passive Appendix 1.1*  
**past simple** (*did/cleaned/saw etc.*) 11-12  
*negative (didn't ...)* 12, 42B  
*questions (did ...?)* 12, 43B  
*was/were [10]*  
*regular (cleaned) and irregular verbs (saw)* 11C, Appendix 2-3  
*past simple + ago* 19B  
*past simple (*I did*) and present perfect (*I have done*)* 20  
*past simple (*I did*) and past continuous (*I was doing*)* 14  
*past simple passive (*the room was cleaned*)* 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1  
*if+ past simple (*If I had / if we went*)* 112  
**people** 65C-D  
**personal pronouns** (*I/me / you etc.*) 58, 61

**reflexive pronouns (myself/yourself etc.)** 62  
**regular and irregular verbs** 11,  
24, Appendix 2-3  
**relative clauses** 113-114  
**relative pronouns (who/which/that)** 113-114  
**reply questions (Have you? / Are you?)** 40A  
**reported speech**  
*He said that ... / He told me that ...* 49  
**He told me to ...** 52C  
*right (on the right)* 102A  
**round** 103  
**round round / Show round** (*phrasal verbs*) 107-108, Appendix 7  
**s (apostrophe's)** 63, Appendix 4.5  
*say and tell* 49B  
**short forms** (*I'm / it's / you're etc.*)  
*should* 33  
**simple past** see *past simple*  
**simple present** see *present simple*  
*since* 19A, 97C  
*singular and plural (flower → flowers)* 65  
**so**  
*so am I / so do I etc.* 41B  
*I was tired, so I went to bed.* 109  
**some**  
*some and any* 66-67  
*some (of)* 80  
**somewhere** 75, 78  
**sometimes** 5C  
*sometimes + present simple* 5C  
*word order* 93  
*sorry (sorry about and sorry for)* 105A  
*speak (to)* 106A  
**spelling** Appendix 5  
**start (start to ... and start -ing)** 51C  
*still* 94  
**word order** 93  
*stop (stop -ing)* 51B  
**superlative (the biggest / the most expensive etc.)** 89  
**tags (question tags)** 40B  
*take (How long does it take?)* 47

**present perfect continuous (*I have been -ing*)** 18B  
**present perfect** (*I have done*) and past simple (*I did*) 20  
**present perfect passive** 22B, Appendix 1.1  
**regular and irregular verbs** 15B, 24, Appendix 2-3  
**present simple** (*I work / she works etc.*) 5-7, 23D  
**negative (don't / doesn't)** 6, 42B  
**questions (does / does ...?)** 7, 43B  
*present simple + always/usually / never etc.* 5C  
**present simple** (*I do*) and present continuous (*I am doing*) 8  
**present simple passive (*the room is cleaned*)** 21, 23B, Appendix 1.1  
**present simple for the future (*The concert starts at 7.30*)** 26C  
**present simple after when/while etc.** 110B  
**present simple after if** 111B  
**promise** (*promise to ...*) 51A  
**personal pronouns** (*I/me / you etc.*) 58, 61  
**possessive pronouns (mine / yours etc.)** 60-61  
**reflexive pronouns (myself/yourself etc.)** 62  
**one/ones** 74  
**relative pronouns (who/which/that)** 113-114  
**Put**  
*put something in ...* 103  
*put on / put out etc. (*phrasal verbs*)* 108, Appendix 7  
**questions** 43-46  
*am/is/are ...?* 2  
*do/does ...?* (present simple) 7, 43B  
*did ...?* (past simple) 12, 43B  
*Why don't ...? / Why isn't ...? etc.* 43C  
*Who saw you? / Who did you see?* 44  
**preposition at the end (*Who is she talking to?*)** 45  
**prepositions in relative clauses (*the man she is talking to*)** 114B  
**Present continuous** (*am/is/are + -ing*) 3-4, 23A, 50C  
*negative (I'm not -ing)* 3  
**questions (are you -ing?)** 4  
*present continuous (*I am doing*)* 8  
*and present simple (*I do*)* 8  
*present continuous passive* 22A, Appendix 1.1  
*present continuous for the future (*What are you doing tomorrow?*)* 26  
**Present perfect** (*I have done*) 15-20,  
23C  
*present perfect + just* 16A  
*present perfect + already* 16B  
*present perfect + yet* 16C, 94B  
*Haven't you ever ...?* 17  
*gone and been* 17C  
**people** 65C-D  
**personal pronouns** (*I/me / you etc.*) 58, 61

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).

[299]

- talk (to)** 106A  
**tell/told**  
*He told me that ...* 49  
*tell and say* 49B  
*Can you tell me where ...?* 48A  
*He told me to ...* 52B  
**tenses**  
 active and passive Appendix 1.1  
 present continuous (*I am doing*) 3–4, 23A, 26, 50C  
 present simple (*I do*) 5–7, 23D, 26C  
 past simple (*I did*) 11–12, 14, 20, 23D  
 past continuous (*I was doing*) 13–14, 23A, 50C  
 present perfect (*I have done*) 15–20, 23C  
*be/have/do* in present and past tenses 23  
*than* 87–88  
*that* 73  
*He said that ... (reported speech)* 49C  
*that and this* 73  
*a thing that ... (relative clauses)* 113  
**the** 68–72  
*the and a/an* 68  
*the same* 69B  
*the cinema / the theatre / the bank etc.* 70B  
*flowers / the flowers* 71B  
*the in names of places* 72  
*the biggest / the most expensive etc.* 89  
*their* 59, 61  
*theirs* 60, 61  
*them* 58, 61  
*themselves* 62  
**there**  
*there is/are* 36  
*there was/were* 37A  
*there has/have been* 37B  
*there will be* 37C  
*there is and it's* 36B  
*these* 73  
*think (think about / think of* 106A  
*this* 73  
*those* 73  
*through* 103  
*till (until)* 97B  
**to**  
*time* 97A  
*places* 101, 103  
*go to ...* 54A, 101A  
*get to ...* 55C, 101C
- to + infinitive** (*to go / to be etc.*) see **infinitive**  
**too** 91  
*too and either* 41A  
*turn (turn round / turn on etc.)* (phrasal verbs) 107–108, Appendix 7  
**uncountable nouns** (salt/water/music etc.) 66–67  
**under** 102D, 103  
**until** 97A–B, 110B  
**up** 103  
*get up / pick up etc. (phrasal verbs)* 107–108, Appendix 6–7  
**us** 58, 61  
**used** (*I used to ...*) 25  
*usually* usually + present simple 5C  
*word order* 93  
**verbs**  
 present tenses 1–9, 23, 26  
 past tenses 10–14, 20, 23  
 present perfect 15–20, 23  
 regular and irregular verbs 24, Appendix 2–3  
 future 26–29  
 modal verbs (*will/can/should etc.*) 28–35, 50A  
 negatives 42  
 questions 43–46  
 reported speech 49  
 verbs + -ing 50–51  
 verbs + *to* ... (infinitive) 50–52  
 verbs + preposition (*look at / speak to etc.*) 106  
 phrasal verbs (*get up / put on etc.*) 107–108, Appendix 6–7  
**wait (for)** 53C, 106A  
**want**  
*want to ...* 51A  
*want somebody to ...* 52A  
**was/were** 10  
*was/were + -ing* (past continuous) 13, 23A, 50C  
*was/were done (passive)* 21, 23B  
*there was/were* 37A  
*if I was/were ...* 112B  
**well** 85D  
**were** see *was*  
**what**  
*What ...? and Who ...?* 44C  
*What ... like?* 45B  
*What ...?* 46  
*What ...? and Which ...?* 46C
- when** 110  
*when and if* 111C  
**whether** 48C  
*which* 46  
*Which ...?* 46  
*Which one/ones?* 74B  
*a thing which ... (relative clauses)* 113  
**while** 98, 110  
**who**  
*Who ...?* 44  
*a person who ... (relative clauses)* 113  
**whose** (*Whose is this?*) 60D  
**will** 28–29  
*will and shall* 28D, 29C  
*won't* 28A  
*there will be* 37C  
*with/without* 104D  
*with/without + -ing* 105B  
**won't** (= *will not*) 28A  
**word order**  
 questions 43–45  
 present continuous questions 12D  
 past simple questions 12D  
 passive 21–22  
 present simple questions 7B  
 past simple questions 12D  
 passive 21–22  
*Do you know where ...?* (embedded questions) 48  
 verb + object 92A  
 place and time 92B  
*always/usually/often etc.* 93  
*after/give/send etc.* 95  
**worse** 86D  
**worst** 89B  
**would**  
*I'd like / would you like?* 35  
*would like / love / etc.* 51D  
*He would buy a car if he had the money.* 112  
**write (to)** 106A
- yet** 94  
*yet + present perfect* 16C  
**you** 58, 61  
**your** 59, 61  
**yours** 60–61  
**yourself/yourselves** 62

The numbers are unit numbers (not page numbers).